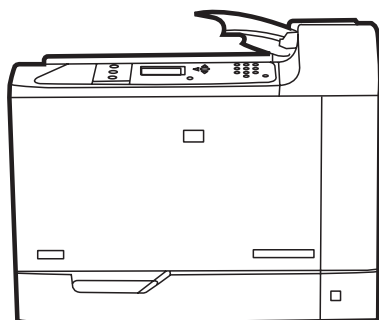


HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Printers

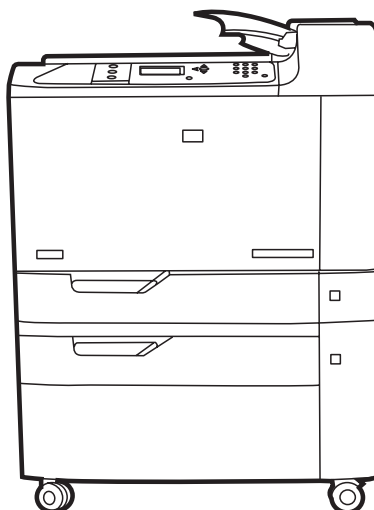
Software Technical Reference



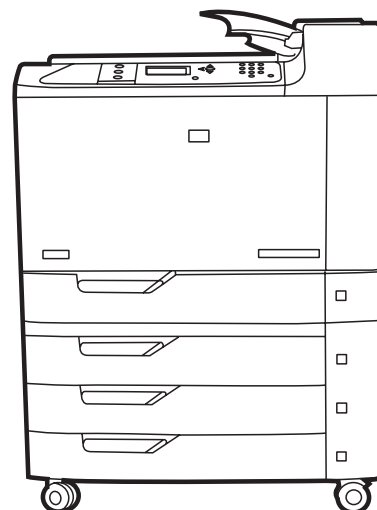
CP6015n
CP6015dn
CP6015de



CP6015x



CP6015xh



HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series

Software Technical Reference



Copyright and license

©2008 Copyright Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

Reproduction, adaptation or translation without prior written permission is prohibited, except as allowed under the copyright laws.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice.

The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Edition 1, 4/2008

Trademark credits

Adobe®, Adobe Photoshop®, Acrobat®, and PostScript® are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

ENERGY STAR and the ENERGY STAR mark are registered U.S. marks.

FireWire® FireWire is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows NT®, and Windows® XP are U.S. registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

PANTONE® is the property of Pantone, Inc.

Intel®, Pentium®, and Intel® Core™ are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

UNIX® is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

Windows Vista® is either a registered trademark or trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Table of contents

1 Purpose and scope

Introduction	1
HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series	3
Product comparison	6
Printing-system software	7
System requirements	7
Supported operating systems	7
Print driver support in other operating systems	8
Availability	8
Printing-system software on the Web	8
In-box printing-system software CD	9
Documentation availability	14
User documentation	15
HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series User Guide	15
HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Install Notes	16
Administrator documentation	16
HP Embedded Web Server User Guide	17
HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide	18

2 Software description

Introduction	19
Windows printing-system software features	20
Printing system and installer	20
HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series printing-system software CD for Windows systems	20
Installer features	23
HP Color LaserJet print drivers	23
HP PCL 6 Print Driver, PCL 5 Universal Print Driver, and PS Universal Print Driver	23
Print-driver version numbers for Windows operating systems	24
Driver Configuration for Windows	25
Driver autoconfiguration	25
Bidirectional communication	25
Enterprise AutoConfiguration	25

Update Now	27
HP Driver Preconfiguration	28
Lockable features	29
Continuous export	30
HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool	31
Color Access Control	32
International Color Consortium profiles	34
PANTONE color profiles	35
HP Easy Printer Care	36
Installation	36
Access	36
Find Other Printers	38
HP Easy Printer Care – Overview tab	43
HP Easy Printer Care – Support tab	48
Device Management	50
Troubleshooting and Help	51
HP Embedded Web Server	52
Access to the HP EWS	52
The HP EWS frame	52
Information tab	53
Links to off-product solutions	53
Device Status screen	54
Configuration Page	54
Settings tab	56
Configure device	57
Alerts	58
Security	60
Restrict Color	62
Networking tab	63
Configuration section	64
Security section	64
Diagnostics section	65
Network settings	65
HP Web Jetadmin	66
Font support	67
Basic fonts	67
Default fonts	67
HP Driver Deployment Utility	73
3 Installing Windows printing-system components	83
Introduction	83
General Microsoft Windows installation instructions	84
Microsoft Windows installation for direct connections	84

Install from the printing-system CD	84
Install drivers using the Microsoft Add Printer wizard	84
Microsoft Windows installation for computers on a network	85
Point and Print installation for Windows 2000, XP, Server 2003, and Vista	91
Installer Customization Wizard for Windows	92
Run the Installer Customization Wizard	92
Distribution	110
Detailed MS Windows installation instructions	111
Use the Help, Back, Next, and Cancel buttons	111
Printing-system software installation for direct connections	113
Printing-system software installation for network connections	126
Set a default printer	142
Modify an existing installation	143
Uninstall instructions	144

4 HP PCL 6 Print Driver for Windows

Introduction	145
Access print drivers	147
Printing Preferences driver tabs	147
Properties driver tabs	148
Help system	149
“What's this?” Help	149
Incompatible Print Settings messages	149
Advanced tab features	151
Paper/Output	151
Copy Count	152
Graphic	152
Image Color Management	152
True Type Font	153
Document Options	153
Advanced Printing Features	153
Print Optimizations	153
Printer Features	154
Layout Options	154
Printing Shortcuts tab features	155
Use defined printing shortcuts	156
General Everyday Printing	156
Paper type	156
Paper sizes	158
Paper source	159
Orientation	159
Print on both sides	159
Pages per sheet	159

Staple	159
Two-sided (Duplex) Printing	160
Booklet Printing	160
Envelopes	161
Factory Defaults	161
Document preview image	161
Create a custom printing shortcut	161
Paper/Quality tab features	163
Paper Options	164
Paper sizes	164
Custom Paper Size	165
Name	165
Paper size	166
Units	166
Custom width and height control limits	166
Paper source	167
Paper type	167
Special pages	169
Covers	169
Print pages on different paper	170
Document preview image	171
Print Quality	171
Print Quality drop-down menu	171
Gloss Level	171
Gloss Level driver settings	172
Effects tab features	173
Resizing Options	173
Actual Size	174
Print Document On	174
Scale to Fit	174
% of Actual Size	174
Document preview image	175
Watermarks	175
Current watermarks	177
Watermark Message	177
Message Angle	177
Font Attributes	177
Default watermark settings	179
Finishing tab features	180
Document Options	180
Print on Both Sides	181
Print on both sides automatically	181
Print on both sides manually	182
Flip Pages Up	183

Booklet Layout	184
Book and Booklet Printing	184
Pages per Sheet	185
Print Page Borders	185
Page Order	186
Document preview image	186
Orientation	187
Output tab features	188
Output Options	188
Document preview image	189
Output Bin options	189
Job Storage tab features	190
Status group box	192
Job Storage Mode	192
Off	192
Proof and Hold	192
Personal Job	193
Quick Copy	193
Stored Job	193
PIN to print	194
Job Notification Options	194
User Name	194
Job Name	195
Use job-storage features when printing	195
Release a job-storage print job	196
Delete a job-storage print job	196
Color tab features	197
Color Options	198
Automatic	198
Manual	198
General	200
Neutral Grays	200
Halftone	200
Color Themes	201
Default (sRGB)	201
Photo (sRGB)	201
Photo (Adobe RGB 1998)	201
Vivid (sRGB)	201
Custom Profile	201
Document preview image	202
Services tab features	203
Internet Services	204
Device services	204
Device Settings tab features	205

Form to Tray Assignment	206
Font Substitution Table	206
External Fonts	207
Installing external fonts	208
Removing external fonts	209
Installable Options	209
Automatic Configuration	209
Tray 3	210
Trays 4 and 5	210
Duplex Unit (for 2-Sided Printing)	210
Allow Manual Duplexing	210
Accessory Output Bin	210
Printer Hard Disk	210
Job storage	210
Job Separator	211
Mopier Mode	211
Mopier mode and collation	211
About tab features	213

5 HP Universal Print Drivers for Windows — PS and PCL 5

Introduction	215
Access to print drivers	217
Printing Preferences driver tabs	217
Properties driver tabs	218
Help system	219
What's this? Help	219
Options Cannot be Combined messages	219
Advanced tab features	220
Paper/Output	221
Copy Count	221
Graphic	222
Image Color Management	222
True Type Font	223
Document Options	223
Advanced Printing Features	223
Print Optimizations – PCL 5 Universal Print Driver only	223
PostScript Output Options – PS Universal Print Driver only	223
Printer Features	224
Layout Options	225
Printing Shortcuts tab features	226
Factory Defaults	227
User Guide Print Settings	227
Document preview image	227

Paper/Quality tab features	228
Paper Options	229
Paper sizes	229
Custom Paper Size	230
Name	230
Paper size	230
Units	230
Custom width and height control limits	231
Paper source	231
Paper type	232
Special pages	233
Covers	233
Print pages on different paper	234
Document preview image	235
Print Quality	235
Print Quality drop-down menu	235
Gloss Level	236
Gloss Level driver settings	236
Effects tab features	237
Resizing Options	237
Actual Size	238
Print Document On	238
Scale to Fit	238
% of Actual Size	238
Document preview image	239
Watermarks	239
Current watermarks	241
Watermark Message	241
Message Angle	241
Font Attributes	241
Default watermark settings	243
Finishing tab features	244
Document Options	244
Print on Both Sides	245
Print on both sides automatically	245
Print on both sides manually	246
Flip Pages Up	247
Booklet layout	248
Book and Booklet Printing	248
Pages per Sheet	249
Print Page Borders	249
Page Order	249
Document preview image	250
Orientation	250

Output tab features	252
Output Options	252
Document preview image	253
Output Bin options	253
Job Storage tab features	254
Status group box	256
Job Storage Mode	256
Off	256
Proof and Hold	256
Personal Job	257
Quick Copy	257
Stored Job	257
PIN to print	258
Job Notification Options	258
User Name	258
Job Name	259
Use job-storage features when printing	259
Release a job-storage print job	260
Deleting a job-storage print job	260
Color tab features	261
Color Options	262
Automatic	262
Manual	262
General	264
Neutral Grays	264
Halftone	264
Color Themes	265
RGB Color	265
Default (sRGB)	265
Photo (sRGB)	265
Photo (Adobe RGB 1998)	265
None	265
Custom Profile	265
CMYK Color – PS Universal Print Driver only	266
Default CMYK+	266
SWOP	266
Euroscale	266
DIC (Dainippon)	266
Custom Profile	266
Document preview image	266
Services tab features	268
Internet Services	268
Device Settings tab features	270
Form to Tray Assignment	271

Font Substitution Table	272
External Fonts	273
Install external fonts	274
Remove external fonts	275
PS Universal Print Driver Device Settings	275
Available PostScript Memory	275
Output Protocol	275
Send Ctrl-D Before Each Job	276
Send Ctrl-D After Each Job	276
Convert Gray Text to PostScript Gray	276
Convert Gray Graphics to PostScript Gray	276
Add Euro Currency Symbol to PostScript Fonts	276
Job Timeout	276
Wait Timeout	277
Minimum Font Size to Download as Outline	277
Maximum Font Size to Download as Outline	277
Installable Options	277
Automatic Configuration	277
Mopier Mode	278
Mopier mode and collation	278
Postscript Passthrough – PS Universal Print Driver only	279
About tab features	280

6 Macintosh software and utilities

Introduction	281
Supported Macintosh operating systems	282
Macintosh system requirements	283
Printing-system software for Macintosh	284
PDEs	284
HP Embedded Web Server	284
Install notes	284
Online help	284
Screen fonts	284
Install and uninstall the Macintosh printing system	285
HP LaserJet software CD, Macintosh partition	285
Install the HP LaserJet printing-system software for the Macintosh OS	285
General installation instructions	285
Mac OS X installation	286
Main Install dialog box sequence	286
Setup instructions	293
Setting up a printer with Mac OS X v10.4	293
Setting up a printer with Mac OS X v10.3	295
Troubleshooting the product setup	296

Uninstall the Macintosh printing system	297
Availability	298
HP Printer Utility for Macintosh	299
Access to the HP Printer Utility	299
Supplies Status	300
Device Information	301
HP Support	301
Upload Fonts	302
Color Usage	303
File Upload	304
Update Firmware	304
Remote firmware update by using the HP Printer Utility	305
Duplex mode	305
Protect Direct Ports	306
Trays Configuration	307
Lock Resources	308
Stored Jobs	309
E-mail Alerts	309
Network Settings	310
Bonjour Settings	311
Restrict Color	312
Output Devices	314
Supplies Management	315
Additional Settings	316

7 Engineering Details

Introduction	317
Remote firmware update	318
Determining the current level of firmware	318
Downloading the new firmware from the HP Web site	318
Downloading the new firmware to the product	318
Printer messages during the firmware update	319
Downloading custom color profiles	320
Remote firmware update by using FTP through a browser	321
Remote firmware update by using FTP on a direct network connection	322
Windows operating systems	322
Macintosh operating systems	323
Remote firmware update through a local Windows port	324
Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003	324
Remote firmware update through a USB port	325
Remote firmware update through a Windows network	325
Remote firmware update for UNIX systems	326
Remote firmware update by using the LPR command	326

HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility	327
Remote firmware update through HP Web Jetadmin	329
Printing print-ready documents	331
Print-ready file printing by using FTP through a browser	331
Print-ready file printing by using FTP on a direct network connection	331
Windows operating systems	332
Macintosh operating systems	333
Print-ready printing by using a local Windows port	333
Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, or Windows Vista	334
Print-ready file printing in a Windows network	334
Print-ready file printing in UNIX systems	334
Print-ready file printing by using the LPR command	334
Media attributes	336
Paper sources and destinations	336
Paper-source commands	336
Driver-supported paper sizes	337
Driver-supported paper types	340
Custom paper sizes	342
Paper-type commands	342
Index	345

List of tables

Table 1-1	Software technical reference overview	1
Table 1-2	Features	3
Table 1-3	Product models	6
Table 1-4	HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series supported languages	9
Table 1-5	Driver Languages	10
Table 1-6	Installer component languages	11
Table 1-7	Documentation languages	12
Table 1-8	Documentation availability	14
Table 2-1	Availability of automatic discovery and driver configuration through bidirectional communication in Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, or Windows Vista	25
Table 2-2	EAC availability in Microsoft Windows and Microsoft Share	26
Table 2-3	EAC availability in Novell Netware environments	27
Table 2-4	Operating systems that support HP Driver Preconfiguration	30
Table 2-5	Color access control tools	32
Table 2-6	Default fonts	67
Table 2-7	Additional PS emulation fonts	69
Table 4-1	PCL 6 custom paper sizes	166
Table 4-2	Font Attribute settings for new and preset watermarks	179
Table 4-3	Page orientation	184
Table 4-4	Driver mopier mode and collation settings	211
Table 5-1	HP PS Universal Print Driver and HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver custom paper sizes	231
Table 5-2	Font Attribute settings for new and preset watermarks	243
Table 5-3	Page orientation	247
Table 5-4	Driver mopier mode and collation settings	278
Table 6-1	Adding a product in Macintosh operating systems	286
Table 7-1	Troubleshooting a firmware update	319
Table 7-2	Troubleshooting a firmware update failure	319
Table 7-3	Update messages	320
Table 7-4	HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series paper sources and destinations	336
Table 7-5	Paper-source commands	337
Table 7-6	Supported paper and print paper sizes	337
Table 7-7	Supported envelopes and postcards	338
Table 7-8	Supported paper and print paper sizes for the optional HP 3-bin Stapler/Stacker and HP Booklet Maker/Finisher accessories	339
Table 7-9	Tray 1 paper information	340

Table 7-10 Trays 2, 3, 4, and 5 paper information 341

Table 7-11 PCL 6 custom paper sizes 342

Table 7-12 paper-type commands 343

List of figures

Figure 1-1	Installation software CD – User Documentation screen	15
Figure 1-2	Installation software CD – Administrator Documentation screen	17
Figure 2-1	Installation software CD browser	21
Figure 2-2	My HP Printers screen	37
Figure 2-3	Step 1 of 3: Start Search screen	38
Figure 2-4	Advanced Search Settings screen	39
Figure 2-5	Searching for printers, please wait.. screen	39
Figure 2-6	Step 2 of 3: Verify Printer Found screen	40
Figure 2-7	Step 2 of 3: Select Printers screen	40
Figure 2-8	Step 3 of 3: Customize Settings screen	41
Figure 2-9	Alert Settings screen	41
Figure 2-10	MY HP Printers – HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product	42
Figure 2-11	Overview tab	43
Figure 2-12	HP Easy Printer Care Help screen	44
Figure 2-13	Supplies Ordering screen	46
Figure 2-14	Transfer printer information to HP SureSupply? screen	47
Figure 2-15	Welcome to HP SureSupply screen	48
Figure 2-16	Support tab	49
Figure 2-17	Support Help screen	50
Figure 2-18	HP Proactive Support dialog box – HP Easy Printer Care	51
Figure 2-19	HP EWS Information tab – Device Status screen	54
Figure 2-20	HP EWS Information tab – Configuration Page screen, 1 of 2	55
Figure 2-21	HP EWS Information tab – Configuration Page screen, 2 of 2	56
Figure 2-22	HP EWS Settings tab – Configure Device screen	57
Figure 2-23	HP EWS Settings tab – Alerts screen – 1 of 2	59
Figure 2-24	HP EWS Settings tab – Alerts screen – 2 of 2	59
Figure 2-25	HP EWS Settings tab – Security screen	61
Figure 2-26	HP EWS Settings tab – Restrict Color screen – 1 of 2	62
Figure 2-27	HP EWS Settings tab – Restrict Color screen – 2 of 2	63
Figure 2-28	HP EWS Networking tab – TCP/IP Settings screen	64
Figure 2-29	Package Source	75
Figure 2-30	Network Settings	76
Figure 2-31	DDU Driver Configuration settings	78
Figure 3-1	Software Installation — License Agreement screen	86

Figure 3-2	Software Installation — Device Connection screen	87
Figure 3-3	Software Installation — Devices Found screen	88
Figure 3-4	Software Installation — Device Connection screen 2	89
Figure 3-5	Software Installation — Driver Installation Complete screen 1	90
Figure 3-6	Software Installation — Driver Installation Complete screen 2	91
Figure 3-7	Administrator Software – CD browser	93
Figure 3-8	Welcome to the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Installation Customization Wizard screen	94
Figure 3-9	Installer Customization Wizard Software License Agreement dialog box	95
Figure 3-10	Language Selection dialog box	96
Figure 3-11	Printer Port dialog box	97
Figure 3-12	Browse for Printer dialog box	98
Figure 3-13	Specify TCP/IP Port dialog box	99
Figure 3-14	Port Creation Options dialog box	100
Figure 3-15	Drivers dialog box	101
Figure 3-16	Driver Details dialog box	102
Figure 3-17	Driver Configuration dialog box	103
Figure 3-18	Driver Configuration details dialog box	104
Figure 3-19	Additional Software dialog box	105
Figure 3-20	Additional software Details dialog box	106
Figure 3-21	Custom Installer Location dialog box	107
Figure 3-22	Ready to Create Installer dialog box	108
Figure 3-23	Printer Properties dialog box	109
Figure 3-24	Creating HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Custom Installer dialog box	110
Figure 3-25	Are you sure you want to cancel the installation? dialog box	111
Figure 3-26	Cancel dialog box	112
Figure 3-27	Welcome to the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Wizard dialog box	113
Figure 3-28	Searching dialog box	114
Figure 3-29	Printer Connection dialog box	115
Figure 3-30	Installation Type dialog box	116
Figure 3-31	Feature Selection dialog box	117
Figure 3-32	Details dialog box	118
Figure 3-33	Ready to Install dialog box	119
Figure 3-34	Printer Properties General tab	120
Figure 3-35	Installation Status dialog box	121
Figure 3-36	Looking for new hardware – Please make sure printer is connected dialog box	121
Figure 3-37	Looking for new hardware – new printer detected	122
Figure 3-38	Please wait dialog box	122
Figure 3-39	Finish dialog box	123
Figure 3-40	Test Page dialog box	124
Figure 3-41	HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Next Steps dialog box	125
Figure 3-42	Test Page dialog box	126
Figure 3-43	Welcome to the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series5 Wizard dialog box	127
Figure 3-44	Searching dialog box	128

Figure 3-45	Printer Not Found dialog box	129
Figure 3-46	Printers Found dialog box	130
Figure 3-47	Printer Connection dialog box	131
Figure 3-48	Identify Printer dialog box	132
Figure 3-49	Printer Settings dialog box	133
Figure 3-50	Installation Type dialog box	134
Figure 3-51	Feature Selection dialog box	135
Figure 3-52	Details dialog box	136
Figure 3-53	Ready to Install dialog box	137
Figure 3-54	Printer Properties General tab	138
Figure 3-55	Installation Status dialog box	139
Figure 3-56	Finish dialog box	140
Figure 3-57	Test Page dialog box	141
Figure 3-58	HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Next Steps dialog box	142
Figure 3-59	CD Browser – Modify Installation option	143
Figure 4-1	An Incompatible Print Settings message	149
Figure 4-2	The default appearance of the Advanced tab	151
Figure 4-3	Printing Shortcuts tab	155
Figure 4-4	Document preview image	161
Figure 4-5	Printing Shortcuts dialog box	162
Figure 4-6	Printing Shortcuts tab – custom shortcut	162
Figure 4-7	Paper/Quality tab	163
Figure 4-8	Paper Options group box	164
Figure 4-9	Custom Paper Size dialog box	165
Figure 4-10	Print pages on different paper — First, or Last	170
Figure 4-11	Effects tab	173
Figure 4-12	Preview images – Legal on Letter; Scale to Fit off (left) and on (right)	174
Figure 4-13	Watermark Details dialog box	176
Figure 4-14	Finishing tab	180
Figure 4-15	Print on Both Sides Instructions dialog box	183
Figure 4-16	Page-order preview images	186
Figure 4-17	Output tab	188
Figure 4-18	Job Storage tab	191
Figure 4-19	Color tab	197
Figure 4-20	Color Settings dialog box	199
Figure 4-21	Services tab	203
Figure 4-22	Device Settings tab	205
Figure 4-23	Font Substitution Table	207
Figure 4-24	HP Font Installer dialog box	208
Figure 4-25	About tab	213
Figure 5-1	An Options cannot be combined message	219
Figure 5-2	The default appearance of the Advanced tab – PS Universal Print Driver	220
Figure 5-3	The default appearance of the Advanced tab – PCL 5 Universal Print Driver	221
Figure 5-4	Printing Shortcuts tab	226

Figure 5-5	Document preview image	227
Figure 5-6	Paper/Quality tab	228
Figure 5-7	Paper Options group box	229
Figure 5-8	Print pages on different paper — First, or Last	234
Figure 5-9	Effects tab	237
Figure 5-10	Preview images – Legal on Letter; Scale to Fit off (left) and on (right)	238
Figure 5-11	Watermark Details dialog box	240
Figure 5-12	Finishing tab	244
Figure 5-13	Print on Both Sides Instructions dialog box	247
Figure 5-14	Page-order preview images	250
Figure 5-15	Output tab	252
Figure 5-16	Job Storage tab	255
Figure 5-17	Color tab	261
Figure 5-18	Color Settings dialog box	263
Figure 5-19	Services tab	268
Figure 5-20	Device Settings tab – PS Universal Print Driver	270
Figure 5-21	Device Settings tab – PCL 5 Universal Print Driver	271
Figure 5-22	Font Substitution Table	273
Figure 5-23	HP Font Installer dialog box	274
Figure 5-24	About tab	280
Figure 6-1	HP CLJ CP6015 CD-ROM icon	286
Figure 6-2	HP Color LaserJet CP6015 screen	287
Figure 6-3	HP LaserJet for Macintosh installer startup-screen dialog box	287
Figure 6-4	ReadMe dialog box	288
Figure 6-5	License dialog box	288
Figure 6-6	Agree/Disagree dialog box	289
Figure 6-7	Select Destination dialog box	289
Figure 6-8	Installation Type dialog box	290
Figure 6-9	HP LaserJet Installer dialog box (custom install)	291
Figure 6-10	Authenticate dialog box	291
Figure 6-11	Installing dialog box	292
Figure 6-12	Finish Up dialog box	292
Figure 6-13	Supplies Status screen	300
Figure 6-14	Device Information screen	301
Figure 6-15	HP Online Support screen	301
Figure 6-16	Upload Fonts screen	302
Figure 6-17	Print Color Usage Job Log screen	303
Figure 6-18	File Upload screen	304
Figure 6-19	Protect Direct Ports screen	306
Figure 6-20	Trays Configuration screen	307
Figure 6-21	Lock Resources screen	308
Figure 6-22	Enable Job Storing screen	309
Figure 6-23	E-mail Alerts screen	310
Figure 6-24	IPv4 Settings screen	310

Figure 6-25	Bonjour Settings screen	311
Figure 6-26	Restrict Color Use screen	312
Figure 6-27	Paper Handling Devices screen	314
Figure 6-28	Replace Supplies screen	315
Figure 6-29	Additional Settings screen	316
Figure 7-1	HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility screen 1	327
Figure 7-2	HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility screen 2	328
Figure 7-3	HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility progress screen	328
Figure 7-4	HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility complete screen	329

1 Purpose and scope

Introduction

This software technical reference (STR) provides information about and troubleshooting tips for the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series printing-system software.

This STR is prepared in an electronic format to serve as a quick-reference tool for Customer Care Center (CCC) agents, support engineers, system administrators, information technology (IT) personnel, and HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product end users, as appropriate.

The following information is included:

- Descriptions of drivers and platforms, with system modifications
- Procedures for installing and uninstalling software components
- Descriptions of various topics that are associated with the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product, including engineering details

The following table describes the structure of this STR.

Table 1-1 Software technical reference overview

Chapter	Content
Chapter 1, Purpose and scope	<p>This chapter contains basic information about the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product and its software:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Overview of the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product• Printing-system software overview, including the following topics:<ul style="list-style-type: none">◦ System requirements◦ Supported operating systems◦ Availability• HP LaserJet software documentation
Chapter 2, Software description	<p>This chapter provides an overview of the printing-system software installer and print drivers.</p> <p>This chapter also contains general information about optional software features.</p> <p>The following topics are included:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Driver configuration for Windows®• International Color Consortium (ICC) profiles

Table 1-1 Software technical reference overview (continued)

Chapter	Content
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PANTONE® color profiles • HP Easy Printer Care • HP Embedded Web Server • HP Web Jetadmin
Chapter 3, Installing Windows printing-system components	This chapter provides instructions for installing the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product in Windows operating systems by using various installation methods.
Chapter 4, HP PCL 6 Print Driver for Windows	<p>This chapter provides detailed descriptions of the HP PCL 6 Print Driver for Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Vista.</p> <p>This chapter also contains information about using job-storage features when printing, including the following topics:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Releasing a job-storage print job • Deleting a job-storage print job
Chapter 5, HP Universal Print Drivers for Windows – PS and PCL 5	This chapter provides detailed descriptions of the HP PostScript (PS) Universal Print Driver and the HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver for Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Vista.
Chapter 6, Macintosh software and utilities	This chapter provides instructions for installing the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product in Macintosh operating systems and information about the printing-system software. The HP Printer Utility for Macintosh is also described.
Chapter 7, Engineering details	<p>This chapter contains information about the following special topics:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Remote firmware update • Printing print-ready documents • Media attributes

For additional information about the location of information within these chapters, see the table of contents. An index is provided in the back of this STR.

Additional detailed information about the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series printing-system software is published in an addendum to this STR. The following information is available only in the addendum:

- Descriptions of known software issues and solutions
- Printing system reports

HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series

The following table contains descriptions of the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product features that are discussed. Product configurations might vary among countries/regions.

Table 1-2 Features

Speed and throughput	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Print up to 40 pages per minute (ppm) on letter-size paper and 41 ppm on A4-size paper.• Less than 11 seconds to print the first page• Recommended maximum monthly print volume of 12,500 pages• A 835 megahertz (MHz) microprocessor• Banner printing capability• Duplex at speed
Resolution	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• 600 dots per inch (dpi) with Image Resolution Enhancement technology 4800 for optimum overall imaging• 1200 x 600 dpi for detailed line work and small text
Memory	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Models HP Color LaserJet CP6015n, HP Color LaserJet CP6015dn, and HP Color LaserJet CP6015de have 512 MB of random-access memory (RAM), expandable to 1 gigabyte (GB) by using 200-pin small outline dual-inline memory modules (SODIMM) that support 128, 256, or 512 MB of RAM. Models HP Color LaserJet CP6015x and HP Color LaserJet CP6015xh have 512 MB of RAM, expandable to 1 GB.• Memory Enhancement technology (MEt) automatically compresses data to use RAM more efficiently.
User interface	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Four-line graphical display on the control panel• An embedded Web server to gain access to support and order supplies (for network-connected products)• HP Easy Printer Care software (a Web-based status and troubleshooting tool)• Internet-enabled supply-ordering capabilities through HP Easy Printer Care software and embedded Web server
Paper-handling	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Input<ul style="list-style-type: none">◦ Tray 1 (multipurpose tray): A multipurpose tray for paper, transparencies, labels, banner paper, envelopes, and other paper types. The tray holds up to 100 sheets of paper, 50 transparencies, or 10 envelopes.◦ Trays 2, 3, 4, and 5: 500-sheet trays. These trays automatically detect common paper sizes and allow printing on custom-size paper. Tray 2 supports up to 279 x 432 mm (11 x 17 in) and A3 paper sizes, and Trays 3, 4, and 5 support sizes up to 305 x 457 mm (12 x 18 in), and SRA3.◦ Duplex printing: Provides automatic two-sided printing (printing on both sides of the paper). Not available on the HP Color LaserJet CP6015n model. This model cannot be upgraded to auto duplex.

Table 1-2 Features (continued)


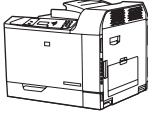



	<p>The paper-size range for automatic duplex printing is 175 mm to 320 mm (6.9 to 12.6 in) x 210 mm to 457 mm (8.3 to 18 in). The paper weight range is 60–220 g/m² (16–58 lb).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Output <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Standard output bin: The standard output bin is located on the top of the product. This bin can hold up to 500 sheets of paper. The product has a sensor that indicates when the bin is full. ◦ Optional 3-bin stapler/stacker: Provides job separation in multiple output bins, convenient stapling (up to 50-sheet jobs), job offset capability, and additional output capacity. The stacker has three bins: a 100-sheet bin, a 500-sheet bin, and a 1000-sheet bin. ◦ Optional booklet-maker finisher: Provides convenient stapling (up to 50-sheet jobs), saddle-stitching (up to 15-sheet booklets), single-sheet v-folding, job separation and offset capability, as well as additional output capacity. The booklet maker finisher has three bins: two 1000-sheet bins and one bin that can hold up to 25 saddle-stitched booklets. <p>NOTE: The output bin capacities are based on 75 g/m² (20 lb) paper. Heavier paper decreases the capacity.</p>
Languages and fonts	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • HP Printer Control Language (PCL) 6 • HP PCL 5 • HP PS Emulation • Direct PDF • 80 scalable TrueType PS typefaces
Print cartridges/image drums (4 of each)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Two-part toner/imaging system • Print cartridges print up to 17,000 pages at 5% coverage • Image drums print up to 35,000 pages at 5% coverage • Authentic HP print cartridge detection • Automatic toner strip remover
Supported operating systems	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Microsoft® Windows 2000, Windows® XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Vista® • Macintosh OS X, v10.2.8 , v10.3, v10.4, v10.5, and later • Novell NetWare • Unix® • Linux
Connectivity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Local area network (LAN) connector (RJ-45) for the embedded HP Jetdirect print server • Two enhanced input/output (EIO) slots • USB 2.0 connection

Table 1-2 Features (continued)

Environmental features	• Sleep setting saves energy
	• High content of recyclable components and materials
Security features	• Secure Disk Erase
	• Security lock (optional)
	• Job retention
	• User PIN authentication for stored jobs
	• IPv6 security

Product comparison

Table 1-3 Product models

Model	Features
HP Color LaserJet CP6015n 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 100-sheet multipurpose input tray (Tray 1) • 500-sheet input tray (Tray 2) • HP Jetdirect embedded print server for connecting to a 10/100Base-TX network • 512 megabytes (MB) of RAM
HP Color LaserJet CP6015dn 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 100-sheet multipurpose input tray (Tray 1) • 500-sheet input tray (Tray 2) • HP Jetdirect embedded print server for connecting to a 10/100Base-TX network • 512 MB of RAM • Duplexer
HP Color LaserJet CP6015de 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 100-sheet multipurpose input tray (Tray 1) • 500-sheet input tray (Trays 2) • HP Jetdirect embedded print server for connecting to a 10/100Base-TX network • 512 MB of RAM • Duplexer • Meets ENERGY STAR guidelines, Version 1.0
HP Color LaserJet CP6015x 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 100-sheet multipurpose input tray (Tray 1) • Two 500-sheet input trays (Trays 2 and 3) • HP Jetdirect embedded print server for connecting to a 10/100Base-TX network • 512 MB of RAM • Duplexer
HP Color LaserJet CP6015xh 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 100-sheet multipurpose input tray (Tray 1) • Four 500-sheet input trays (Trays 2, 3, 4, and 5) • HP Jetdirect embedded print server for connecting to a 10/100Base-TX network • 512 MB of RAM • Duplexer • 40 gigabyte (GB) hard drive.

Printing-system software

Topics:

- [System requirements](#)
- [Supported operating systems](#)
- [Availability](#)

System requirements

The system requirements for installing and using the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series printing-system software for Windows and Macintosh are as follows:

- Same system requirements for running the supported operating system
- Latest operating system updates installed through Windows Update
- 500 MB of available hard disk space
- Mac OS X v10.2.8 and later with 150 MB of free hard disk space
- CD or DVD drive, or Internet connection
- Dedicated universal serial bus (USB 1.1 or 2.0) connectivity port or network connection

Supported operating systems

Windows operating systems provide full-featured support for the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product. Operating systems that are not described here provide varying levels of functionality.

Windows XP is used to denote Windows XP Home Edition, Windows XP Professional, and Windows XP Media Edition unless noted otherwise. Windows Vista is used to denote Windows Vista Home Basic, Windows Vista Home Premium, Windows Vista Business, and Windows Vista Ultimate unless noted otherwise.

The following operating systems support the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product:

- Windows 2000
- Windows XP (32-bit and 64-bit)
- Windows Server 2003 (32-bit and 64-bit)
- Windows Vista (32-bit and 64-bit)

In any of the supported operating systems, you must have administrator privileges to install the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series printing-system software.

For more information about the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product, go to the following Web site:

www.hp.com/support/cljcp6015

Print driver support in other operating systems

The HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product is also supported in the following operating environments:

- Mac OS X (v10.2.8 or later). For more information, go to the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/cljcp6015_software

- Linux. For more information, go to the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/linuxprinting

- UNIX. For more information, go to the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/jetdirectunix_software

- UNIX model scripts. Available *only* on the Web at the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/unixmodelscripts.

- Windows Terminal Server

- Windows Cluster Server 8

- HP OpenVMS. For more information, go to the following Web site:

h71000.www7.hp.com/openvms/print/

- Tru64 UNIX printing. For more information, go to the following Web site:

h30097.www3.hp.com/printing/

- SAP printing. For more information, go to the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/sap/print

Availability

This section provides information about the availability of the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series printing-system software and related software and firmware. Printing-system software on a CD is available from HP fulfillment centers.

Printing-system software on the Web

All software that is contained on the installation CD is also available on the Web.

Web deployment is the preferred method for obtaining the latest software. The Web site offers an option for automatic e-mail notification about new software releases.

 **NOTE:** This STR describes drivers that are shipped with the printing-system software CD. This STR does *not* describe any drivers that might be released for use by support personnel.

The HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series printing-system software is available for download at the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/cljcp6015_software

In-box printing-system software CD

The software CD for the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product contains a variety of files for installing the printing-system software on the computer. This section describes the files that are available on the software CD and provides additional information about support and availability.

The HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series printing-system software CD is divided into two partitions, one for Windows operating systems and one for Macintosh operating systems.

The files in each partition include documentation files and files that are required in order to install and uninstall the printing-system components.

HP LaserJet software CD, Windows partition

 **NOTE:** For information about the contents of the Macintosh partition of the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series printing-system software CD, see [HP LaserJet software CD, Macintosh partition on page 285](#).

The root directory in the Windows partition of the software CD contains the AUTORUN.EXE file, the SETUP.EXE file, and the following directories and support files:

- Autorun
- Drivers
- Fonts
- HP TCP Port Monitor
- Manuals
- Temp

The printing-system files for each language reside in the following directories:

- Drivers
- Manuals

CD versions and language support

The HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series printing-system software CD is available in a single version which contains the following components and languages.

Table 1-4 HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series supported languages

Language	Two-letter abbreviation	HP-preferred name	File designation
Arabic	AR	Arabic	ARWW
Catalan	CA	Catalan	CAWW
Croatian	HR	Hrvatski	HRWW
Czech	CS	Cestina	CSWW
Danish	DA	Dansk	DAWW
Dutch	NL	Nederlands	NLWW
English	EN	English	ENWW
Finnish	FI	Suomi	FIWW

Table 1-4 HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series supported languages (continued)

Language	Two-letter abbreviation	HP-preferred name	File designation
French	FR	Francais	FRWW
German	DE	Deutsch	DEWW
Greek	EL	Greek	ELWW
Hebrew	HE	Hebrew	HEWW
Hungarian	HU	Magyar	HUWW
Indonesian	ID	Indonesian	IDWW
Italian	IT	Italiano	ITWW
Japanese	JA	Japanese	JAWW
Korean	KO	Korean	KOWW
Norwegian	NO	Norsk	NOWW
Polish	PL	Polski	PLWW
Portuguese	PT	Portugues	PTWW
Romanian	RO	Romanian	ROWW
Russian	RU	Russian	RUWW
Simplified Chinese	ZHCN	Simplified Chinese	ZHCN
Slovak	SK	Slovak	SKWW
Slovenian	SL	Slovenian	SLWW
Spanish	ES	Espanol	ESWW
Swedish	SV	Svenska	SVWW
Thai	TH	Thai	THWW
Traditional Chinese	ZHTW	Traditional Chinese	ZHTW
Turkish	TU	Turkce	TUWW

Driver languages

The HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product provides driver support in the following languages.

Table 1-5 Driver Languages

Component	Language list
HP PCL 6 Print Driver	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Arabic
HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Catalan
HP PS Universal Print Driver	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Czech • Danish • German • Greek • English

Table 1-5 Driver Languages (continued)

Component	Language list
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Spanish Finnish French Hebrew Hungarian Indonesian Italian Japanese Korean Dutch Norwegian Polish Portuguese Russian Slovak Swedish Thai Turkish Simplified Chinese Traditional Chinese

Installer languages

The HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product provides installer component support in the following languages.

Table 1-6 Installer component languages

Component	Language list
Administrator install	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Arabic
CD Browser	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Catalan
Common Windows Installer	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Czech
Web Registration (with the following exceptions)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Danish
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Arabic, Hebrew, Japanese support in English only 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> German
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Catalan and Korean support in Spanish only 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Greek
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No support for Indonesian, Slovenian 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> English

Table 1-6 Installer component languages (continued)

Component	Language list
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Spanish Finnish French Hebrew Hungarian Indonesian Italian Japanese Korean Dutch Norwegian Polish Portuguese Russian Slovak Slovenian Swedish Thai Turkish Simplified Chinese Traditional Chinese

Documentation languages

The HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product provides documentation in the following languages.

Table 1-7 Documentation languages

Component	Language list
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series User Guide (.PDF file)</i> <i>HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series User Guide (.CHM file)</i> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Arabic Catalan Czech Danish German Greek English

Table 1-7 Documentation languages (continued)

Component	Language list
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Embedded Web Server User Guide (.PDF file)</i> (with the following exceptions) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Catalan documentation in Spanish only ◦ No documentation in the following languages: Arabic, Czech, Greek, Hebrew, Hungarian, Indonesian, Japanese, Korean, Polish, Romanian, Russian, Slovak, Slovenian, Thai, Turkish, Simplified Chinese, Traditional Chinese • <i>HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Driver Preconfiguration User Guide</i> (Available in English only) • <i>HP JetDirect Administrator's Guide</i> (With the following exceptions) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Catalan documentation in Spanish only ◦ No documentation in Arabic, Greek, Hebrew, Indonesian, Romanian, Slovak, Slovenian, Turkish • <i>HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Install Notes (.HTML file)</i> • <i>HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Installer Customization Guide</i> (With the following exceptions) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ No documentation in Indonesian, Romanian, Slovak, Slovenian 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Spanish • Finnish • French • Hebrew • Hungarian • Indonesian • Italian • Japanese • Korean • Dutch • Norwegian • Polish • Portuguese • Romanian • Russian • Slovak • Slovenian • Swedish • Thai • Turkish • Simplified Chinese • Traditional Chinese

Documentation availability

 **NOTE:** For information about language support for the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product, see [CD versions and language support on page 9](#).

The following table lists the availability of HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series printing-system documentation by operating system.

Table 1-8 Documentation availability

Document	Windows 2000/XP/ Server 2003/Vista	Macintosh
<i>HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series User Guide</i> (.PDF file)	x	x
<i>HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series User Guide</i> (.CHM file)	x	
<i>HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Install Notes</i>	x	
Show Me How content	x	
<i>HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Embedded Web Server User Guide</i>	x	x
<i>HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide</i>	x	x
<i>Color Printing Access and Usage</i>	x	
<i>HP Driver Preconfiguration User Guide</i>	x	
<i>Installer Customization Guide</i>	x	

Access to HP LaserJet documents depends on the type of document and its location:

- Some documents can be opened from the CD Browser.
- Some documents appear on the software CD and can be opened by navigating to the folder where they reside.
- Some documents are available on the Web through links in the CD Browser or CD folders.

Documents are available in the following file formats:

- **Portable Document Format (.PDF).** The HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series printing-system software CD includes Adobe® Acrobat® Reader for viewing online documentation.
- **Compiled HTML (.CHM).** When you click a documentation link to a .CHM document, a Microsoft HTML Viewer opens the file on the computer screen.
- **Hypertext Markup (.HTM).** When you click a documentation link to an .HTM document, a Web browser opens the file on the computer screen.
- **Rich Text format (.RTF).** This is a text file. You can navigate to files and open them in Microsoft Word or Microsoft WordPad.

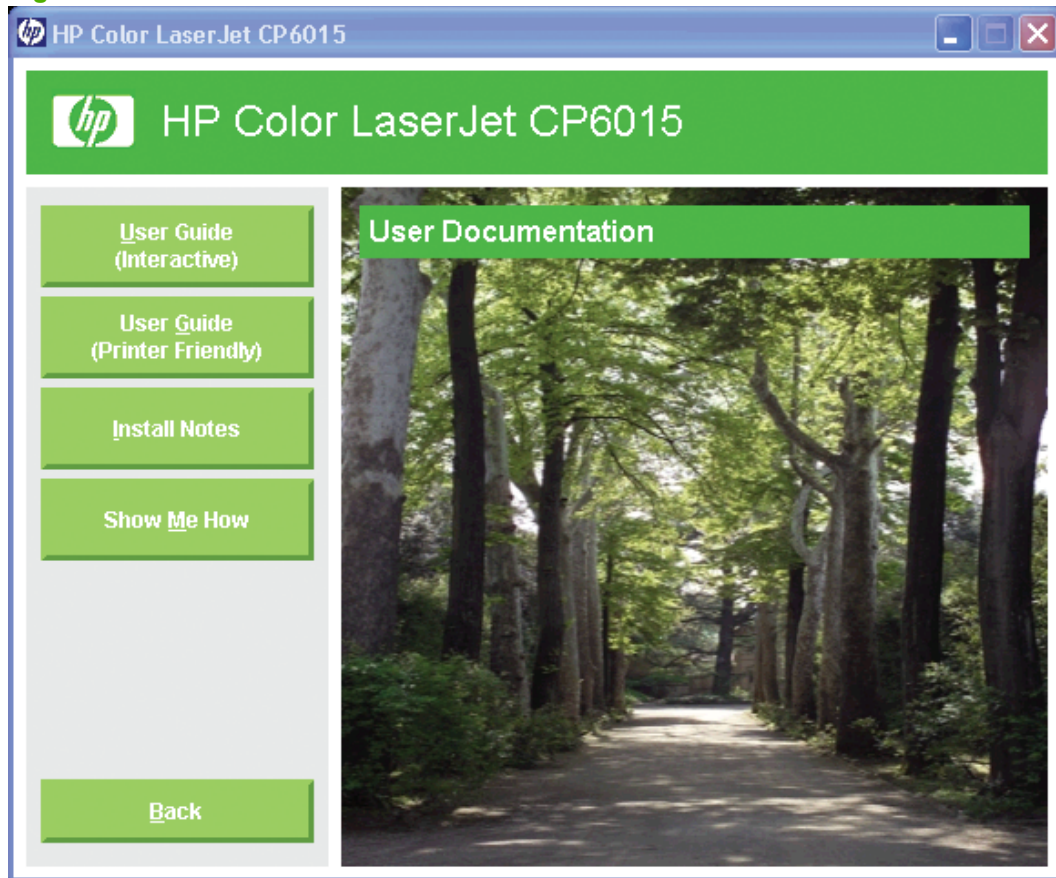
Documentation for the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series is divided into the following categories:

- [User documentation](#)
- [Administrator documentation](#)

User documentation

The following figure shows the User Documentation screen, which appears when you click **User Documentation** on the main screen of the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series printing-system software CD.

Figure 1-1 Installation software CD – User Documentation screen



HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series User Guide

The *HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series User Guide* describes the basic product features.


To view this guide from the software CD, follow these steps:

1. In the main screen of the CD browser, click **User Documentation**.
2. Click **User Guide (Interactive)**.

The guide opens as a Windows Help file (.CHM file). This readable, onscreen version of the guide is provided in accordance with the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA).

You can also gain access to the file by following these steps:

1. Insert the software CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the Manuals\<language> folder.
3. Open the file that has the appropriate file name:

 **NOTE:** The "XXXX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For instance, the file name for the French version of the guide is CP6015_USE_FRWW.CHM


The *HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series User Guide* is provided as a .PDF file, which is viewable with Adobe Reader and which you can print. To print the guide, follow these steps:

1. In the CD Browser, click **User Documentation**.
2. Click **User Guide (Printer Friendly)**. The guide opens.
3. Print the guide.

You can also gain access to the file by following these steps:

1. Insert the software CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the Manuals\<language> folder.
3. Open the file that has the appropriate file name:

CP6015_USE_XXWW.PDF

 **NOTE:** The "XXXX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For instance, the file name for the French version of the guide is CP6015_USE_FRWW.PDF

When you have the file open, you can click **File** and then click **Save As** to save a copy of the file to another location.

HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Install Notes

The *HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Install Notes* (in .HTM format) contains important information about product features, instructions for installing the printing-system software, and technical assistance.


To view this guide from the software CD, follow these steps:

1. In the main screen of the CD browser, click **User Documentation**.
2. Click **Install Notes**.

You can also gain access to the file by following these steps:

1. Insert the software CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the Manuals\<language> folder.
3. Open the file that has the appropriate file name:

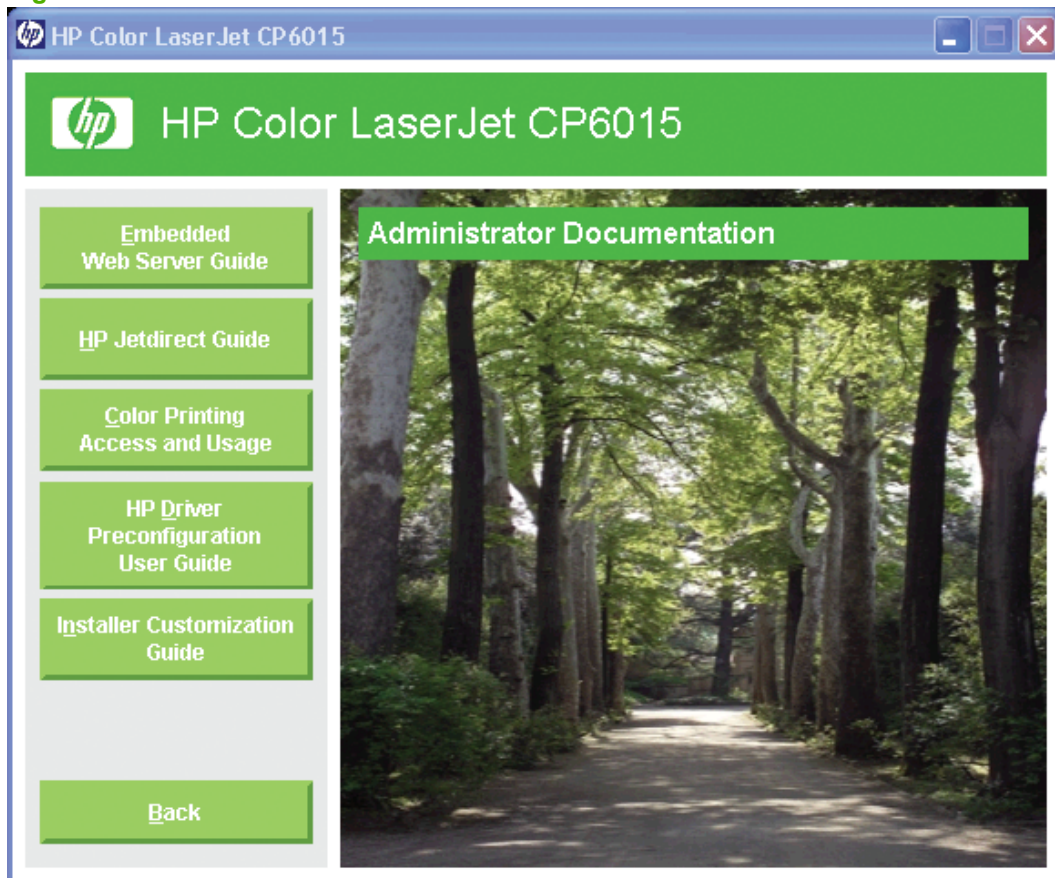
CP6015_INSTALL-NOTE_XXXX.HTM

 **NOTE:** The "XXXX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For instance, the file name for the French version of the document is CP6015_INSTALL-NOTE_FRWW.HTM.

Administrator documentation

The following figure shows the Administrator Documentation screen, which appears when you click **Administrator Documentation** on the main screen of the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series printing-system software CD.

Figure 1-2 Installation software CD – Administrator Documentation screen



HP Embedded Web Server User Guide

The *HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Embedded Web Server User Guide* (in .PDF format) provides information about device status, settings, and networking for the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product.

To view this guide from the software CD, follow these steps:

1. In the main screen of the CD browser, click **Administrator Documentation**.
2. Click **Embedded Web Server Guide**.

You can also gain access to the file by following these steps:

1. Insert the software CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the Manuals\<language> folder.
3. Open the file that has the appropriate file name:

CP6015_EWS_XXWW.PDF



NOTE: The "XXXX" in the file name corresponds to the language. In French, the file name is CP6015_EWS_FRWW.PDF.

When you have the file open, you can click **File** and then click **Save As** to save a copy of the file to another location.

HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide

The *HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide* is a network administrator's guide (in .PDF format) that contains information about connecting the product directly to a network.

To view this guide from the software CD, follow these steps:

1. In the main screen of the CD browser, click **Administrator Documentation**.
2. Click **HP Jetdirect Guide**.

You can also gain access to the file by following these steps:

1. Insert the software CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the Manuals\<language> folder.
3. Open the file that has the appropriate file name:

HPJDAG_XXWW.PDF



NOTE: The "XXXX" in the file name corresponds to the language. In French, the file name is HPJDAG_FRWW.PDF.

When you have the file open, you can click **File** and then click **Save As** to save a copy of the file to another location.

2 Software description

Introduction

The HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product comes with software and installers for Microsoft Windows and Apple Computer, Inc., Macintosh systems. Linux and UNIX systems are supported, and software is available on the Web. For information about specific system installers, drivers, and components, see the section that corresponds to that system. For information about Mac software, see [Macintosh software and utilities on page 281](#).

This section contains information about the following topics:

- [Windows printing-system software features](#)
- [Driver Configuration for Windows](#)
- [HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool](#)
- [Color Access Control](#)
- [International Color Consortium profiles](#)
- [PANTONE color profiles](#)
- [HP Easy Printer Care](#)
- [HP Embedded Web Server](#)
- [HP Web Jetadmin](#)
- [Font support](#)
- [HP Driver Deployment Utility](#)

Windows printing-system software features

This section contains information about the following topics:

- [Printing system and installer](#)
- [HP Color LaserJet print drivers](#)

Printing system and installer

The following sections contain information about the printing-system software and the installer on the software CD that came with the product.

HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series printing-system software CD for Windows systems

For the Microsoft Windows environment (Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Vista), the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series printing-system software CD provides an interactive CD browser that you can use to install the print drivers and related components, and to gain access to online user documentation, a customization utility, Adobe Acrobat Reader software, and optional HP software.

The following figure shows the main screen of the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series printing-system software CD (part of the interactive CD browser), which appears when you insert the printing-system software CD in a CD-ROM drive. If the screen does not appear when you insert the software CD, follow these steps to open the CD browser:

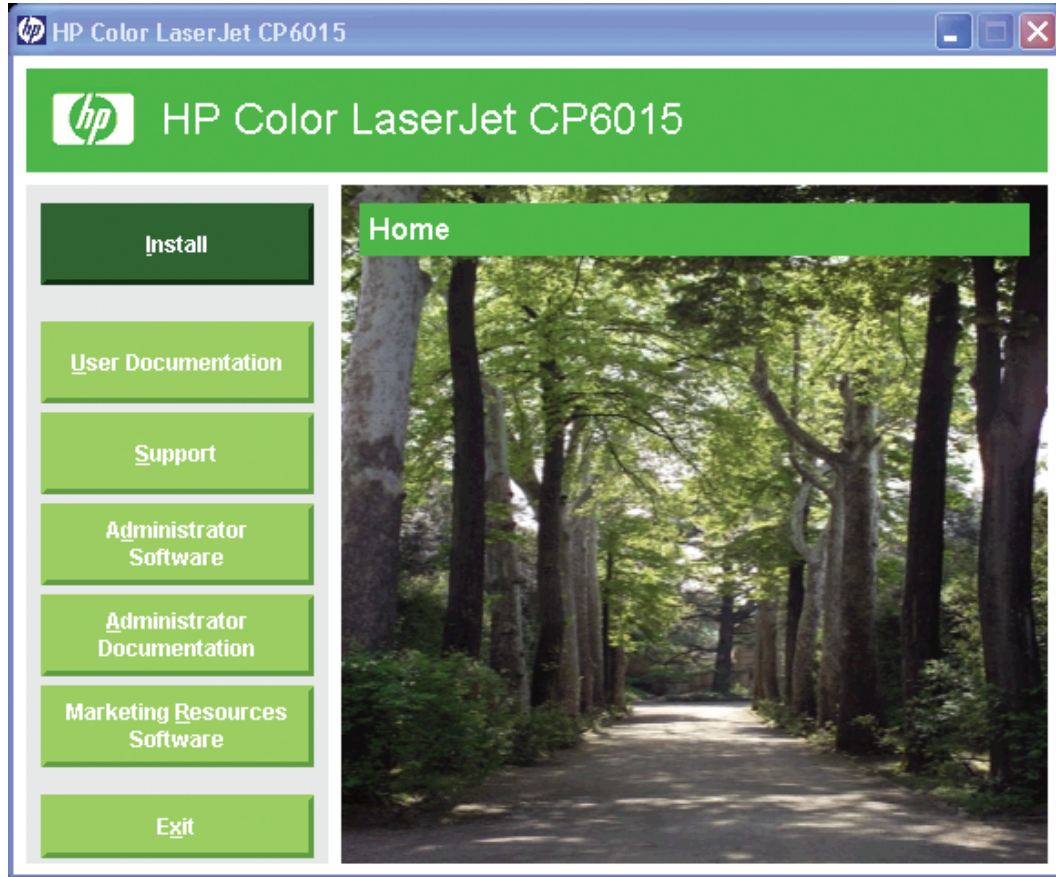
1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **All Programs**, and then click **Accessories**.

For all other Windows operating systems, click **Start**.

2. Click **Run**.

3. Click **Browse....** and navigate to the root directory of the software CD.
4. Double-click the SETUP.EXE file to start the installer.

Figure 2-1 Installation software CD browser



The main screen of the software CD contains installation and documentation options in the left panel. As you move the cursor over each option, a description of the option appears under the product banner.

The following options are available on the main screen of the printing-system software CD.

- **Install.** The installation wizard guides you through the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series printing-system software installation. You are given the choice of performing a Recommended Installation or an Advanced Installation. If you select Recommended Installation, only the recommended software is installed. If you select Advanced Installation, you can select the components that you want to install.
- **User Documentation.** Use this option to view the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series user documentation. The following document options are available when you click this option:
 - **User Guide (Interactive)**
 - **User Guide (Printer Friendly)**
 - **Install Notes**
 - **Show Me How**

- **Support.** To increase productivity and get the most use from your HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product, you can view a list of links to HP Web sites. The following options are available:
 - **Product Registration.** Use this option to register your product online. After Web registration, you can gain access to support and services, manage your profile, and sign up for free support alerts, driver notices, and personalized newsletters.
 - **Color Printing Access and Usage.** Use this option to enable or disable color printing and to track color usage.
 - **Shop for Supplies.** Click here for information about ordering HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product supplies.
 - **Product Information.** Click this option for HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product support information and updates.
 - **hp.com.** Click this link to go to the HP home Web page for information about products and services, support, drivers, and HP online stores.
- **Administrator software.** Click this option to see a list of administrator software available for the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product. The following options are available.
 - **HP Universal Print Driver.** Clicking this link redirects the browser to the HP Web site that provides more information about the HP Universal Print Driver and downloadable software.
 - **Installer Customization Wizard.** Use this wizard to customize the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series installer by presetting the installation options in a response file. The installer that you have customized can then be used for silent, unattended installation. For more information about how to use the Installer Customization Wizard, see the *Installer Customization Guide* under **Administrator Documentation** on the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series CD.
 - **HP Web Jetadmin.** Click this option to download HP Web Jetadmin software from the Web for a Web browser-based network-management tool designed for network administrators.
 - **HP Easy Printer Care.** Use this option to download and install the HP Easy Printer Care software. This product management tool helps track and maintain the products by providing information about status, alert notifications, usage reports, and supplies ordering for up to 15 products.
- **Administrator Documentation.** Use this option to view the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Administrator documentation. The following document options are available when you click this option:
 - **Embedded Web Server Guide**
 - **HP Jetdirect Guide**
 - **Color Printing Access and Usage**
 - **HP Driver Preconfiguration User Guide**
 - **Installer Customization Guide**
- **Marketing Resources Software.** Click this option to see a list of tools, templates, classes, and more to enable you to create marketing materials in-house, to grow your business while saving money.

Installer features

The common installer is designed to provide a simple and consistent installation method for the product. The common installer is available for the Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Vista operating systems and offers the following features:

- The HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series printing-system software CD features an interactive software interface. See [HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series printing-system software CD for Windows systems on page 20](#).
- The network connection is integrated so that you can install drivers and connect to a networked product in a single process.
- The selection dialog box sets the operating-system language as the default language. You can use the installer to select any of the languages on the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series printing-system software CD.
- Ability to modify installations by adding an additional driver, adding documentation, installing fonts, and removing drivers and other installed components.
- The HP Installer Customization utility for custom installations
- Next Steps at the end of the installation process gives users the opportunity to download the HP Easy Printer Care software, as well as allowing users to register their product using Web Registration.

All of the Windows system components are installed by using the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series printing-system installer. The installer automatically detects the language of choice and the operating system. You can select the type of installation that you prefer: Recommended Installation or Advanced Installation.

HP Color LaserJet print drivers

HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series print drivers provide the printing features and communication between the computer and the product. The software CD includes software for end users and network administrators who are working in the following operating environments:

- Windows 2000 (32-bit), Windows XP (32-bit and 64-bit), Windows Server 2003 (32-bit and 64-bit), and Windows Vista (32-bit and 64-bit)
- Apple Mac OS X (v10.2.8 and later)

In Windows operating systems, automatic configuration, driver updates after a new configuration, and preconfiguration features are available with the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product.



NOTE: For additional information about installing the printing-system software, see the *HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Install Notes* on the printing-system software CD.


All of the drivers provide access to the paper-handling and print-quality features.

HP PCL 6 Print Driver, PCL 5 Universal Print Driver, and PS Universal Print Driver

All of the Windows drivers are supported by Microsoft 32-bit operating systems. Separate versions of the HP PCL 6, PCL 5 Universal Print Driver, and PS Universal Print Driver are available for Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Vista 64-bit operating systems and are also included on the printing-system software CD.


The following drivers are available on the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series printing-system software CD:

- The HP PCL 6 Print Driver for Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Vista
- HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver for Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Vista
- The HP PS Universal Print Driver for Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Vista

 **NOTE:** If you select a Recommended Installation during installation of the printing-system software, the HP PCL 6 Print Driver is installed by default.

Print-driver version numbers for Windows operating systems

Access to print-driver version numbers varies, depending on the operating system in which the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product is installed.

 **NOTE:** For a list of HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series print drivers, updated HP printing-system software, and product-support information, go to:

www.hp.com/go/cljcp6015_software

The Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Vista operating systems support the HP PCL 6, PCL 5 Universal Print Driver, and PS Emulation Universal Print Drivers. If you are using an HP driver in a Windows environment, follow these steps to find driver-version information:

1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

In Windows XP and Windows Server 2003, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

2. Right-click the product icon.
3. Click **Properties**.
4. Click the **About** tab.

You can also gain information about driver versions by clicking the **About** button that appears on most driver tabs.

Driver Configuration for Windows

The HP print drivers feature bidirectional communication technology which, in supported environments, provide automatic discovery and driver configuration for product accessories at the time of installation.

Some accessories that are automatically discovered and configured include the duplexing unit, optional paper trays, printer hard disk, and dual inline memory modules (DIMMs).

Driver autoconfiguration

Automatic discovery and driver configuration through bidirectional communication occurs in the following circumstances:

- When a print driver is installed by using Enterprise AutoConfiguration (EAC)
- When using the Update Now feature for a driver that is already installed

However, as shown in the following table, driver autoconfiguration and EAC are *not* available in Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, or Windows Vista operating systems over a direct connection when the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product is installed by using the Add Printer wizard.

Table 2-1 Availability of automatic discovery and driver configuration through bidirectional communication in Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, or Windows Vista

Connection type	Add Printer Wizard install	Common installer
Network	Yes	Yes
Direct connection	No	Yes

Bidirectional communication

In environments that support bidirectional communication, the computer communicates with the product during installation, determines the physical configuration, and then configures the driver accordingly.

Bidirectional communication is the capability of the product to respond to data inquiries from the computer and report information back, such as what type of print paper is available or what accessories are connected to the product. Bidirectional communication depends on the network operating system and on the type of connection that exists between the computer and the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series. If the connection does not have this capability (that is, if it has no bidirectional mode), it can only accept commands from the host and cannot report information back to the host computer.

Enterprise AutoConfiguration

Enterprise AutoConfiguration uses bidirectional communication to provide autoconfiguration functionality for installation of the print driver over a network, whether you use the installer on the printing-system software CD or the Add Printer wizard to install the driver. Driver installation that includes EAC is configured with the same settings as the physical configuration of the product. Configuration occurs without user interaction.

If bidirectional-communication software has been installed previously, EAC is not activated, and the pre-existing bidirectional-communication software is used to configure the print driver.

If bidirectional communication software has not been installed, EAC installs bidirectional-communication software that allows it to communicate with the product and automatically match the print driver with the

actual product configuration. EAC is activated during installation of the driver or whenever the Update Now feature is used.

If the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product configuration changes after installation, the driver can be automatically updated with the new configuration in environments that support bidirectional communication by using the Update Now feature. For more information, see [Update Now on page 27](#).

The following tables show the availability of EAC for various operating systems and network environments that support bidirectional communication.

Table 2-2 EAC availability in Microsoft Windows and Microsoft Share

Method	Connection type			Microsoft Share ¹		
				2000	XP	2000/XP host with 2000/XP client
	Network	USB				
		Jetdirect	TCP/IP	x	x	x
			IPX/SPX	x	x	x
		Standard	TCP/IP (HP)	x	x	x
			TCP/IP (MS)	x	x	x
	IPX/SPX (HP)		x	x	x	
	Add Printer	Direct connect	Parallel			
			USB			
		Network	Jetdirect	TCP/IP	x	x
IPX/SPX				x	x	x
Standard			TCP/IP (HP)	x	x	x
			TCP/IP (MS)	x	x	x
			IPX/SPX (HP)	x	x	x

¹ This column represents the following Microsoft Share configurations: Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003 Server, or Windows Vista host with Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Vista client.

² In this environment, client machines use Point and Print to download the configured driver from the host.

Table 2-3 EAC availability in Novell Netware environments

Method	Connection type		Novell		
			Netware 4.x		Netware 5.x
			Bindery queue	NDS queue	Bindery queue
Network	USB	Jetdirect	TCP/IP	x	x
	Standard	TCP/IP (HP)	x	x	x
	Standard	TCP/IP (MS ¹)	x	x	x
	Standard	IPX/SPX (HP)	x	x	x

¹ Bidirectional functionality is supported only with the client software from Novell. It is not supported with Microsoft Client Service for NetWare.

Update Now

If you have modified the configuration of the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product since installation, the driver can be automatically updated with the new configuration in environments that support bidirectional communication. Use the Update Now feature to automatically reflect the new configuration in the driver.

For example, if the product is installed and an optional paper-handling accessory is added later, use the Update Now feature to query the product and update the settings to match the new product configuration.

The feature automatically updates the registry and changes the configuration information that appears on the **Device Settings** tab.

To activate the Update Now feature, follow these steps:

1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

In Windows XP and Windows Server 2003, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.
2. Right-click the product name.
3. Click **Properties**.
4. Click **Device Settings**.
5. If necessary, click **Installable Options** to expand it and show the options.
6. In the **Automatic Configuration** drop-down menu, select **Update Now**.
7. Click **OK** to save the setting.



NOTE: The Update Now feature is not supported in environments where shared Windows 2000 or Windows XP clients are connected to Windows 2000 or Windows XP hosts.

HP Driver Preconfiguration

HP Driver Preconfiguration is a software architecture and set of tools that permits HP printing-system software to be customized and distributed in managed corporate printing environments. Using HP Driver Preconfiguration, information technology (IT) administrators in corporate and enterprise environments can preconfigure the printing and device defaults for HP print drivers before installing the drivers in the network environment.

HP Driver Preconfiguration is most beneficial when configuring print drivers for multiple workstations or print servers for print queues that share the same configuration. Two types of features can be configured:

- device settings
- printing-preferences settings

The driver is configured to match the product hardware so that access to all of the product accessories through the driver is enabled correctly (for example, for duplexing units and additional input trays). Most driver-feature settings can also be configured.

HP Driver Preconfiguration configures the driver to match the accessories that are installed on the product, or to match the settings that IT administrators make in the configuration (.CFG) file (for example, optional trays, total amount of memory, job-storage settings, or mopier settings).

The preconfiguration process consists of three basic steps:

- driver acquisition
- driver preconfiguration
- driver installation and deployment

These steps can be accomplished in different ways, depending on the tool that is being used to define the configuration.

The configuration process for driver preconfiguration is supported through three distinct tools. All three are designed with the same basic user-interface (UI) controls for interacting with the .CFG file, but are packaged differently, either to support established product installation workflows or to leave the

deployment and installation of the driver entirely up to the user. The following tools support driver preconfiguration:

- **HP Driver Configuration Editor.** The HP Driver Configuration Editor is a small, standalone, Windows-software program that the administrator can use to open the .CFG file that is associated with a particular driver and make modifications that are applied when that driver is installed on the target computer. It is intended for use in environments that have an established process for deploying drivers. This is the preconfiguration tool of choice to support any Novell or HP Print Server Appliance (PSA) Point and Print environments. It is used in the way that any ordinary Windows software program is used.

The HP Driver Configuration Editor is available at the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/hpdpc_sw

- **The HP Web Jetadmin Driver Configuration Plugin.** HP Web Jetadmin provides a queue-creation program that can be used to create printer queues on any Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003 or workstation. The HP Web Jetadmin Driver Configuration Plugin adds a number of screens to the existing queue-creation workflow from which the drivers that are being installed for the queues can be customized as part of the process. The plug-in is limited to Internet Explorer browsers. Netscape Navigator is not supported.

The HP Web Jetadmin Driver Configuration Plugin is available at the following Web site:

www.hp.com/bizsupport/wja/live/manual/8.0/html/wjacomp_winnt.html

- **Installer Customization Wizard.** The Customization Utility features an install-time mode of HP Driver Preconfiguration. IT administrators can use the utility to preconfigure the drivers for a printing-system software driver installation that uses the silent installer.
- **HP Driver Deployment Utility.** The HP Driver Deployment Utility (DDU) was created to simplify the deployment of printer drivers onto a client computer. It is a simple utility that packages the printer-driver files, and the code needed to deploy them, into 2 files: an .EXE file and a .CAB file. These files are run on the client computer to copy the printer-driver files to the Windows driver store, and for network packages, to install the product.

For detailed information about gaining access to and installing these tools, see the **HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide** at the following Web site and click on the **Manuals** link.

www.hp.com/go/hpdpc_sw

Lockable features


The following driver features can be locked to prevent end-users from changing settings:

- **Print on Both Sides** (duplex). The options are **True** or **False**.
- **Print in Grayscale.** The options are **Disable** or **Enabled**.
- **paper Type.** The options include all the paper types that the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product supports.
- **Paper Source.** The options are **Printer Auto Select**, **Manual Feed (Tray 1)**, **Tray 1**, **Tray 2**. **Tray 3** is also an option for the HP Color LaserJet CP6015x product model.
- **Output bin**
- **Job retention mode**

When a feature is locked, the selected default option is the only option that is available to users. Generally, the feature is unavailable in the driver UI after it has been locked.

Continuous export

The term "continuous export" refers to the ability of the driver to copy the latest driver settings back to the working copy of the preconfiguration file. Using this feature, the exported values can be transferred when a compatible version of the driver is used to upgrade the print driver. For instance, if the orientation is set to **Landscape** in a driver originally installed in Windows 2000, then the orientation setting automatically remains **Landscape** when the operating system is upgraded to Windows XP or Windows Server 2003. The continuous export feature functions transparently from the user's perspective and works only between drivers of identical product models.

 **NOTE:** Not all of the driver parameters can be exported; however, the exportable components are always the same as the components that can be preconfigured.

The following table shows drivers and operating systems that support HP Driver Preconfiguration.

Table 2-4 Operating systems that support HP Driver Preconfiguration

Driver	Windows 2000	Windows XP	Windows Server 2003	Windows Vista	Macintosh v. 10.2.8 and later	Linux
HP PCL 6 Print Driver	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	NA	NA
HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	NA	NA
HP PS Universal Print Driver	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	NA	NA

¹ NA: Not applicable; the driver is not supported in this operating system.

HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool

The HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool is a Web-based diagnostic software that you can use to determine whether you are using the correct and most current print driver for the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product. Two methods are available to gain access to the HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool:

1. Open an Internet browser.
2. Go to the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/drivercheck

Or, use this alternative method.

1. Open an Internet browser.
2. Go to the HP Business Support Center (BSC) at the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/bsc

3. Click the **self-help resources** link on the left navigation bar.
4. Click **automatic driver checker** to run the HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool.

When the HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool runs, the products that are currently installed on the computer appear in a list. When you select the HP product that you would like to check, the HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool gathers information about your product, drivers, and system setup in order to diagnose the software driver configuration and check the print driver. The tool then verifies whether you are using the latest driver, informs you if you are using an incorrect driver for the HP product, and lets you know if an updated driver version is available for the product. If an updated driver is available, you can download and install the latest driver version by clicking it.

The data that the HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool gathers is stored anonymously so that HP can analyze and continuously improve its diagnostic tools. No private data is gathered from the computer.

Color Access Control

The HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series has the ability to monitor and control color print-job use. For more information about color access control, go to the following Web site and look under **Learn More**.

www.hp.com/go/cac

The following table shows various tools that can be used to control color-printing access.

Table 2-5 Color access control tools

Tool	Description
HP Embedded Web Server	<p>The HP Embedded Web Server (HP EWS) is a Web-browser-based utility that provides an interface to the product that you can use to change product settings, including color access control settings. No special software needs to be installed or configured. It allows you to set color printing restrictions and view a log of color printing use. The HP EWS is designed for one-to-one product configuration monitoring and management.</p> <p>For more information, see HP Embedded Web Server on page 52.</p>
HP Web Jetadmin	<p>The HP Web Jetadmin provides an interface to the product through a Web browser on single network-administration servers. Use HP Web Jetadmin to manage HP Jetdirect-connected products within an intranet.</p> <p>For more information, see the following Web site:</p> <p>www.hp.com/go/webjetadmin</p>
Color usage job log	<p>The color usage job log shows color and monochrome print job statistics for a product.</p> <p>For more information, see HP Easy Printer Care on page 36.</p>
Product control panel	<p>Use the product control panel to restrict color use in network-connected products.</p> <p>For more information, see the following procedure.</p>

To restrict color-printing access to a network-connected HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series from the product control panel, follow these steps:

1. Press the **select** button ✓ to open the menus.
2. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to **CONFIGURE DEVICE**, and then press **select** ✓.
3. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to **SYSTEM SETUP**, and then press **select** ✓.

4. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to **RESTRICT COLOR USE**, and then press **select** ✓.
5. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to one of the following options, and then click **select** ✓:
 - **ENABLE COLOR**. This is the default setting. Use of color-printing features is unrestricted.
 - **COLOR IF ALLOWED**. Network administrators can use this setting to allow color-printing to certain users and restrict it for other users. User privileges can be set using HP EWS. For more information, see the *HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Embedded Web Server User Guide*.
 - **DISABLE COLOR**. This setting denies the use of color-printing features to all users.

International Color Consortium profiles

HP provides cyan-magenta-yellow-black (CMYK) (HPCP6015C.ICM) and standard red-green-blue (sRGB) (HPCP6015R.ICM) International Color Consortium (ICC) profiles with the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product. The CMYK profile can only be used with a postscript driver; the sRGB profile can be used with any of the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series print drivers. The profiles are available at the following HP Web site:

www.hp.com/support/cljcp6015_software

The ICC profiles describe the way color will be interpreted in the default CMYK and RGB modes. These profiles can be used for color conversions in a color-managed workflow. The sRGB profile matches the default RGB mode (sRGB), which is enabled with the **Default (sRGB)** or **Color** setting in either a PCL or postscript driver. The product interprets CMYK data according to the Specifications for Web Offset Publications (SWOP) simulation when **Default CMYK+** is the selected **CMYK Color** setting in the postscript driver, and a more accurate SWOP rendering can be produced by selecting the **SWOP** setting. This standard defines how a particular set of CMYK ink colors should behave. Emulation for Dainippon Press (DIC) and Euro-standard CMYK inks used in Asia and Europe are also available and can be selected from the print driver.

PANTONE color profiles

Most software programs that support the use of PANTONE colors for graphic objects will include the PANTONE name in the postscript output along with the color values that are assigned to the object. For best results, select a software program that uses PANTONE palette in a CMYK workspace, and print with the HP PS Universal Print Driver in Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Vista.

When **SWOP** is selected as the **CMYK Color** setting, these CMYK values provide a good reproduction of the PANTONE 4C spot-color simulations.

PANTONE provides device- and software-specific palettes for some HP Color LaserJet products. Using the custom colors in these palettes can provide an alternative match to the 4C spot-color simulation. However, files that use these palettes are not portable to other devices.

PANTONE Application Palettes are available at the following Web site:

www.hp.com/support/cljcp6015

Vector graphics, such as company logos that are created in PANTONE Application Palettes, can be imported into Microsoft Word, PowerPoint, or other Microsoft Office software programs. The color program must create an encapsulated postscript (.eps) file of the image that will be imported. Use the **Insert file** function to import the file into the Office document.



NOTE: Cutting and pasting from the clipboard does not work. These tasks do not preserve the PANTONE name or the CMYK palette value.

HP Easy Printer Care

HP Easy Printer Care is a standalone software program that manages from one to 15 products. It enables you to view the status of all HP products, set up product and status alerts, generate printer usage reports, and reorder supplies.

 **NOTE:** At this time, the **HP Easy Printer Care Software** is only available on the Web at the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/easyprintercare

Or, on the printing-system CD, click **Administrator Software**, and then click **HP Easy Printer Care** to be redirected to the HP Web site.

Installation

The **HP Easy Printer Care Software** is only available on the Web at the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/easyprintercare

Follow the instructions on the web site for downloading and installing the software.

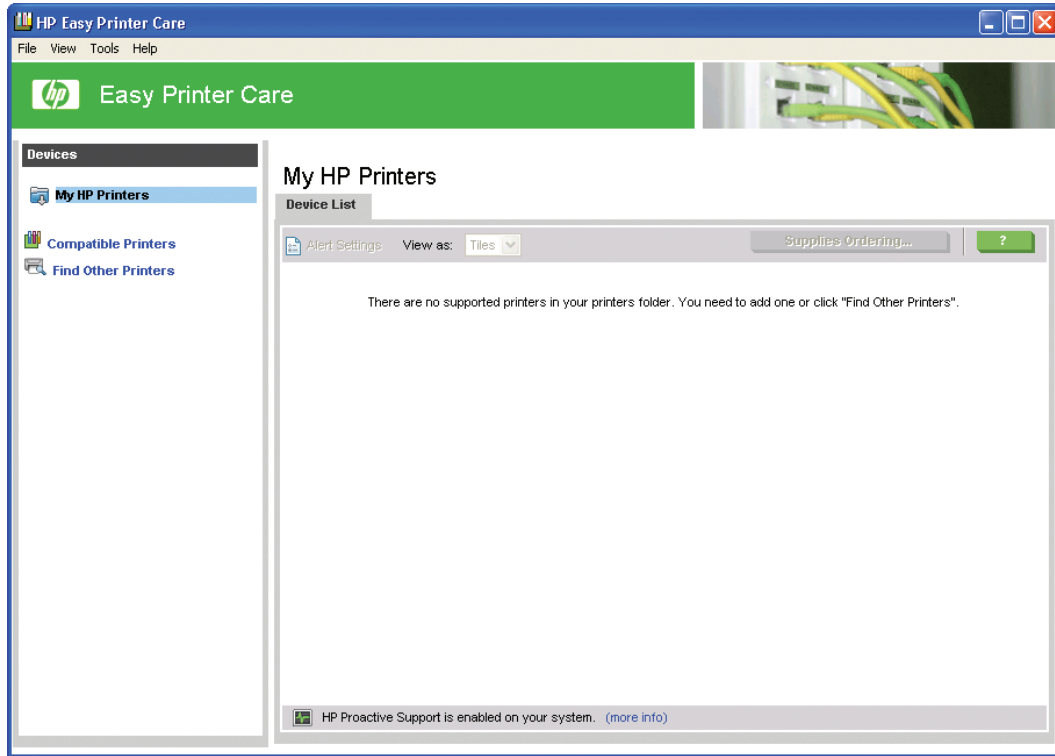
Access

To gain access to the HP Easy Printer Care once it has been installed, follow these steps:

1. Click **Start**.
2. Select **All Programs**.
3. Select **Hewlett-Packard**.

4. Select **HP Easy Printer Care**.
5. Click **Start HP Easy Printer Care**. The **My HP Printers** screen appears.

Figure 2-2 My HP Printers screen



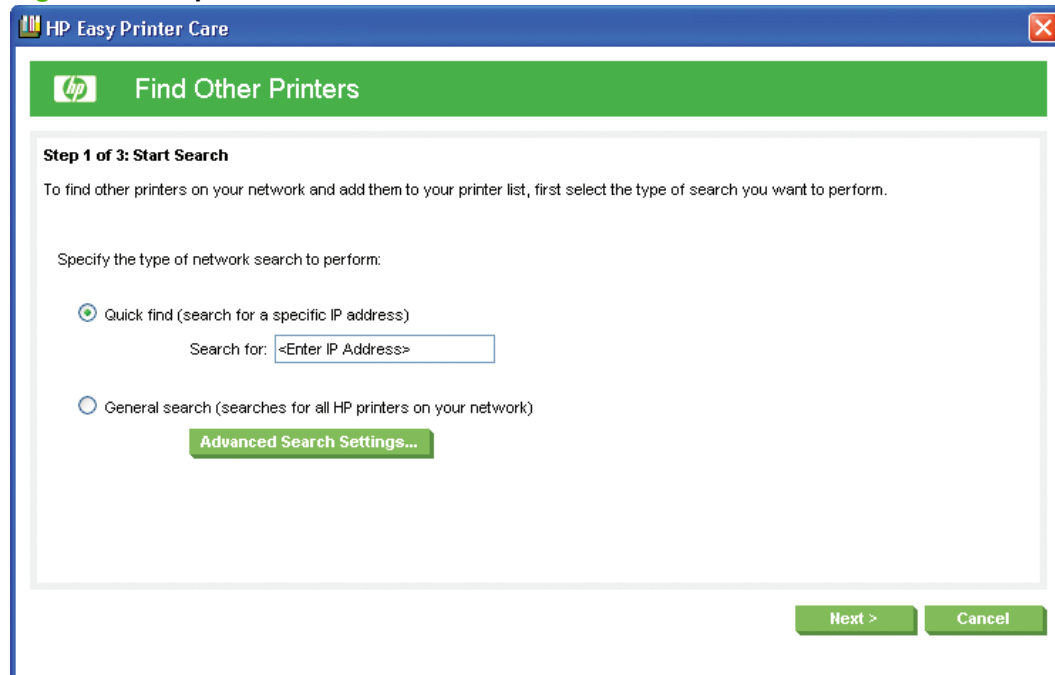
If the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product is connected directly through a USB port, an icon for the product appears in the main pane of the **My HP Printers** screen. See [Figure 2-10 MY HP Printers – HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product on page 42](#)).

If the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product is connected over a network, click **Find Other Printers**.

Find Other Printers

Click **Find Other Printers** on the left pane of the **My HP Printers** screen to open the **Step 1 of 3: Start Search** screen.

Figure 2-3 Step 1 of 3: Start Search screen



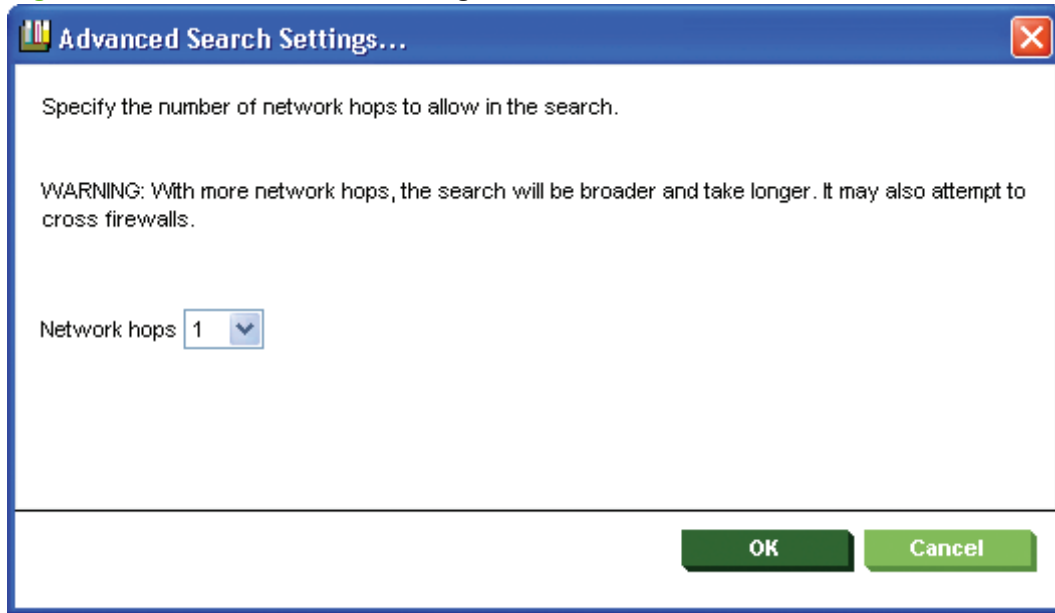
If you know the TCP/IP address of the product, type the address in the **Search for** field and then click **Next**.

To conduct a search for products over a network, select the **General search (searches for all HP printers on your network)** option.

Click **Advanced Search Properties** to open a screen that you can use to select the number of “hops” that the system makes. The **Advanced Search Settings** screen appears.

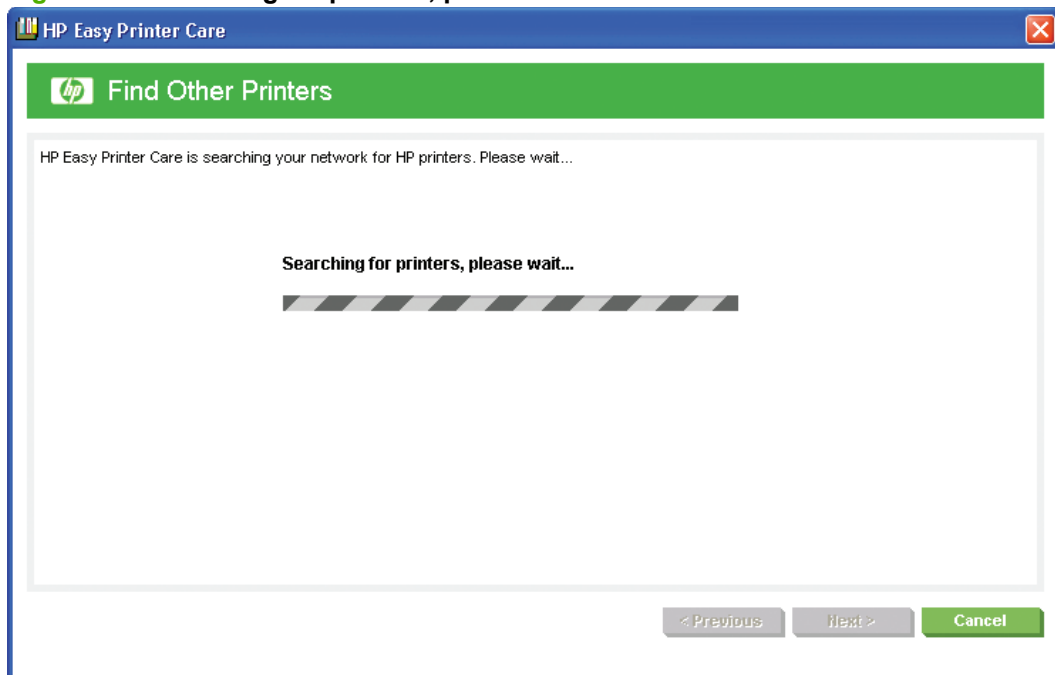
Click **Cancel** on any screen to return to the **My HP Printers** screen.

Figure 2-4 Advanced Search Settings screen



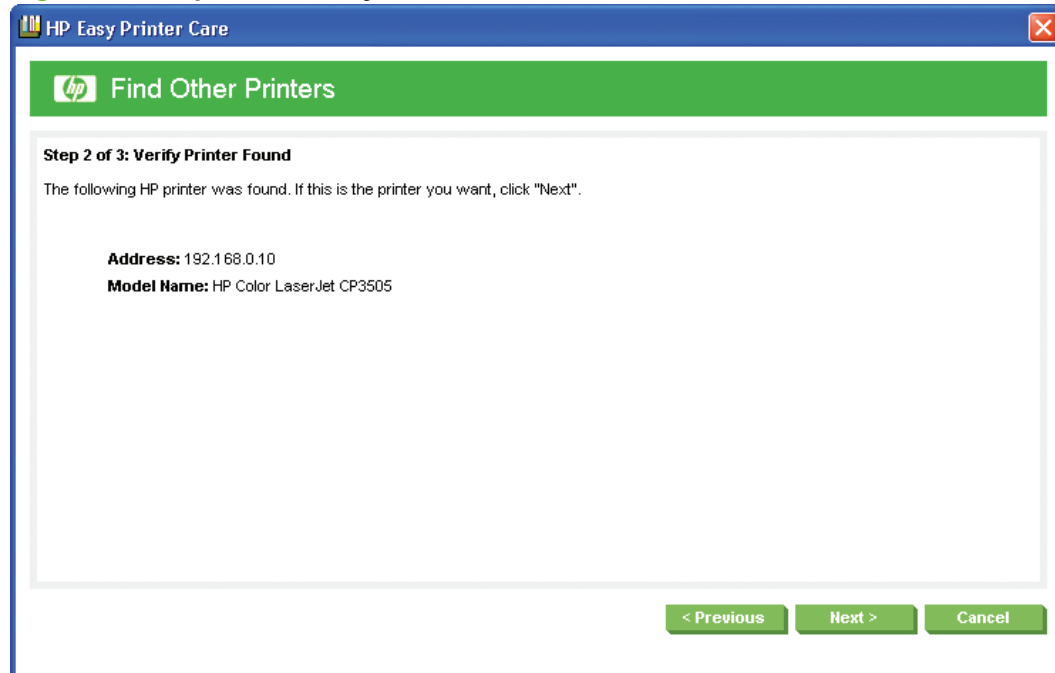
When you click **Next** on the **Find Other Printers** screen, the **Searching for printers, please wait..** screen appears.

Figure 2-5 Searching for printers, please wait.. screen



When a product has been found, one of two screens appears: the **Step 2 of 3: Verify Printer Found** screen or the **Step 2 of 3: Select Printers** screen. The screens are shown in the following figures.

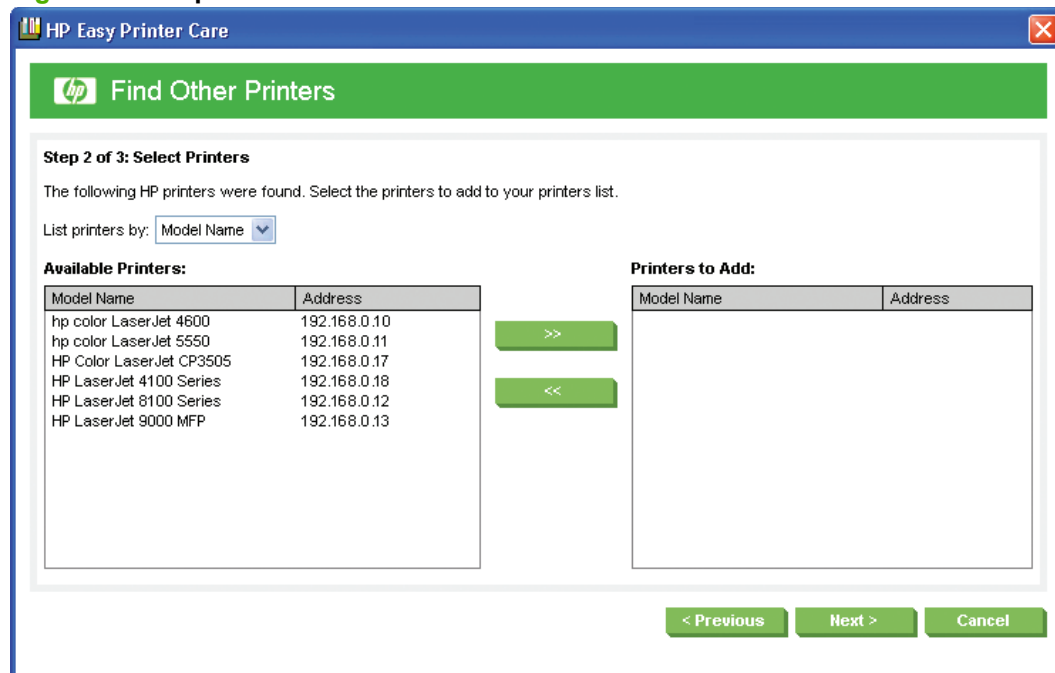
Figure 2-6 Step 2 of 3: Verify Printer Found screen



If the results do not list the product, click **Previous** to search again.

If the product that you want is listed, click **Next**.

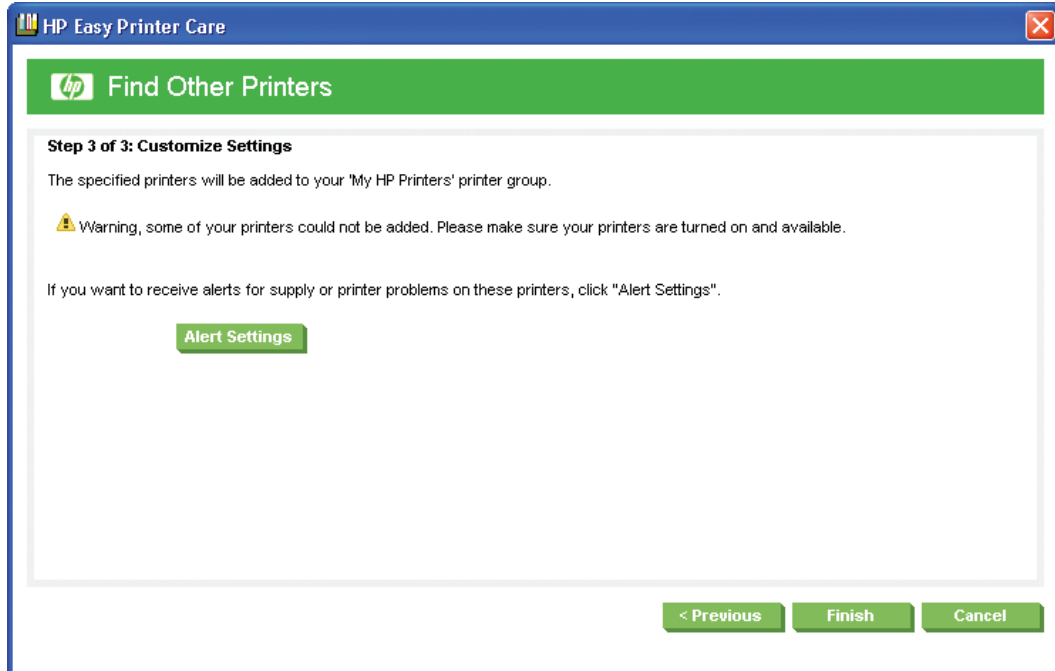
Figure 2-7 Step 2 of 3: Select Printers screen



Select the product in the **Available Printers:** pane and click the green double-arrows button. The model name moves to the **Printers to Add:** pane.

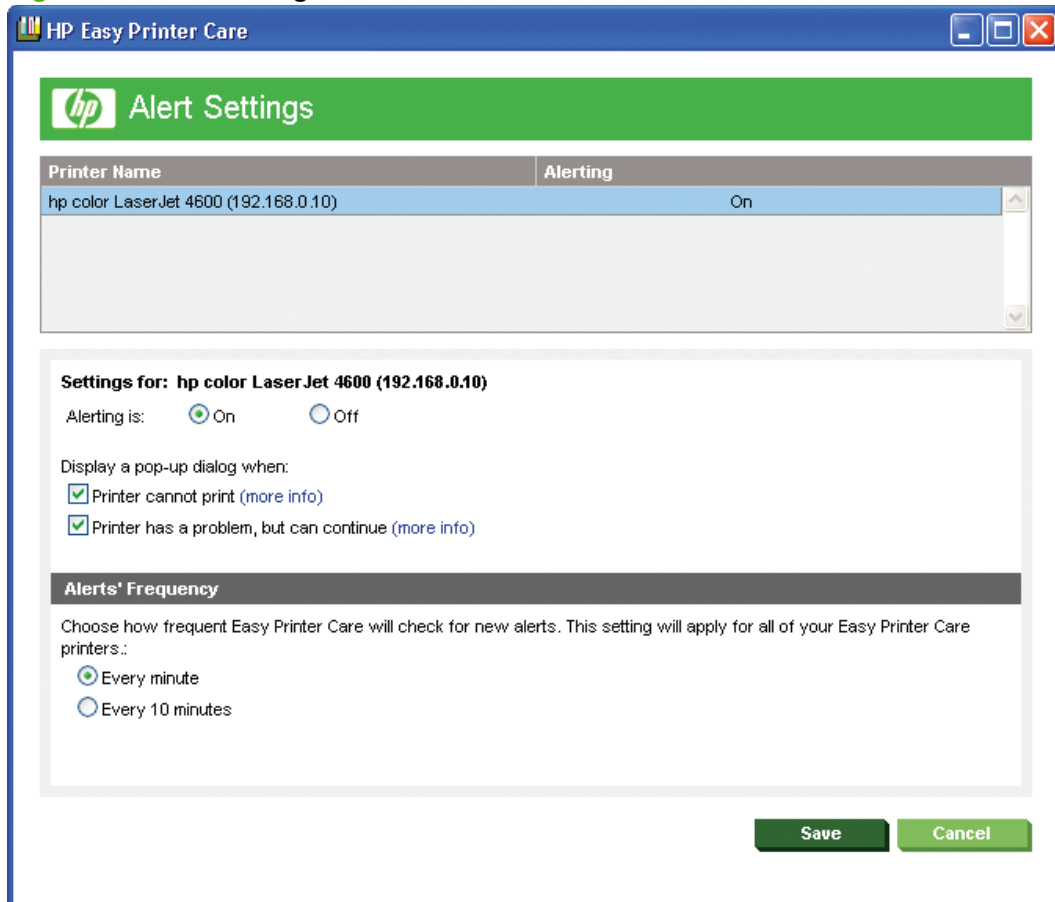
Click **Next** to add the product. The **Step 3 of 3: Customize Settings** screen appears.

Figure 2-8 Step 3 of 3: Customize Settings screen



Click **Alert Settings** to open the **Alert Settings** screen.

Figure 2-9 Alert Settings screen




Turn alert notification on and off by selecting an option in the **Settings for:** field.

Under **Printer Alerts**, select the kind of alert notifications that you want to receive:

- Printer cannot print
- Printer has a problem, but can continue

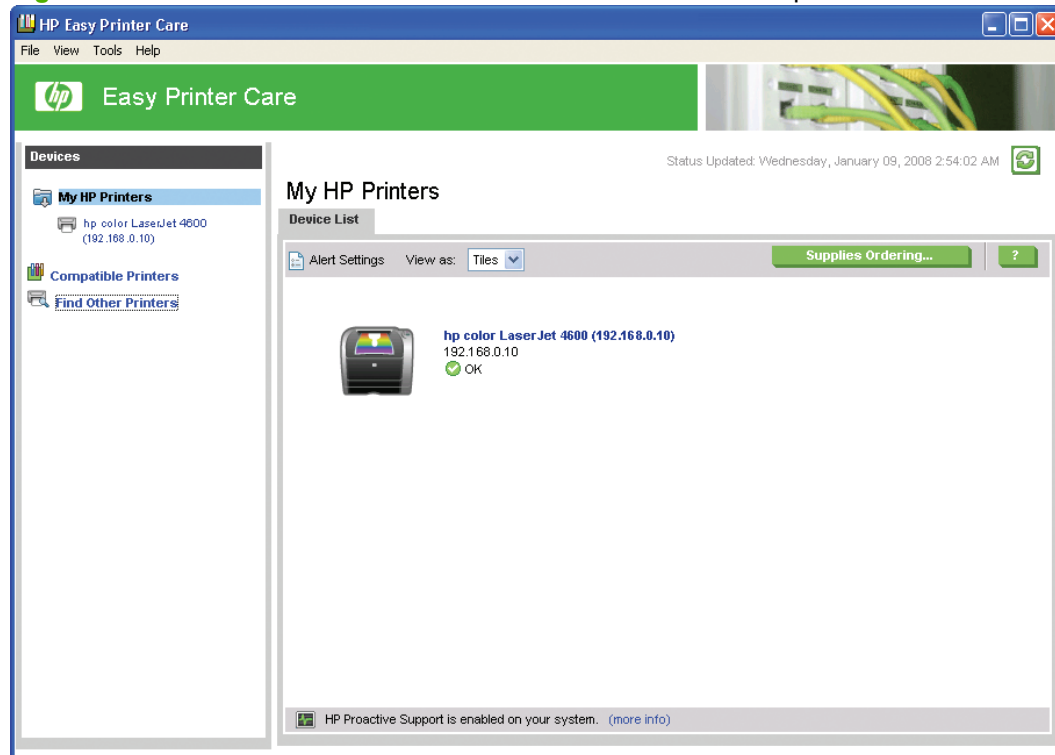
Under **Alerts' Frequency**, choose how frequent HP Easy Printer Care will check for new alerts. The following options are available:

- **Every minute**
- **Every 10 minutes**

 **NOTE:** This setting applies to all printers that you have set up in HP Easy Printer Care.

Click **Save** to save your alert-notification settings. The **My HP Printers** screen appears.

Figure 2-10 MY HP Printers – HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product



HP Easy Printer Care – Overview tab

Click the product icon on the **My HP Printers** screen to open the **Overview** tab.

Figure 2-11 Overview tab

The screenshot shows the HP Easy Printer Care application window. The left sidebar contains a 'Devices' section with 'My HP Printers' and 'Compatible Printers'. Under 'My HP Printers', the 'hp color LaserJet 4600 (192.168.0.10)' is selected. The main area displays the 'Overview' tab for this printer. At the top, it shows the printer name and IP address, and a status update timestamp. Below this, there are tabs for 'Overview' and 'Support'. The 'Overview' tab contains a 'Device Status' section with a printer icon, name, and IP address. To the right is a 'Cartridge Status' bar chart showing levels for Black, Cyan, Magenta, and Yellow. Further right is an 'Items Needing Attention' section with a green checkmark and the text 'No Problems Detected'. Below the status section is a 'Supplies Status' section with a 'Supplies Details' link. This section includes a 'Paper' table and a 'Cartridges' table. The 'Paper' table lists three trays with their respective paper types, sizes, and statuses. The 'Cartridges' table lists four cartridges with their estimated status, pages remaining, and HP part numbers. Below these tables is an 'Other Supplies' section with a table listing the Image Transfer Kit and Image Fuser Kit with their status and part numbers. A 'Notes' section at the bottom provides additional information about the status estimates. At the very bottom, a message indicates that HP Proactive Support is enabled on the system.

HP Easy Printer Care

File View Tools Help

hp color LaserJet 4600 (192.168.0.10)

Status Updated: Wednesday, January 09, 2008 2:54:02 AM

Overview Support

Alert Settings Supplies Ordering... ?

Device Status

Device: hp color LaserJet 4600 (192.168.0.10)

Cartridge Status:*

Items Needing Attention: No Problems Detected

Supplies Status Supplies Details

Paper:

Paper Source	Type	Size	Status
Tray 1	HP Any Support Type	Any Size	Out
Tray 2	HP Plain	Letter 8.5X11in.	OK
Tray 3	HP Plain	Legal 8.5X14in.	OK

Cartridges:

Print Cartridge	Estimated Status*	Pages Remaining**	HP Part Number
Black	93%	7,843	C9720A
Cyan	81%	5,064	C9721A
Magenta	54%	7,666	C9723A
Yellow	67%	8,000	C9722A

Other Supplies:

Supply Name	Estimated Status*	Pages Remaining**	HP Part Number
Image Transfer Kit	100%	120,000	C9724A
Image Fuser Kit	43%	64,151	110V-C9725A, 220V-C9726A

Notes:


* = Estimate only. Actual supply level may vary.
** = Approximate only. Pages remaining will vary depending on types of documents printed.

HP Proactive Support is enabled on your system. (more info)

The **Overview** tab shows the following information under **Device Status**:

- Printer name
- Printer TCP/IP address

- A graph showing usage for each color print cartridge
- A list of any problems that require attention

If the status of the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product changes after you open the HP Easy Printer Care screen (for instance, if you have sent a print job to the product), click  (the refresh button) in the upper-right corner of any screen where it appears.


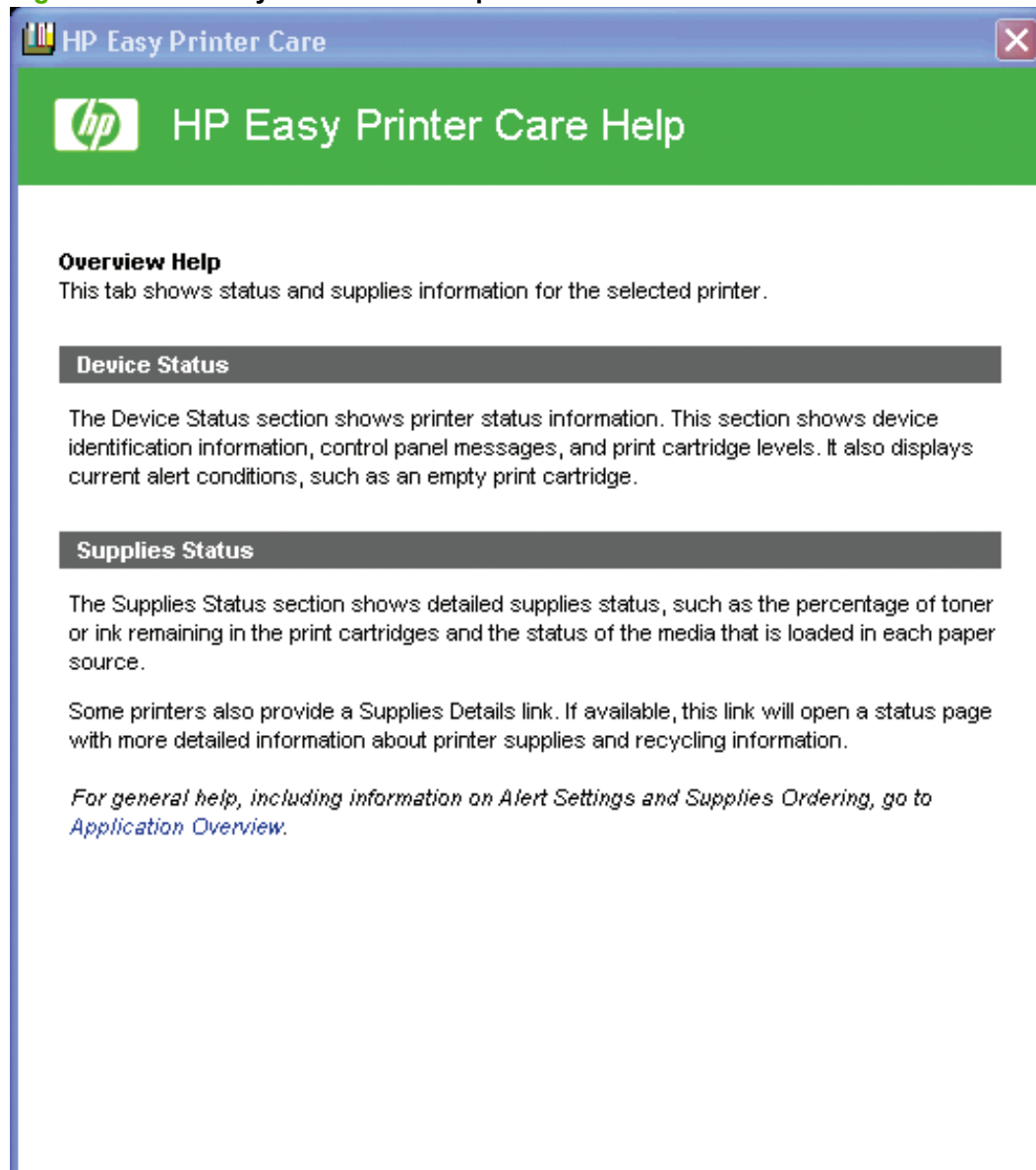
Click  (the help button) to open the **HP Easy Printer Care Help** screen.

Figure 2-12 HP Easy Printer Care Help screen



The **Overview Help** screen provides an overview of the **Device Status** and **Supplies Status** sections of the **Overview** tab.

Under **Supplies Status** on the **Overview** tab, the following information is provided about print paper:

- **Paper Source** (by tray)
- **Type** (paper type)
- **Size** (paper size)
- **Status** (OK, Out)

Under **Cartridges**, the following information is provided for each color cartridge:

- Print Cartridge (color)
- Estimated Status (percentage)
- Pages Remaining
- HP Part Number

Under **Other Supplies**, the following information is provided for supplies such as the Image Transfer Kit and the Image Fuser Kit:

- Supply Name
- Estimated Status (percentage)
- Pages Remaining
- HP Part Number

Click **Supplies Ordering...** to open the **Supplies Ordering** screen.

Figure 2-13 Supplies Ordering screen

Select the appropriate check boxes in the **Order** column for each supply that you want. In the **Quantity** column, type the quantity that you want to order in each field.

Click **Cancel** to return to the **My HP Printers** screen.

Click **Print Shopping List** for a hard-copy list of the supplies that you are ordering.

Click **Shop Online for Supplies** if you have access to the Web and would like to place an online order. The **Transfer printer information to HP SureSupply?** screen appears.

Figure 2-14 Transfer printer information to HP SureSupply? screen




If you click **Yes, please send my printer information**, only information and status about your product will be sent; no personal information will be shared. If you click **No, let me provide my printer information**, no information is sent. The **Welcome to HP SureSupply** screen opens.

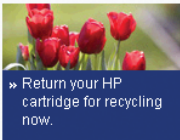
Figure 2-15 Welcome to HP SureSupply screen

[» HP Home](#) [» Products & Services](#) [» Support & Drivers](#) [» Solutions](#) [» How to Buy](#)

[» Contact HP](#) Search: [»](#)

 Welcome to HP SureSupply

SureSupply
[» About SureSupply](#)


[» Return your HP cartridge for recycling now.](#)

identify printer > shop for supplies > select vendor


Identify your Printer

Enter product name/number:
(e.g. LaserJet 4500 or 4500) [»](#)

Or select a product category:

Inkjet	LaserJet
» HP Deskjet	» HP LaserJet
» HP PSC	» HP Color LaserJet
» HP Photosmart	» HP Color LaserJet MFP
» HP Officejet	» HP LaserJet MFP
» HP Business Inkjet	» HP Mopier

Or download and run HP SureSupply Software Utility

 This application will automatically detect your printer product names and numbers. [»» Download software](#)

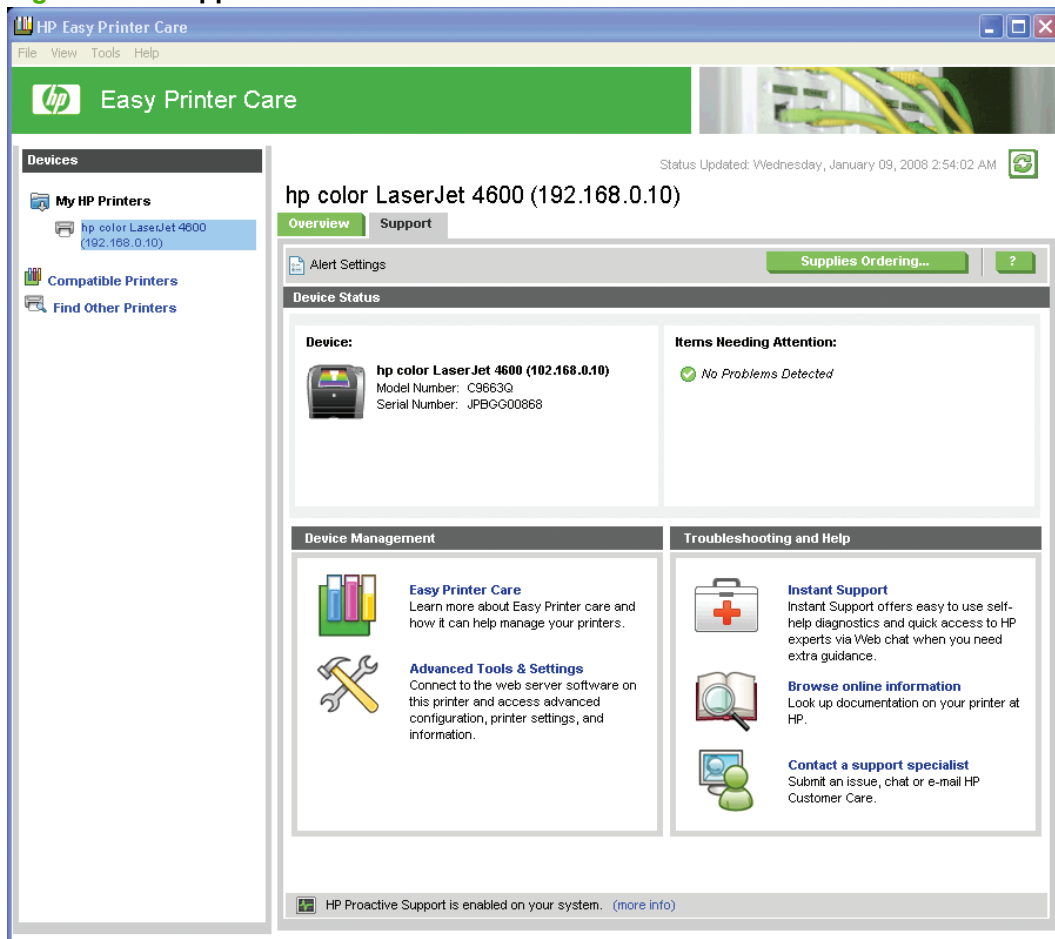
[Printable version](#)

[Privacy Statement](#) [Using this site means you accept its terms](#)
© 2008 Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

HP Easy Printer Care – Support tab

Click the **Support** tab to open the **Support** screen.

Figure 2-16 Support tab




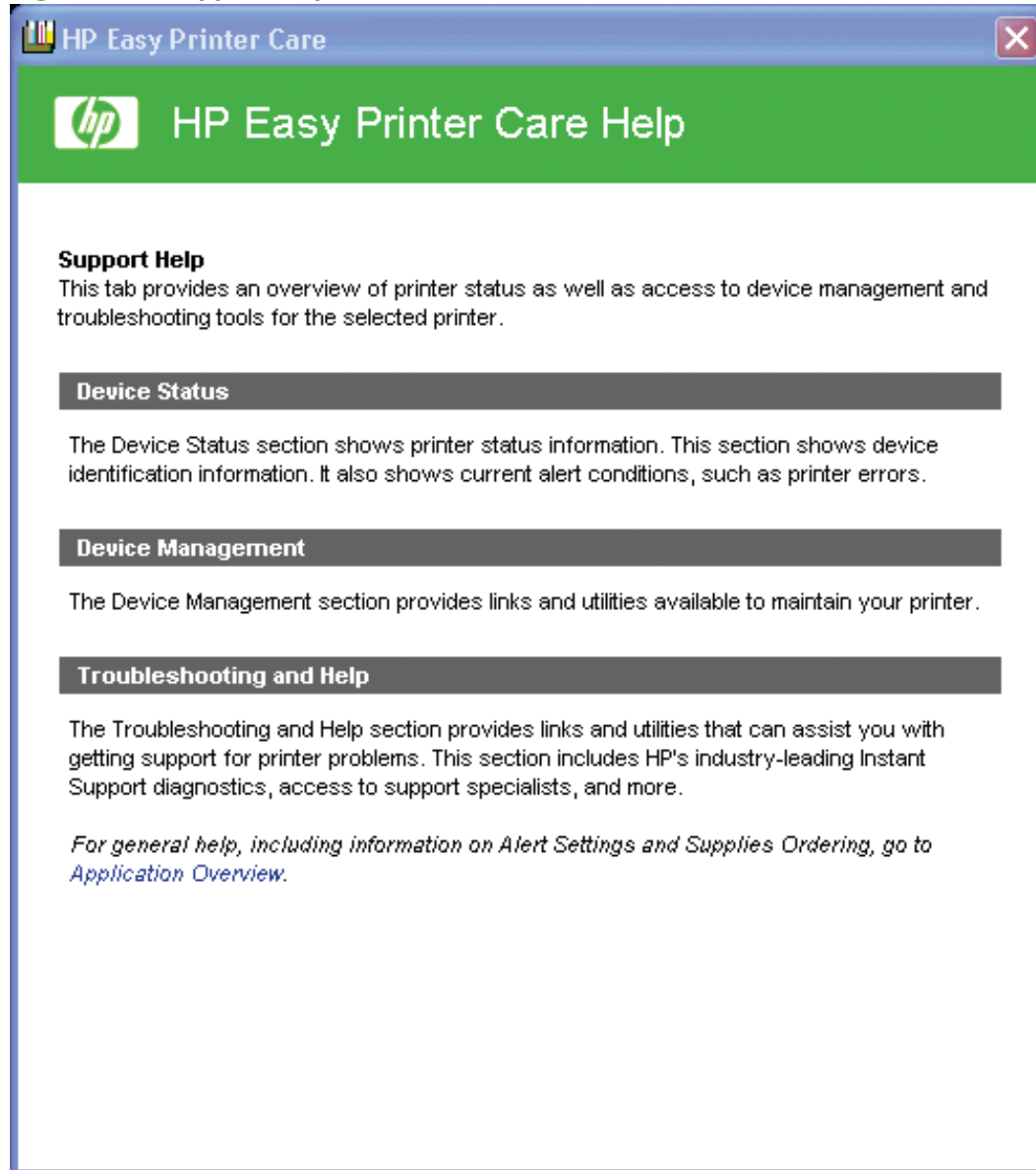
Click  (the help button) to open the **Support Help** screen.

Figure 2-17 Support Help screen



The **Support Help** screen provides an overview of the **Device Status**, **Device Management**, and **Troubleshooting and Help** sections of the **Support** tab.

On the **Support** tab, click **Supplies Ordering** to open the **Supplies Ordering** screen. The **Transfer printer information to HP InstantSupport?** screen opens. See [Figure 2-14 Transfer printer information to HP SureSupply? screen on page 47](#) to proceed with your order.


Device Management

The following tools are available in the **Device Management** pane:

- Easy Printer Care
- Advanced Tools & Settings

Clicking **Easy Printer Care** opens the Web browser to the HP web site and displays information pages about the HP Easy Printer Care software.

Clicking **Advanced Tools & Settings** opens the HP Embedded Web Server. For more information, see [HP Embedded Web Server on page 52](#) or consult the *HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Embedded Web Server User Guide*.

 **NOTE:** HP Easy Printer Care software is a Windows program and does not require any browser support. The link to the HP Embedded Web Server, however requires a Web browser.

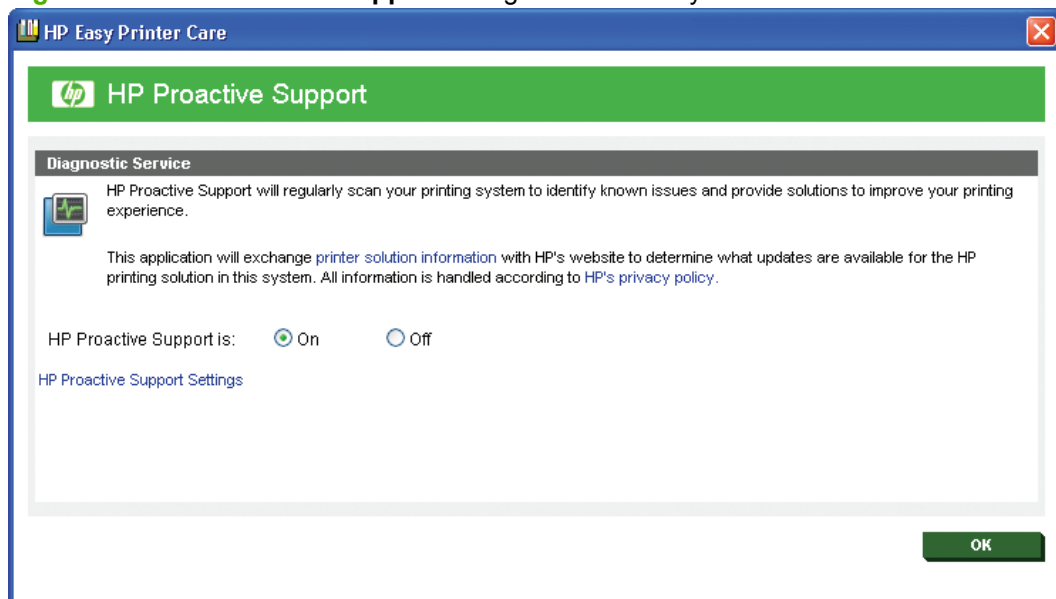
Troubleshooting and Help

The following tools are available in the **Troubleshooting and Help** pane of the **Support** tab:

- **Instant Support.** Click to open a Web page about the product to find specialized information and support.
- **Browse online information.** Click to open a Web page to find information about the product.
- **Contact a support specialist.** Click to open a Web page where you can supply information about the product and receive customized support. You can send an instant message, an e-mail, or submit a problem and view the case status online. The page also provides telephone numbers for HP customer care centers.

The **HP Proactive Support** icon appears at the bottom of most of the HP Easy Printer Care screens. Click to enable the HP Easy Printer Care software to poll the product periodically to supply diagnostic information to HP. The HP Proactive Support dialog box is shown in the following illustration.

Figure 2-18 HP Proactive Support dialog box – HP Easy Printer Care



HP Embedded Web Server

The HP Embedded Web Server (HP EWS) is a standard feature on all of the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product models when they are connected through a network.

The HP EWS provides a simple, easy-to-use solution for one-to-one product management. Instead of installing management software, such as HP Web Jetadmin, use HP EWS for remote management in offices that have a limited number of products. The only requirement is that the management console must have a supported Web browser.

In environments that have a larger number of products, in which one-to-one management is impractical, the HP Embedded Web Server and HP Web Jetadmin work together to provide scalable remote product management. Use HP Web Jetadmin for consolidated management tasks when you want to perform operations on a selected set of products. For such environments, HP provides hooks between the HP EWS and HP Web Jetadmin so that you can configure HP EWS features on multiple products in one operation. For example, you can set the security password for the HP EWS simultaneously on a cluster of products.

For additional information and a copy of the *HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Embedded Web Server User Guide*, go to the following Web site and click on the **Manuals** link: www.hp.com/support/cljcp6015.

Access to the HP EWS

To open the HP EWS and view information about the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product, open a supported Web browser and type the product transmission control protocol/internet protocol (TCP/IP) address or host name in the address field.

To find the product TCP/IP address, look for **IP Address** on the Embedded Jetdirect page, in the **TCP/IP** section. To find the host name of the product, look for **Host Name** in the **TCP/IP** section.


You also can view information about an installed HP Jetdirect print server by clicking the **Networking** tab in the HP EWS window.

The TCP/IP address also appears on the product configuration page, which you can print from the product control-panel display. Follow these steps to print a Configuration page and an Embedded Jetdirect page:

1. Press the **select** button ✓ to open the menus.
2. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to **INFORMATION**, and then press **select** ✓.
3. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to **PRINT CONFIGURATION**.
4. Press the **select** ✓ button to print the configuration page.

The HP EWS frame

Each screen in the HP EWS has a frame that contains a top banner, three category tabs, a left-aligned navigation menu bar, and a main-content area. Selecting one of the category tabs causes the corresponding left-aligned navigation bar to appear. The left-aligned navigation menu includes links to content that is appropriate for that tab. The main-content area shows information and opens options in response to navigation-tab selections and menu-bar selections.


 **NOTE:** When the HP EWS screens are opened immediately after the product is turned on, the HP EWS screens might change as you browse. Complete information becomes available when the product enters the Ready state.

See the following sections for more information about each tab or area:

- [Information tab on page 53](#)
- [Settings tab on page 56](#)
- [Networking tab on page 63](#)

Information tab

The following information is available on the HP EWS **Information** tab. To view the information, click the menu items on the left side of the HP EWS **Information** tab.

 **NOTE:** If an HP EWS password has been set, the **Information** tab is the only visible tab until the user logs in. See [Security on page 60](#) for more information.

Not all of the screens on the tab are included here. For more information, see the *HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Embedded Web Server User Guide*.

- **Device Status.** This screen provides current status information about the product.
- **Configuration Page.** This screen provides information about the product configuration.
- **Supplies Status.** This screen provides information about the print cartridge, the total pages that have been printed, and the serial number of the product.
- **Event log.** This screen provides information about reported printer errors.
- **Usage page.** This screen provides a page count for each size of paper that has passed through the device, as well as the number of duplexed pages that have been printed.
- **Diagnostics Page.** The **Diagnostics Page** screen provides information about calibration, color density, and parameters.
- **Device Information.** This screen shows device information, such as the product TCP/IP address and serial number.
- **Control Panel Snapshot.** This screen shows the product control panel.
- **Color Usage Job Log.** The **Color Usage Job Log** screen provides information about users, print jobs, and software programs that have printed to the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product.
- **Print.** Use this screen to print documents that are print-ready, such as those generated by a "print to file" driver option, .PRN documents, .PS documents, .PDF files, and text (.TXT) files.

Links to off-product solutions

Links on the HP EWS screens provide an easy way to locate information or complete tasks.

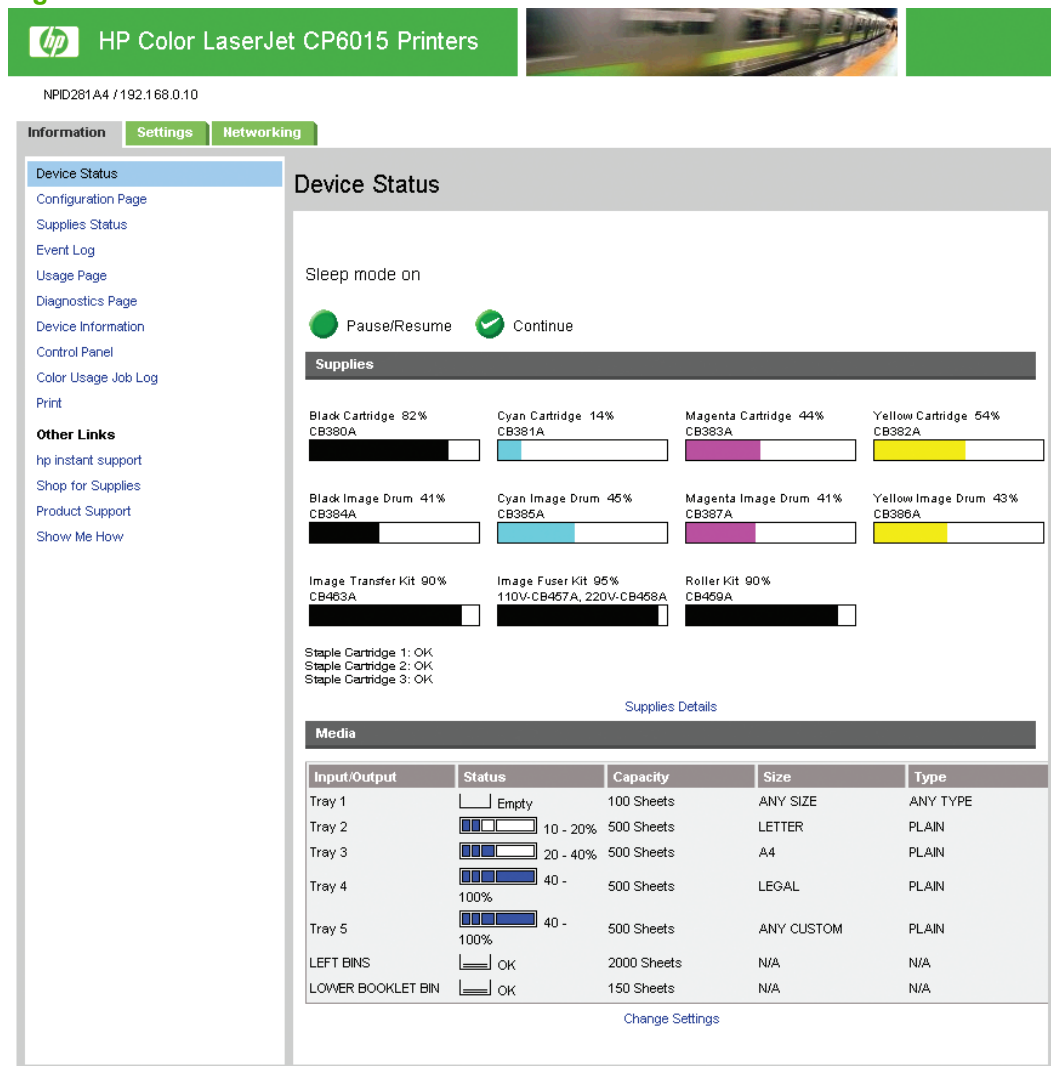
- **hp instant support.** This link connects to a set of dynamic Web resources that help you solve specific problems and determine additional services that might be available for the product. Specific status and configuration information about the product is retained and directed to the "Solve a Problem" Web site. This site offers targeted support content and messages to help resolve problems as quickly as possible.
- **Shop for supplies.** This link connects to an HP product supplies screen from which you can order genuine HP supplies for the product.

- **Product Support.** This link connects to an HP product-support screen from which you can search for information, download drivers and software, or find additional support resources for the product.
- **Show Me How.** This link provides a list of links to Web pages that provide step-by-step instructions for performing specific tasks such as clearing jams and using special media.

Device Status screen

Status information, such as whether the product is online or the toner is low, is available through a Web browser on a computer that is linked to the product. You can view this information without going to the product to identify the status. The following figure shows how this information is presented on the product Web page.

Figure 2-19 HP EWS Information tab – Device Status screen





Configuration Page

You can gain access to the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series configuration page remotely through the HP EWS. The HP EWS **Configuration Page** screen provides configuration information about the

product in the same way as the configuration page that is printed from the product. The following figures show an example of a configuration page viewed remotely through the HP EWS.

Figure 2-20 HP EWS Information tab – Configuration Page screen, 1 of 2


HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Printers



NPID281A4 / 192.168.0.10

Information
Settings
Networking

[Device Status](#)
[Configuration Page](#)
[Supplies Status](#)
[Event Log](#)
[Usage Page](#)
[Diagnostics Page](#)
[Device Information](#)
[Control Panel](#)
[Color Usage Job Log](#)
[Print](#)
Other Links
[hp instant support](#)
[Shop for Supplies](#)
[Product Support](#)
[Show Me How](#)

Configuration Page

Printer Information

Product Name: HP Color LaserJet CP6015
 Printer Name: HP Color LaserJet CP6015
 Model Number: CXXXXA
 DC Controller: 72
 Printer Serial Number: XXXXXXXXXX
 Formatter Number: HE000AL
 Firmware: 20070420 20070420
 Service ID: 00000
 PS Wait Time-out: 300 seconds
 Engine Cycles: 4080
 Color Cycle Count: 3403

Installed Personalities and Options

PCLXL: (20010402)
 PCL: (20010402)
 PS: (20010402)
 PDF: (20050131)
 DIMM Slot 1: Empty
 DIMM Slot 2: 512 MB DDR
 EIO 1: Empty
 EIO 2: Empty
 Internal Disk: ST940814AS: 37 GB
 Embedded HP JetDirect J7993E 192.168.0.10

Color Density

	C	M	Y	K
HIGHLIGHTS	0	0	0	0
MIDTONES	0	0	0	0
SHADOWS	0	0	0	0

Calibration Information

Last CPR (Engine Cycles): 4070
 Last CPR: 29 Nov 2005/12:21
 Last DMax/DHalf (Engine Cycles): 4070
 Last DMax/DHalf: 1 Dec 2005/19:39
 Last Neutral(Engine Cycles): 0

Memory

Installed DIMM Memory: 512 MB
 On Board Memory: 0 MB
 Total Usable RAM: 512 MB
 DWS: 134.00
 Automatic Resource Saving Enabled

Figure 2-21 HP EWS **Information** tab – **Configuration Page** screen, 2 of 2

Event Log		
Number of Entries in Use: 43		
Maximum Number of Entries: 50		
Three Most Recent Entries:		
Number	Cycles	Entry
43	4079	49.2FA7
42	4069	49.2FA7
41	4059	49.2FA7

Security	
Control Panel Lock:	NONE
Control Panel Password:	DISABLED
Write Protect:	DISABLED
File System Access:	
PJL:	ENABLED
PML:	ENABLED
NFS:	ENABLED
PostScript:	ENABLED
Direct Ports (USBIEEE 1284): ENABLED	

Paper Trays and Options	
Default Paper Size:	LETTER
Tray 1 Size:	ANY SIZE
Tray 1 Type:	ANY TYPE
NORMAL	
Tray 2 Size:	LETTER
Tray 2 Type:	PLAIN
NORMAL	
Tray 3 Size:	A4
Tray 3 Type:	PLAIN
NORMAL	
Tray 4 Size:	LEGAL
Tray 4 Type:	PLAIN
NORMAL	
Tray 5 Size:	ANY CUSTOM
Tray 5 Type:	PLAIN
NORMAL	
Duplex Unit	
HP Booklet Maker STACKER Q6999A	

Settings tab

The following information is available on the HP EWS **Settings** tab. To view the information, click the menu items on the left side of the HP EWS **Settings** tab. The **Settings** tab is shown in [Configure device on page 57](#).

Not all of the screens on the tab are shown here. For more information, see the *HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Embedded Web Server User Guide*.

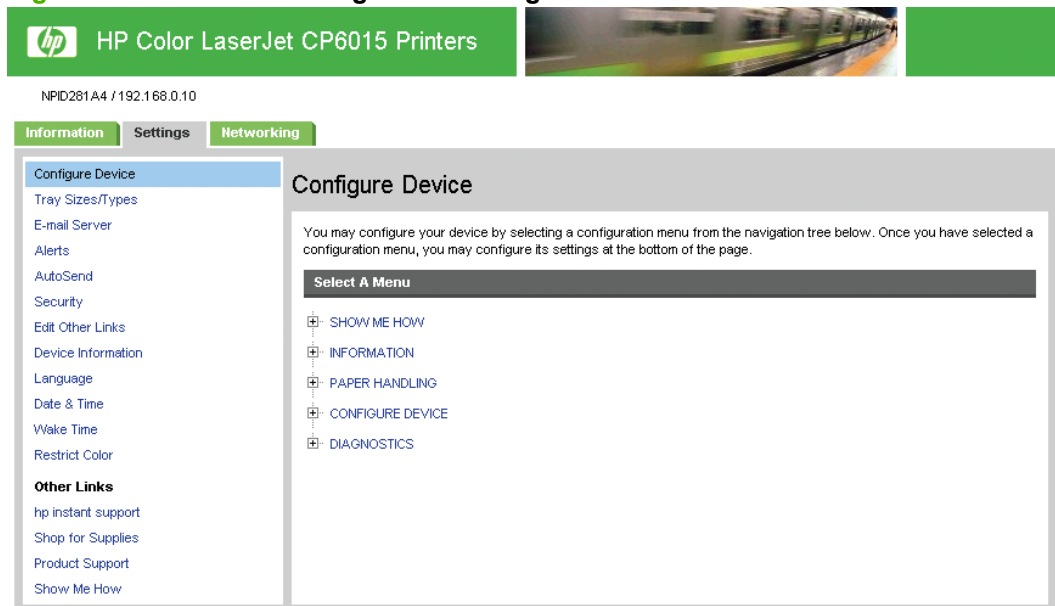
- **Configure Device.** Use the **Configure Device** screen to print product information pages and configure the product remotely.
- **Tray Sizes/Types.** Use the Tray Sizes/Types screen to assign paper types for each tray on the product.
- **E-mail Server.** Use the **E-mail Server** screen to configure e-mail settings for device alerts and AutoSend data.
- **Alerts.** IT administrators can configure the product to send alerts in e-mail messages to designated recipients.

- **AutoSend.** Use the **AutoSend** screen to send product configuration and supplies-usage information periodically to your service provider.
- **Security.** Use the **Security** screen to manage security for the product including establishing passwords.
- **Edit Other Links.** Use the **Edit Other Links** screen to add or customize up to five links to the Web sites of your choice.
- **Device Information.** Use the **Device Information** screen to provide a name of your choice for the product, assign an asset number, and set the company name, the person to contact about the product, and the physical location of the product.
- **Language.** Use the **Language** screen to select the language in which the HP EWS screens appear.
- **Date & Time.** Use this page to set the correct date and time for the product.
- **Wake Time.** Wake time can be set to turn on the product at a certain time on a daily basis. Only one wake-time setting can be established per day; however, each day can have a different wake time. The sleep-mode delay can also be set on this page.
- **Restrict Color.** Use the **Restrict Color** screen to restrict color printing for all users and software programs or for specified users and software programs.

Configure device

You can obtain product configuration information through a Web browser by opening the HP EWS screen and changing the basic configuration information on the **Settings** tab. Security and password controls give management information systems (MIS) managers the level of control that they require within their network environments. The following figure shows an example of product options that can be configured remotely.

Figure 2-22 HP EWS **Settings** tab – **Configure Device** screen




Alerts

The product can automatically send e-mail alerts about printing problems or job status to specified e-mail addresses. For example, if toner is low, the product can notify the person who is responsible for ordering or changing the print cartridge. If a product failure occurs, the product can send an e-mail alert directly to the person who is responsible for fixing the problem. These e-mail alerts can be configured to be sent to any device that can accept e-mail, such as digital phones, pagers, and personal digital assistants

(PDAs). In large environments, administrators can route e-mail addresses to list-servers or uniform resource locators (URLs) for expanded notification.

Figure 2-23 HP EWS **Settings** tab – **Alerts** screen – 1 of 2


HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Printers

NPID281A4 / 192.168.0.10

Information
 Settings
 Networking

Configure Device
 Tray Sizes/Types
 E-mail Server
Alerts
 AutoSend
 Security
 Edit Other Links
 Device Information
 Language
 Date & Time
 Wake Time
 Restrict Color
Other Links
[hp instant support](#)
[Shop for Supplies](#)
[Product Support](#)
[Show Me How](#)

Alerts - setup

Step 1: Type the list name
 Type a name for your destination list.
 List Name:

Step 2: Type the alert destinations
 Type a maximum of 20 alert destinations in any of the following forms:
 An e-mail address (e.g., your~name@your~company.com)
 A mobile device (e.g., 208-555-5555@mobile-company.net)
 A posting to a website (e.g., <http://www.your~server.com>)
 Separate alert destinations using a semi-colon (;) or a comma (,).
 Alert Destinations:

Step 3: Select Alerts
 Select the alerts that you would like the alert destinations to receive. The most common alerts are listed here.

Alert Name	Selected	Threshold*
Order Cartridge	<input type="checkbox"/>	5 (0-100) percent
Order Image Drum	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Order Staple Cartridge	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Replace Cartridge	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Replace Image Drum	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Replace Staple Cartridge	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Non-HP Supply Installed	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Remove Paper Jam	<input type="checkbox"/>	2 minutes elapsed
Close Drawers, Doors And Covers	<input type="checkbox"/>	2 minutes elapsed
Tray Empty (Load)	<input type="checkbox"/>	2 minutes elapsed
Tray Open	<input type="checkbox"/>	2 minutes elapsed

* Changes to threshold values apply to all destinations for this device.

Additional Alerts
 To view all of the alerts for this product, click the **Show All Alerts** button.
 Note: Clicking this button saves your current changes and opens the page that lists all of the alerts options.

Show All Alerts

Figure 2-24 HP EWS **Settings** tab – **Alerts** screen – 2 of 2

The screenshot shows the HP EWS Alerts screen, specifically the Settings tab. It is divided into two main sections: Step 4 and Step 5. Step 4, titled 'Step 4: Select Control Panel Messages to Suppress', instructs the user to select messages they do not want to show on the device control panel. It includes a single checkbox labeled 'Order and Replace Cartridge'. Step 5, titled 'Step 5: Select e-mail attachments (optional)', instructs the user to select attachments to include with each e-mail alert message. It lists four options with checkboxes: 'Supplies Status Page', 'Usage Page', 'Configuration Page', and 'Event Log Page'. Below these, there is a note about selecting an option for automated computer systems, followed by an 'XML Data' checkbox. At the bottom right, there are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Step 4: Select Control Panel Messages to Suppress

Select the message(s) below that you do not want to show on the device control panel. The option is available only if the corresponding e-mail alert has been selected in the previous step.

☐ Order and Replace Cartridge

Step 5: Select e-mail attachments (optional)

Select the attachments that you want to include with each e-mail alert message in this destination list. Go to the **Information** tab to see examples of these pages.

☐ Supplies Status Page

☐ Usage Page

☐ Configuration Page

☐ Event Log Page

Select this option if one of the alert destinations you have chosen to receive alerts is an automated computer system.

☐ XML Data

OK Cancel

Security

The HP EWS screens that appear, and the settings on them, vary according to how you gain access to the HP EWS — as a general user, an IT administrator, or a service provider. To control access to the HP EWS screens, set a password on the **Security** page.

Figure 2-25 HP EWS **Settings** tab – **Security** screen

HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Printers

NPID281A4 / 192.168.0.10

Information Settings **Networking**

Configure Device
Tray Sizes/Types
E-mail Server
Alerts
AutoSend
Security
Edit Other Links
Device Information
Language
Date & Time
Wake Time
Restrict Color

Other Links
hp instant support
Shop for Supplies
Product Support
Show Me How

Security

HP Jetdirect Security Configuration Wizard

Click the **HP Jetdirect Security Configuration Wizard** button below, and configure the settings that appear. Be sure to come back to this page to configure the settings on the Configure Security Settings page (see the **Configure Security Settings** button below).

HP Jetdirect Security Configuration Wizard

Configure Security Settings

Once the Jetdirect Security Configuration is complete, click the **Configure Security Settings** button, below, and configure the settings that appear.

Configure Security Settings

Perform Secure Storage Erase

Click **Perform Secure Storage Erase** to delete data permanently on the selected items. Performing a Secure Storage Erase can take more than 2 hours, depending on the size of the media and the Secure File Erase Mode chosen. During this time the device will not be accessible.

Warning: Performing a Secure Storage Erase will cause the device to restart. All data and applications on the storage device (s) you selected will be completely destroyed.

☐ Hard Disk

Perform Secure Storage Erase

Status of Security Settings

Settings	Status
Device Password	Not Configured
PUL Password	Not Configured
File System Password	Not Configured
PUL Disk Access	Enabled
SNMP Disk Access	Enabled
NFS Disk Access	Enabled
PS Disk Access	Enabled
File Erase Mode	Non-Secure Fast Erase
Control Panel Access Lock	Unlock Menu
Print Page	Enabled
Color Usage Job Log	Enabled
Cancel Job Button	Disabled
Pause/Resume	Enabled
Continue Button	Enabled
Remote Firmware Upgrade	Enabled
Service Loading	Enabled
Direct Ports (USB/IEEE 1284)	Enabled


In a password-protected HP EWS, only the **Information** tab is available to users who do not log in by using the password. If no password is set (which is the default configuration), all of the tabs are visible.


If a password has been set, you must log on as an IT administrator or a service provider to gain access to the protected HP EWS tabs (**Settings** and **Networking**).

Restrict Color

The **Restrict Color** screen is shown in the following figure.

Figure 2-26 HP EWS **Settings** tab – **Restrict Color** screen – 1 of 2

 HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Printers



NPD281A4 / 192.168.0.10

Information

Settings

Networking

Configure Device

Tray Sizes/Types

E-mail Server

Alerts

AutoSend

Security

Edit Other Links

Device Information

Language

Date & Time

Wake Time

Restrict Color

Other Links

hp instant support

Shop for Supplies

Product Support

Show Me How

Restrict Color

This feature is used to restrict color printing for all users, or for specific users and/or applications. For example, to print all e-mail messages without color, select "COLOR IF ALLOWED", then set the e-mail application's permission to "black only".

Note: This page requires JavaScript

Restrict Color Use

Set the color job printing behavior.

☒ ENABLE COLOR
(All color jobs will be printed in color.)

☐ COLOR IF ALLOWED
(The permissions defined below will determine whether each job will be printed in color or not. If either the user or the application has a "black only" permission, then the job will be printed without color.)

☐ DISABLE COLOR
(All color jobs will be printed in black.)

Note: The rest of the settings on this page will not take effect unless "COLOR IF ALLOWED" is selected.

Show on Device Control Panel

☒ Show RESTRICT COLOR USE menu on device control panel
(When checked, this will allow the color job printing behavior to be set via the device's control panel, under the CONFIGURE DEVICE -> SYSTEM SETUP -> RESTRICT COLOR USE menu.)

User Permission

Default User Permission (for users not in the User Permission list)

Color

The User Permission list stores up to 50 users and their associated permissions.

System User Name *	Permission
<input type="text"/>	<div>Color</div>

System User Name

Permission

Add...

Edit

Delete

Save

Cancel

* Consult the [Color Usage Job Log](#) for System User Names and Technical Application Names that have printed to this device.

Figure 2-27 HP EWS **Settings** tab – **Restrict Color** screen – 2 of 2

Application Permission

Default Application Permission (for applications not in the Application Permission list)

Color

The Application Permission list stores up to 10 applications and their associated permissions.

Technical Application Name *	Permission
	Color

Add... Edit Delete Save Cancel

* Consult the Color Usage Job Log for System User Names and Technical Application Names that have printed to this device.

OK

Use the **Restrict Color** screen to set color-printing access for the product and to configure permissions by user and software program. For more information about using this screen, see the *HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Embedded Web Server User Guide*.

Control over color printing is possible in a variety of ways. For more information, go to the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/coloraccess

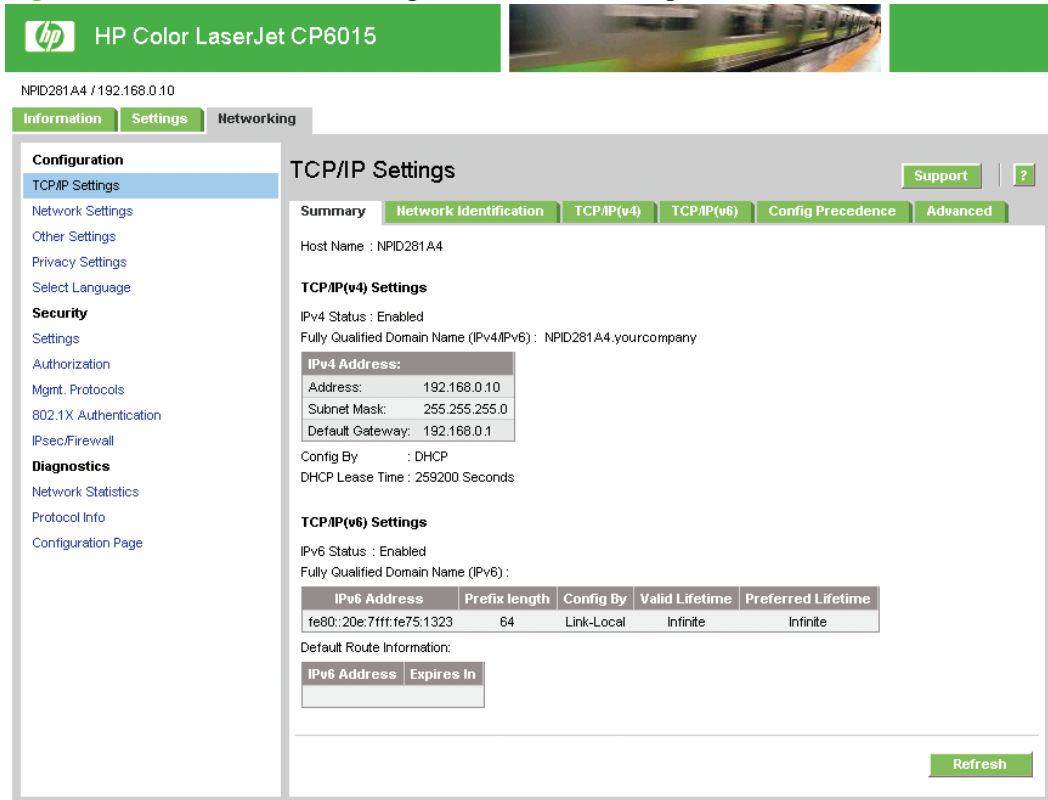
Networking tab

The HP EWS **Networking** tab is shown in the following figure.



NOTE: Not all of the screens on the tab are shown here. For more information, see the *HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Embedded Web Server User Guide*.

Figure 2-28 HP EWS **Networking** tab – **TCP/IP Settings** screen



The menu on the left side of the screen contains other networking options under three categories:

- **Configuration**
- **Security**
- **Diagnostics**

For more information, see the *HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide*.

Configuration section

- **TCP/IP Settings**
- **Network Settings**
- **Other Settings**
- **Privacy Settings**
- **Select Language**

Security section

- **Settings**
- **Authorization**
- **Mgmt. Protocols**

- **802.1x Authentication**
- **IPsec/Firewall**

Diagnostics section

- **Network Statistics**
- **Protocol Info**
- **Configuration Page**

Network settings

From the **Networking** tab, you can enable and configure the following network protocols:

- TCP/IP
- Internetwork packet exchange/Sequenced packet exchange (IPX/SPX)
- AppleTalk
- Data link control/logical link control (DLC/LLC)
- Simple network management protocol (SNMP)

HP Web Jetadmin

Use HP Web Jetadmin and a browser to manage HP Jetdirect-connected products within an intranet. HP Web Jetadmin is a browser-based management tool and should be installed only on a single network-administration server.

To download a current version of HP Web Jetadmin and for the latest list of supported host systems, go to the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/webjetadmin

Font support

The basic fonts listed here are included with Microsoft Windows software. The additional PS fonts are available on the CD that came with the product.

Basic fonts

Microsoft Windows software includes these basic fonts, which can be used with any HP printing product:

- Arial
- Courier New Italic
- Times New Roman Italic
- Arial Italic
- Courier New Bold
- Times New Roman Bold
- Arial Bold
- Courier New Bold Italic
- Times New Roman Bold Italic
- Arial Bold Italic
- Symbol
- Wingdings
- Courier New
- Times New Roman

Default fonts

The following default fonts are installed through a Full Installation of the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series printing-system software.

Table 2-6 Default fonts

Font name	Font style	File name
Albertus Extra Bold	Regular	ALBR85W.TTF
Albertus Medium	Regular	ALBR55W.TTF
Antique Olive	Regular	OLVR55W.TTF
Antique Olive	Bold	OLVR75W.TTF
Antique Olive	Italic	OLVR56W.TTF
CG Omega	Regular	CGOR45W.TTF
CG Omega	Bold	CGOR65W.TTF
CG Omega	Bold Italic	CGOR66W.TTF

Table 2-6 Default fonts (continued)

Font name	Font style	File name
CG Omega	Italic	CGOR46W.TTF
CG Times	Regular	CGTR45W.TTF
CG Times	Bold	CGTR65W.TTF
CG Times	Bold Italic	CGTR66W.TTF
CG Times	Italic	CGTR46W.TTF
Clarendon Condensed	Bold	CLAR67W.TTF
Coronet	Regular	CORONET.TTF
CourierPS	Regular	CPSR45W.TTF
CourierPS	Bold	CPSR65W.TTF
CourierPS	Bold Oblique	CPSR66W.TTF
CourierPS	Oblique	CPSR46W.TTF
Garamond	Antiqua	GARR45W.TTF
Garamond	Halbfett	GARR65W.TTF
Garamond	Kursiv	GARR46W.TTF
Garamond	Kursiv Halbfett	GARR66W.TTF
Helvetica	Regular	HELR45W.TTF
Helvetica	Bold	HELR65W.TTF
Helvetica	Bold Oblique	HELR66W.TTF
Helvetica Narrow	Regular	HELR47W.TTF
Helvetica Narrow	Bold	HELR67W.TTF
Helvetica Narrow	Bold Oblique	HELR68W.TTF
Helvetica Narrow	Oblique	HELR48W.TTF
Helvetica	Oblique	HELR46W.TTF
ITC Avant Garde Gothic	Book	AVGR45W.TTF
ITC Avant Garde Gothic	Book Oblique	AVGR46W.TTF
ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi	Regular	AVGR65W.TTF
ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi	Oblique	AVGR66W.TTF
ITC Bookman Light	Regular	BOKR35W.TTF
ITC Bookman Light	Italic	BOKR36W.TTF
ITC Bookman Demi	Regular	BOKR75W.TTF
ITC Bookman Demi	Italic	BOKR76W.TTF
ITC Zapf Chancery	Medium Italic	CHANC____.TTF
ITC Zapf Dingbats	Regular	DINGS____.TTF
Letter Gothic	Regular	LETR45W.TTF

Table 2-6 Default fonts (continued)

Font name	Font style	File name
Letter Gothic	Bold	LETR65W.TTF
Letter Gothic	Italic	LETR46W.TTF
Marigold	Regular	MARIGOLD.TTF
New Century Schoolbook	Bold	NCSR75W.TTF
New Century Schoolbook	Bold Italic	NCSR76W.TTF
New Century Schoolbook	Italic	NCSR56W.TTF
New Century Schoolbook	Roman	NCSR55W.TTF
Palatino	Bold	PALR65W.TTF
Palatino	Bold Italic	PALR66W.TTF
Palatino	Italic	PALR46W.TTF
Palatino	Roman	PALR45W.TTF
SymbolPS	Regular	SYMP5___.TTF
Times*	Bold	TIMR65W.TTF
Times	Bold Italic	TIMR66W.TTF
Times	Italic	TIMR46W.TTF
Times	Roman	TIMR45W.TTF
Univers	Bold	UNVR65W.TTF
Univers	Bold Italic	UNVR66W.TTF
Univers Condensed	Bold	UNVR67W.TTF
Univers Condensed	Bold Italic	UNVR68W.TTF
Univers Condensed	Medium	UNVR57W.TTF
Univers Condensed	Medium Italic	UNVR58W.TTF
Univers	Medium	UNVR55W.TTF
Univers	Medium Italic	UNVR56W.TTF

Ninety-two additional PS emulation fonts are also available on the CD.

Table 2-7 Additional PS emulation fonts

Font name	Font style	File name
Albertus MT	Regular	PS_12639.TTF
Albertus MT	Italic	PS_12640.TTF
Albertus MT Lt	Regular	PS_14530.TTF
Antique Olive CompactPS	Regular	PS_11120.TTF
Antique Olive Roman	Regular	PS_11119.TTF
Antique Olive Roman	Bold	PS_11118.TTF

Table 2-7 Additional PS emulation fonts (continued)

Font name	Font style	File name
Antique Olive Roman	Italic	PS_11846.TTF
Apple Chancery	Italic	PS_24516.TTF
Bodoni Poster	Regular	PS_12704.TTF
Bodoni PosterCompressed	Regular	PS_14508.TTF
BodoniPS	Regular	PS_12581.TTF
BodoniPS	Bold	PS_12585.TTF
BodoniPS	Bold Italic	PS_12586.TTF
BodoniPS	Italic	PS_12582.TTF
Candid	Regular	PS_24517.TTF
Chicago	Regular	PS_24518.TTF
Clarendon Light	Regular	PS_14513.TTF
ClarendonPS	Regular	PS_10269.TTF
ClarendonPS	Bold	PS_12968.TTF
Cooper Black	Regular	PS_10369.TTF
Cooper Black	Italic	PS_10370.TTF
Copperplate32bc	Regular	PS_14514.TTF
Copperplate33bc	Regular	PS_14515.TTF
CoronetPS	Italic	PS_10249.TTF
Eurostile	Regular	PS_10267.TTF
Eurostile Bold	Regular	PS_10268.TTF
Eurostile ExtendedTwo	Bold	PS_14512.TTF
Eurostile ExtendedTwo	Regular	PS_14511.TTF
Geneva	Regular	PS_24509.TTF
GillSans	Regular	PS_13872.TTF
GillSans	Bold	PS_13874.TTF
GillSans	Bold Italic	PS_13875.TTF
GillSans Condensed	Regular	PS_14053.TTF
GillSans Condensed	Bold	PS_14054.TTF
GillSans ExtraBold	Regular	PS_14051.TTF
GillSans	Italic	PS_13873.TTF
GillSans Light	Italic	PS_13871.TTF
GillSans Light	Regular	PS_13870.TTF
Goudy	Bold	PS_12544.TTF
Goudy	Bold Italic	PS_10695.TTF

Table 2-7 Additional PS emulation fonts (continued)

Font name	Font style	File name
Goudy	Regular	PS_12542.TTF
Goudy ExtraBold	Regular	PS_12545.TTF
Goudy	Italic	PS_12543.TTF
Helvetica Condensed	Regular	PS_14526.TTF
Helvetica Condensed	Bold	PS_14528.TTF
Helvetica Condensed	Bold Italic	PS_14529.TTF
Helvetica Condensed	Italic	PS_14527.TTF
Hoefler Text	Regular	PS_24519.TTF
Hoefler Text Black	Regular	PS_24521.TTF
Hoefler Text Black	Italic	PS_24522.TTF
Hoefler Text	Italic	PS_24520.TTF
Hoefler Text Ornaments	Regular	PS_24523.TTF
Joanna MT	Regular	PS_14503.TTF
Joanna MT	Bold	PS_14505.TTF
Joanna MT	Bold Italic	PS_14506.TTF
Joanna MT	Italic	PS_14504.TTF
Letter Gothic	Italic	PS_13778.TTF
Letter GothicPS	Regular	PS_13777.TTF
Letter GothicPS	Bold	PS_13779.TTF
Letter GothicPS	Bold Italic	PS_13780.TTF
Lubalin Graph	Regular	PS_12675.TTF
Lubalin Graph	Bold	PS_12677.TTF
Lubalin Graph	Bold Italic	PS_12625.TTF
Lubalin Graph	Italic	PS_12623.TTF
MarigoldPS	Regular	PS_94073.TTF
Mona Lisa Recut	Regular	PS_14525.TTF
Monaco	Regular	PS_24524.TTF
New York	Regular	PS_24510.TTF
Optima	Regular	PS_12506.TTF
Optima	Bold	PS_12510.TTF
Optima	Bold Italic	PS_12511.TTF
Optima	Italic	PS_12507.TTF
Oxford	Italic	PS_14072.TTF
StempelGaramond Roman	Italic	PS_11546.TTF

Table 2-7 Additional PS emulation fonts (continued)

Font name	Font style	File name
StempelGaramond Roman	Regular	PS_11545.TTF
StempelGaramond Roman	Bold	PS_11547.TTF
StempelGaramond Roman	Bold Italic	PS_11548.TTF
Taffy	Regular	PS_14507.TTF
Univers 45 Light	Regular	PS_13501.TTF
Univers 45 Light	Bold	PS_14023.TTF
Univers 45 Light	Bold Italic	PS_14024.TTF
Univers 45 Light	Italic	PS_13502.TTF
Univers 47 CondensedLight	Bold	PS_14030.TTF
Univers 47 CondensedLight	Bold Italic	PS_14040.TTF
Univers 55	Regular	PS_14021.TTF
Univers 55	Italic	PS_14022.TTF
Univers 57 Condensed	Regular	PS_14029.TTF
Univers 57 Condensed	Italic	PS_14039.TTF
Univers ExtendedPS	Bold	PS_13548.TTF
Univers ExtendedPS	Regular	PS_13547.TTF
Univers ExtendedPS	Bold Italic	PS_14481.TTF
Univers ExtendedPS	Italic	PS_14480.TTF


HP Driver Deployment Utility

The HP Driver Deployment Utility (DDU) was created to simplify the deployment of printer drivers onto a client computer. It is a simple utility that packages the printer-driver files, and the code needed to deploy them, into 2 files: an .EXE file and a .CAB file. These files are run on the client computer to copy the printer-driver files to the Windows driver store, and for network packages, to install the product.

The DDU will work with printer drivers that can be installed by an .INF file. It is designed to work with printer drivers that have their files contained in one directory structure. Because this utility is generic, it does not detect how specific printer drivers are packaged. It will package up all files in the directory (and subdirectories) where the printer driver .INF file was found. The printer driver must be expanded so that the DDU can process the .INF file. If you download an .EXE file with the printer-driver files, you will need to run it first to unpack all of the files. Then, run the DDU to package it for deployment on the client system.


DDU can be used to pre-configure a printer driver for deployment. When the package is run on the client computer, the new configuration file is used to configure the printer driver after it is installed. This does not break WHQL certification.

If the printer driver was WHQL certified, and the printer driver files are organized within one directory structure, then DDU will not break WHQL certification. DDU packages all of the files found in the printer-driver directory structure without modifying them. If printer-driver pre-configuration is done, the new configuration file is used to configure the printer driver after it is installed. This does not break WHQL certification.

 **NOTE:** If you need the ability to configure unique settings for printer-driver deployment, the Universal Print Driver installer may be a better choice as an install tool. The Universal Print Driver installer allows the configuration of settings from the command line.

The DDU can be used with the Universal Print Driver installer, but the Universal Print Driver command line will not be accessible. The DDU is designed to package and stage/install printer drivers. Printer-driver specific features, like those found in the Universal Print Driver installer, are specific to the Universal Print Driver installer and not supported by the DDU.

The DDU installer could be used with the Universal Print Drivers to deploy a direct connect driver in traditional mode or a network install in traditional mode.

 **NOTE:** Administrative rights are necessary on the client system where the install is being performed. For a direct connect, administrative rights are only required to run the .EXE package. The user can then connect the product without administrative rights. For a network connection, the .EXE package will copy files to the driver store, create the port, install the printer driver and create the printer object.

Supported operating systems

- Microsoft Windows 2000 Service Pack 4
- Microsoft Windows XP
- Microsoft Windows XP 64-Bit Edition
- Microsoft Windows Server 2003
- Microsoft Windows Server 2003 64-Bit Edition
- Microsoft Windows Vista
- Microsoft Windows Vista (64-bit)

Install and run the DDU

Install the DDU

Copy the files to the administrative computer. If using the self-extracting .EXE file, just copy it to the administrative computer, then double click – it will expand the files into the proper directory structure.

DDU does not require an installation program. All of the files are contained in the “Driver Deployment Utility” directory. DDU does not require any registry entries.

Run the DDU

1. Create the printer-driver package to deploy by opening the DDU application. This can be done by double clicking HPDDU.EXE, which is found in the Driver Deployment Utility root directory. This utility packages the printer driver and the code needed to stage/install the printer driver into an .EXE file and a .CAB file. An informational .XML file is also created and can be used to identify the package selections.
2. Run the new printer-driver package (created in step 1) on the client computer. It can be copied to the client computer and run by double clicking, or it can be run from a server by pointing to it and double clicking. The package can also be run in a batch file.

For a **direct connect package**, the DDU will silently copy the printer-driver files into the Windows driver store and exit. Prior to exiting, an optional dialog can be shown to prompt the user to connect their product after the files are copied. Upon completion of the package executable, when the user connects the product to the computer, the operating system will install the product using Plug and Play software.



NOTE: If the product is never connected to the computer, the product will not be installed.

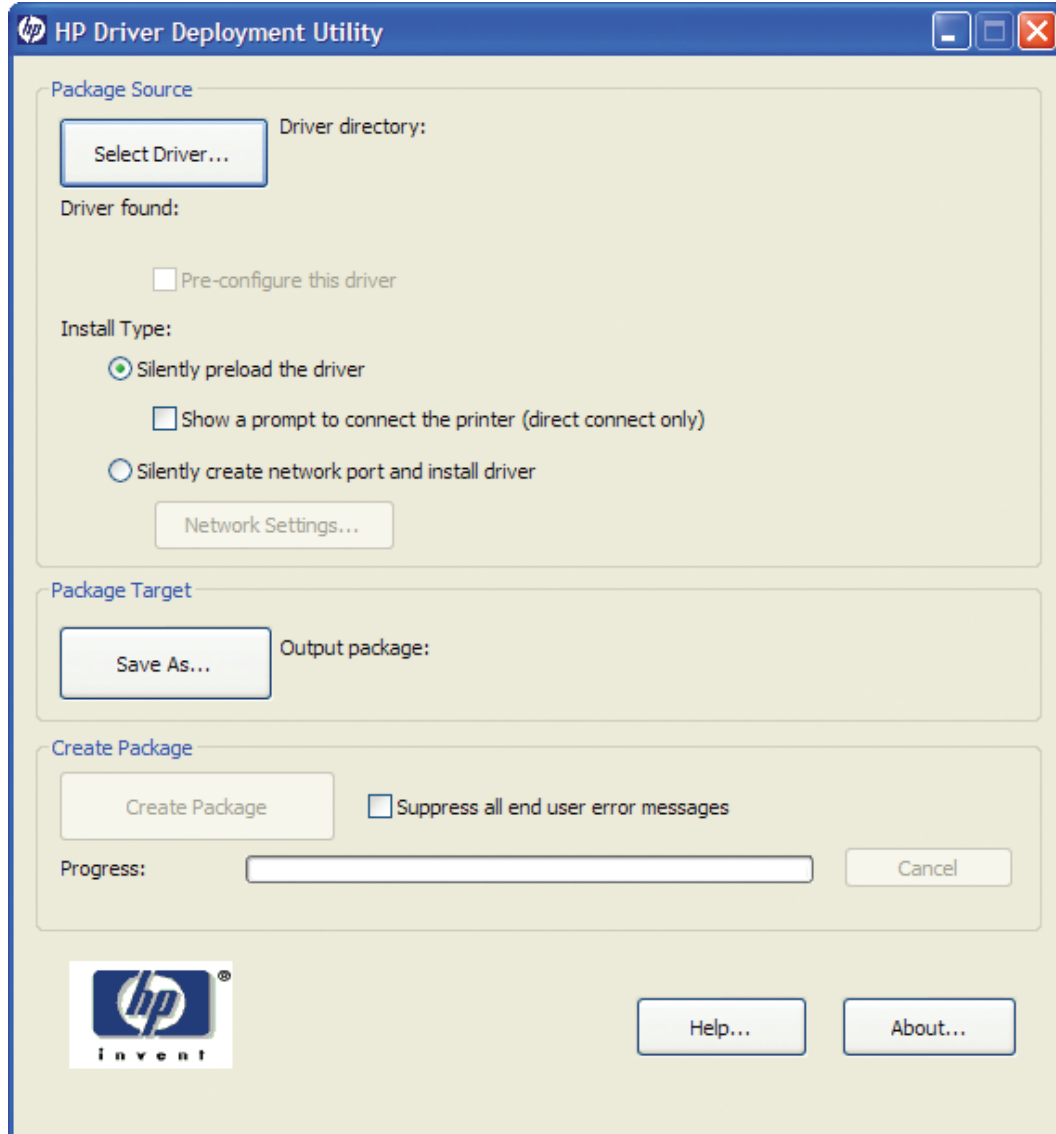
For a **network package**, the DDU will silently copy the printer-driver files into the Windows driver store, and then install the product using the network information entered by the administrator.

Use the DDU

The DDU user interface is divided into the following sections:

- **Package Source** describes the package type and printer-driver location that you want to create.
- **Package Target** identifies the name and location of the installation package.
- **Create Package** initiates the package creation process.

Figure 2-29 Package Source



Driver Directory—Use the **Select Driver** button to enter the directory where the printer driver resides by browsing or typing it in. You should only have one printer-driver package in this directory because this utility will package all the files found in this directory (and sub directories) into the executable file. If you have downloaded a compressed printer-driver package, you must expand it before using this utility.

In some cases, you may have multiple printer driver .INF files in the directory (sometimes one is for color and another for mono products). In this case, an additional dialog will allow you to select which printer driver to package.

You will also get a warning if the directory is large. This is to help prevent packaging more than one printer driver. You may choose to continue at this point or not.

Once the printer-driver directory is selected, and one printer driver has been found, the printer-driver information is displayed below the directory selection box.

For printer drivers that support preconfiguration, the checkbox below will be enabled. Selecting this will run a configuration dialog after clicking the **Create Package**.

Install Type—Silently preload the driver is the option to select for users that will be using a direct connection, like a USB cable. A future Plug and Play event will be necessary to install the printer driver, but all the files will be installed in the Windows driver store by this package for future use.

By default the executable file runs silently. If you would like to prompt the end user to connect the product at the end of the install, select the **Show a prompt to connect the printer** checkbox.

For products using a network connection, select the **Silently create the network port and install driver** option. The **Network Settings** button will become enabled, and you should click on it to enter the required network settings.


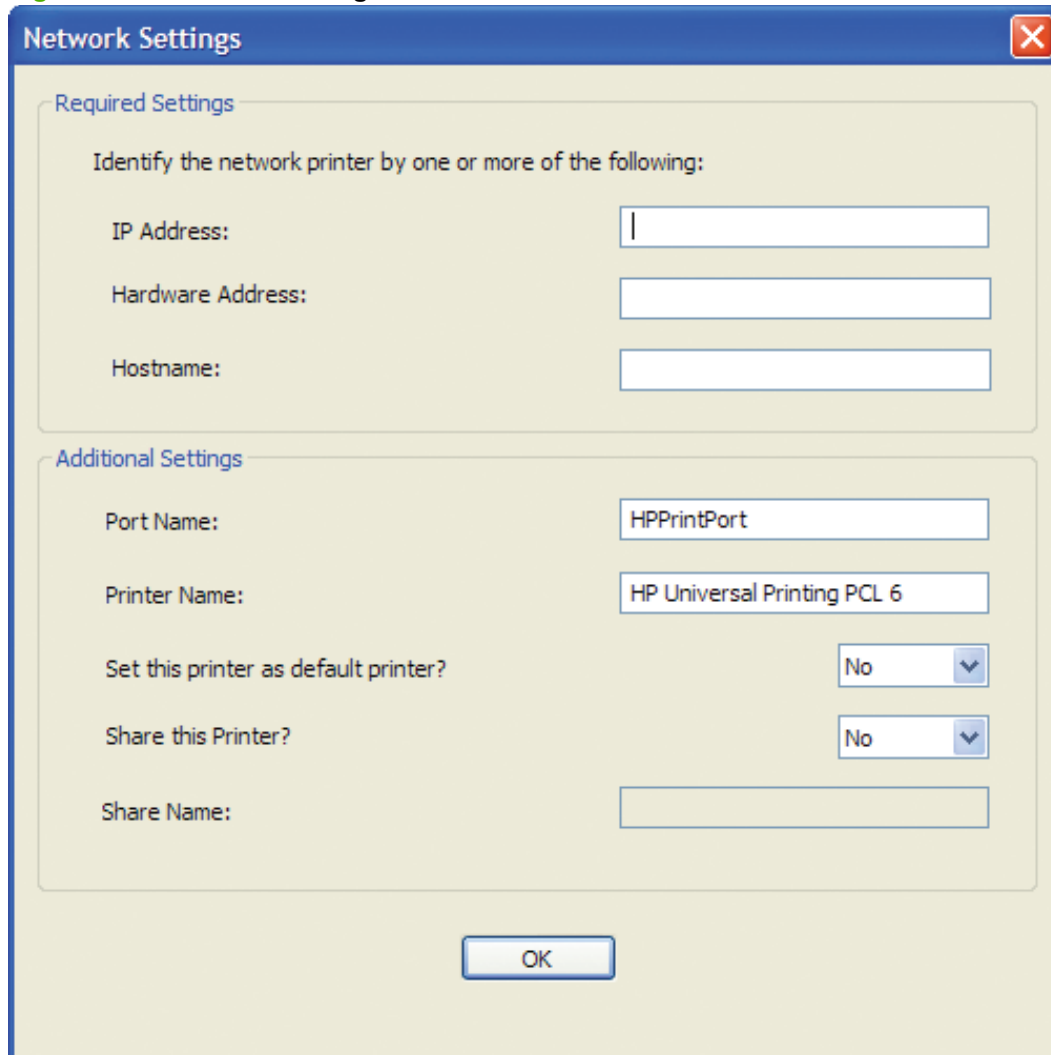
 **NOTE:** If you don't select the printer driver first, you'll get an error dialog. You must select the printer driver first so that the product name can be derived from the printer-driver name.

Figure 2-30 Network Settings



The screenshot shows a Windows-style dialog box titled "Network Settings". It has a blue title bar with a close button (X) in the top right corner. The dialog is divided into two main sections: "Required Settings" and "Additional Settings".

Required Settings: This section contains the instruction "Identify the network printer by one or more of the following:". Below this are three text input fields: "IP Address:", "Hardware Address:", and "Hostname:", each with an empty text box next to it.

Additional Settings: This section contains several settings: "Port Name:" with a text box containing "HPPrintPort"; "Printer Name:" with a text box containing "HP Universal Printing PCL 6"; "Set this printer as default printer?" with a dropdown menu set to "No"; "Share this Printer?" with a dropdown menu set to "No"; and "Share Name:" with an empty text box.

At the bottom center of the dialog is an "OK" button.

You must identify the network product by one of the following methods. This utility does not communicate with the product to determine if the settings are valid, but it does perform syntax checking. The

administrator is responsible for identifying the product using either the correct IP address, the Hardware address, or the Hostname.

- **IP Address** — enter the IPv4 or IPv6 address of the product.
- **Hardware Address** — enter the hardware address of the product.
- **Hostname** — enter the hostname of the product.

The following network settings are additional. You may accept the default values pre-entered or change any of them.

- **Port Name:** This is the network port name that will be created. If the name already exists, a number will be appended to make it unique.
- **Printer Name:** This is the product name that will appear in the printers' folder. If the name already exists, a number will be appended to make it unique.
- **Set this printer as default:**
 - Yes - will make this product the default when printing from other applications.
 - No - will retain the current default, unless this is the only product installed.
- **Share this printer:** Yes - will allow others to use this product.
- **Share Name:** Share name for the product. Only enabled if 'Share this printer' is Yes. If the name already exists, a number will be appended to make it unique.

To exit the Network Settings dialog without saving, use the Windows close button in the upper corner.

Package Target

Use the **Save as** button to enter the name and location for the output package by browsing or typing it in. The utility will create the package in the temp directory and then move it to the final location.

Create Package

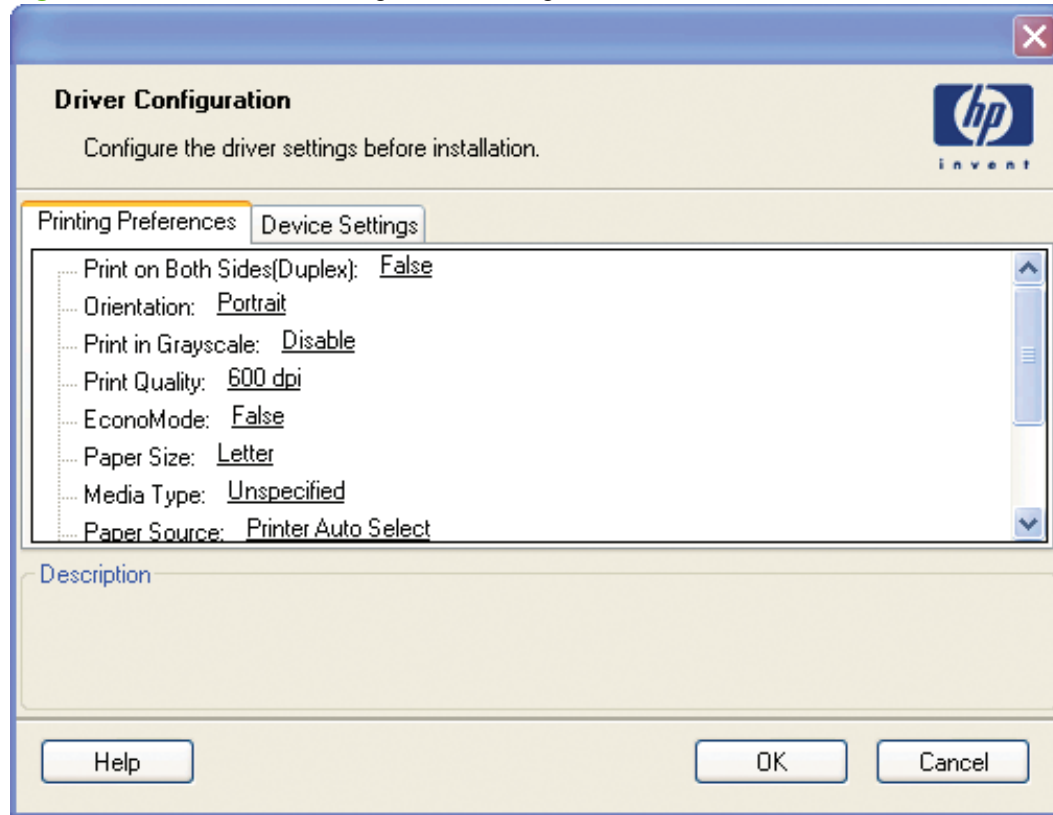
Click the **Create Package** button when you have entered all the above information. This button will be disabled until you have entered the required information. Once it is clicked, the **Cancel** button and Progress bar will be enabled.

To stop the package creation, click the **Cancel** button.

The executablefile will run silently, unless a user prompt was requested for a direct connect product. If an error is encountered during execution, an error dialog will appear. To suppress the error dialog, select the **Suppress all end user error messages** checkbox.

If you selected the **Pre-configure this driver** checkbox, the printer driver configuration dialog will open when you click the **Create Package** button. Once you have configured the printer driver, select **OK** to save the new configuration settings and continue creating the package. Clicking **Cancel** will cancel the entire package creation process.

Figure 2-31 DDU Driver Configuration settings



DDU Frequently Asked Questions


How do I use the DDU to deploy a direct connect driver with preconfiguration?


If you load multiple PDLs for one product, the operating system will determine which one satisfies the Plug and Play event. The operating system will create one printer object for that PDL.

1. Run HPDDU.EXE to start the package creation.
2. From Package Source section:
 - a. Select the printer driver to package by browsing to the .INF file in the directory.
 - b. Select the **Pre-configuration** checkbox. This checkbox is enabled only for printer drivers that support preconfiguration.
 - c. Select the **Silently preload the driver** install type.
 - d. Select the **Show a prompt to connect the printer** checkbox if you want to prompt the user after the files are copied.
3. From **Package Target** section:
 - ☐ Select the output name and location. Three files will be written here: an .EXE file, a .CAB file, and an .XML file with information about the package.


4. From **Create Package** section:

- a. If you want to suppress any error messages, select the **Suppress all end user error messages** checkbox.
 - b. Click the **Create Package** button
5. Run the new .EXE file from the client computer. You must have administrator rights to run the .EXE file because it will be copying files into the Windows driver store. Now the printer-driver files are on the system, and any user can connect the product to trigger the Plug and Play event.

 **NOTE:** The printer object isn't created until the product is connected.

 **NOTE:** If you deploy multiple direct connect printer drivers, with preconfiguration, and they all use a pre-config file with the same name, the first one connected will be the only one configured properly. This might happen if you deploy the PCL6 and PCL5 printer drivers for the same product. The reason is that the config file is copied to the \3 directory awaiting the product being connected. Each deployment will just copy over the same config file since they all use the same name. Once the product is connected, this config file gets consumed and deleted. Future Plug and Play events will not have the config file available.

How do I use the DDU to deploy a network product with preconfiguration?

 **NOTE:** Before running the DDU, you must download the driver you want to package, expand the driver, and place the driver in its own directory on the computer where the DDU will run.

1. Run HPDDU.EXE to create the package.
2. From **Package Source** section:
 - a. Select the printer driver to package by browsing to the .INF file in the directory.
 - b. Select the **Pre-configuration** checkbox. This checkbox is enabled only for printer drivers that support preconfiguration.
 - c. Select the **Silently create network port and install driver** install type.
 - d. Click the **Network Settings** button to enter the network settings.
3. From **Network Settings** dialog:
 - a. From the **Required Settings** section, enter at least one way of identifying the product (IP address, Hardware address, or Hostname).
 - b. Make any changes to the **Additional Settings** section (port name, product name, default printer, sharing and share name). You can leave the default settings if you don't need to make changes.
4. From **Package Target** section:
 - ☐ Select the output name and location. Three files will be written here: an .EXE file, a .CAB file and an .XML file with information about the package.

5. From **Create Package** section:
 - a. If you want to suppress any error messages, select the **Suppress all end user error messages** checkbox.
 - b. Click the **Create Package** button.
 - c. The configuration dialog will open and allow you to set configuration details for this printer driver. After accepting the configuration changes, the package will be created.
6. Run the new .EXE file from the client computer. You must have administrator rights to run the .EXE file because it will be copying files into the Windows driver store. A port and printer object will be created with the information provided above.

Common Problems

I get a warning when I select the printer driver

If there are too many files in the driver directory, or the directory is really large, a warning appears so that the user doesn't accidentally package up something they didn't intend to (like the root directory). Some printer drivers are really large, and you can choose to ignore this warning and continue.

To minimize package size, each printer driver should be in its own directory. This is usually the default behavior when you expand a printer driver.

I get an error when I try to open the "Network Settings" dialog

You need to first select a printer driver before opening the "Network Settings" dialog. This populates the product name field based on the printer-driver name.

The Create Package button is not enabled

This button will not be enabled until you have:

1. Selected the printer driver.
2. If network connect – filled out one of the required network settings.
3. Selected the **Save as** name and directory.

How do I exit the DDU?

Use the Windows close button in the upper corner.

The Network Settings dialog keeps displaying an error, and I just want out

If you do not want to save settings, or change your mind and don't want a network install, you need to close the network settings dialog with the Windows close button in the upper corner. Using the **OK** button, will try to validate the settings, and that is what is causing an error.

What if the user connects the printer before the DDU package is run?

If the user connects the product, but then cancels the Plug and Play event before it finishes, this creates an incomplete Plug and Play event. After copying the printer-driver files to the Windows driver store, the DDU code will cleanup incomplete Plug and Play events for products supported by this printer driver. Then it will refresh the bus, causing the operating system to Plug and Play the product (installing the printer driver and creating the printer object.)

How do I uninstall DDU?

Delete all the files in the root DDU directory.



NOTE: No registry changes have been made with this utility.

3 Installing Windows printing-system components

Introduction

The HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product comes with software and installers for Microsoft Windows and Apple, Inc., Macintosh systems. Linux and UNIX systems are supported, and software is available on the Web. For detailed information about operating systems that support printing-system software installation for the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product, see [Supported operating systems on page 7](#).

This chapter provides procedures for installing and removing the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series printing-system software for Windows operating systems. The chapter provides information about these topics:

- [General Microsoft Windows installation instructions](#)
- [Detailed MS Windows installation instructions](#)
- [Uninstall instructions](#)



NOTE: If the computer is running a 64-bit Windows operating system, you must install the corresponding 64-bit print driver. For instructions, see [Install drivers using the Microsoft Add Printer wizard on page 84](#).

General Microsoft Windows installation instructions


These are instructions for installing the print drivers on various Windows operating systems.

Installation is similar for the Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Vista operating systems.

If the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product is connected through a file or print server, the printing-system software must first be installed on the server before being installed on any client systems. If the HP LaserJet printing-system software is not first installed on the server, then bidirectional communication and some driver autoconfiguration methods are not available to the client systems.

Microsoft Windows installation for direct connections


The printing-system software should be installed *before* the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product is connected to the computer through a parallel or USB connection and turned on. During the installation process, the software prompts you to connect the product.

 **NOTE:** If the product is not available during a direct connection installation, click the **I want to connect my printer after completing the setup wizard** check box during the installation sequence. This option allows you to connect the product to the computer at a later time.

Install from the printing-system CD

Follow these instructions to install the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series printing system from the CD that came with the product.

1. Quit all software programs.
2. Insert the CD in the CD-ROM drive.

 **NOTE:** If the CD does not start automatically, click **Start**, click **Run**, and then browse to and double-click the SETUP.EXE file in the root directory of the CD.

NOTE: In Windows Vista, you will be prompted to elevate the permissions to administrator in order to complete the installation process.

3. Click **Install** and follow the onscreen prompts.

Install drivers using the Microsoft Add Printer wizard

Use the following steps to install the print drivers by using the Add Printer wizard in Windows:

1. Insert the CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Go to the Add a printer feature in Windows.

In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, and then click **Hardware and Sound**. Under the **Printers** section, click **Add a printer**. The **Add a printer** wizard screen appears.

In Windows XP and Windows Server 2003, click **Start** on the desktop, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**. The **Printers and Faxes** window appears. Click **Add a printer**. The **Add a printer** wizard screen appears.

In Windows 2000, click **Start** on the desktop, click **Settings**, right-click, and then click **Add a printer**. The **Add a printer** wizard screen appears.

3. Use the **Add a printer** wizard to find and connect to the product. The print drivers are loaded as a part of this process.
4. Select the **Have disk** option and navigate to one of the print-driver files on the software CD, as shown in the following list:
 - **32-bit.** For use with Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Vista 32-bit operating systems. Navigate to the following driver files:
 - **PCL 6 Print Driver:** \Drivers\i386(32 bit - 2000_XP_S2003_Vista)\PCL6\hpc6015c.inf
 - **PCL 5 Universal Print Driver:** \Drivers\i386(32 bit - 2000_XP_S2003_Vista)\PCL5 - Universal Print Driver\hpcu074b.inf
 - **PS Universal Print Driver:** \Drivers\i386(32 bit - 2000_XP_S2003_Vista)\PS - Universal Print Driver\hpcu074d.inf
 - **64-bit.** For use with Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Vista 64-bit operating systems. Navigate to the following driver files:
 - **PCL 6 Print Driver:** \Drivers\x64(64 bit - XP_S2003_Vista)\PCL6\hpc6015u.inf
 - **PCL 5 Universal Print Driver:** \Drivers\x64(64 bit - XP_S2003_Vista)\PCL5 - Universal Print Driver\hpcu074t.inf
 - **PS Universal Print Driver:** \Drivers\x64(64 bit - XP_S2003_Vista)\PS - Universal Print Driver\hpcu074v.inf
5. Complete the wizard steps. The print driver is installed as part of the wizard process.

Microsoft Windows installation for computers on a network

Install the driver from a network location or from downloaded files

Follow these instructions if you are installing the printing-system files from a network location or from downloaded files. You might need to see your network administrator for the location of the printing-system software file.

1. Browse to the location of the SETUP.EXE file.
2. Double-click the SETUP.EXE file.
3. Click **Install** and continue to follow the instructions until the product is installed. For detailed installation instructions, see [Detailed MS Windows installation instructions on page 111](#).

Install the driver using downloaded files and the HP Driver Installation Utility (HPDIU)

Follow these instructions if you downloaded the driver from the Web. The driver available on the Web uses the HP DIU to install the driver on networked computers.

1. Close all programs.
2. Browse to the location of the SETUP.EXE file.
3. Double-click the SETUP.EXE file.

4. Read the license agreement, and then click the **Accept** button to continue to the **Device Connection** screen.

Figure 3-1 Software Installation — License Agreement screen




5. Select an option for how the device will be connected to the computer.

If the device is connected to the product using a USB cable, select the **Connected directly to the computer** option and then click the **Install** button. Once the software is installed, you will continue to the **Driver Installation Complete** screen.

If the device's networking settings are known, select the **Connected via the network** option, enter either the Host Name, IP Address, or the Hardware Address, and then click the **Install** button. Once the software is installed, you will continue to the **Driver Installation Complete** screen.

If the product's network settings are not known, click the **Help me find my device on the network** button. You will continue to the **Devices Found** screen once the computer has finished searching the network for HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series products.

 **NOTE:** To find the product network settings, follow these directions to print a configuration page from the product control panel.

Print a configuration page

- a. Press the **select** button ✓ to open the menus.
- b. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to **INFORMATION**, and then press **select** ✓.

- c. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to **PRINT CONFIGURATION**.
- d. Press **select** ✓ to print the configuration page.

Figure 3-2 Software Installation — Device Connection screen

The screenshot shows a window titled "HP Driver Installation Utility" with a green header bar. The header bar contains the HP logo and the text "Device Connection" and "How will your device be connected to this computer?". Below the header, there are two radio button options: "Connected directly to the computer" and "Connected via the network". The "Connected directly to the computer" option is selected. Below the "Connected directly to the computer" option, there is a text box that says "I want my device to connect directly to my computer (e.g., printer cable)". Below the "Connected via the network" option, there is a text box that says "I want my device to connect to my computer using the network." and a green button that says "Help me find my device on the network". Below the text boxes, there is a section titled "Device to install:" with three radio button options: "Host Name", "IP Address", and "Hardware Address". Each option has a corresponding text input field. At the bottom of the window, there are three buttons: "< Back", "Install", and "Cancel".

HP Driver Installation Utility

Device Connection
How will your device be connected to this computer?

☒ Connected directly to the computer
I want my device to connect directly to my computer (e.g., printer cable).

☐ Connected via the network
I want my device to connect to my computer using the network.

Help me find my device on the network

Device to install:

☐ Host Name

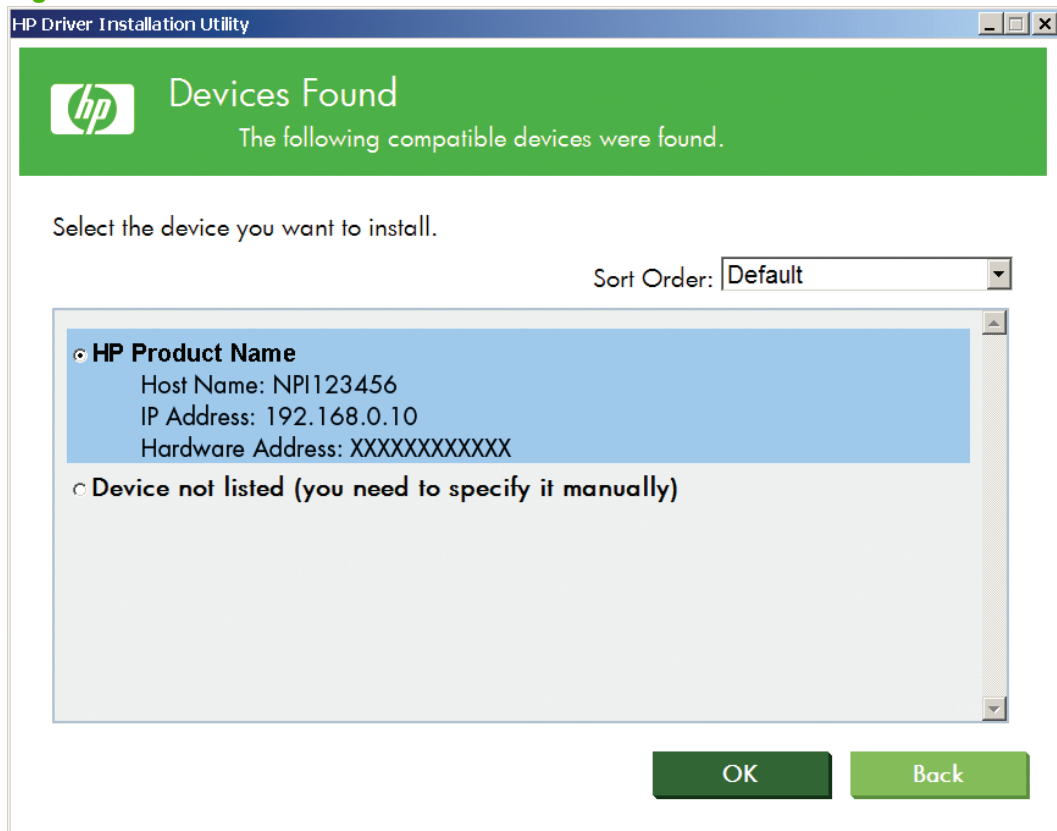
☐ IP Address

☐ Hardware Address

< Back Install Cancel

6. A list of HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series products is displayed. Select the product you want to install and click the **OK** button to continue to the **Device Connection** screen.

Figure 3-3 Software Installation — Devices Found screen



7. The network settings (Host Name, IP Address, and Hardware Address) for the product are displayed. Click the **Install** button. Once the software is installed, you will continue to the **Driver Installation Complete** screen.

Figure 3-4 Software Installation — Device Connection screen 2

HP Driver Installation Utility

Device Connection

How will your device be connected to this computer?

☐ Connected directly to the computer
I want my device to connect directly to my computer (e.g., printer cable).

☒ Connected via the network
I want my device to connect to my computer using the network.

[Help me find my device on the network](#)

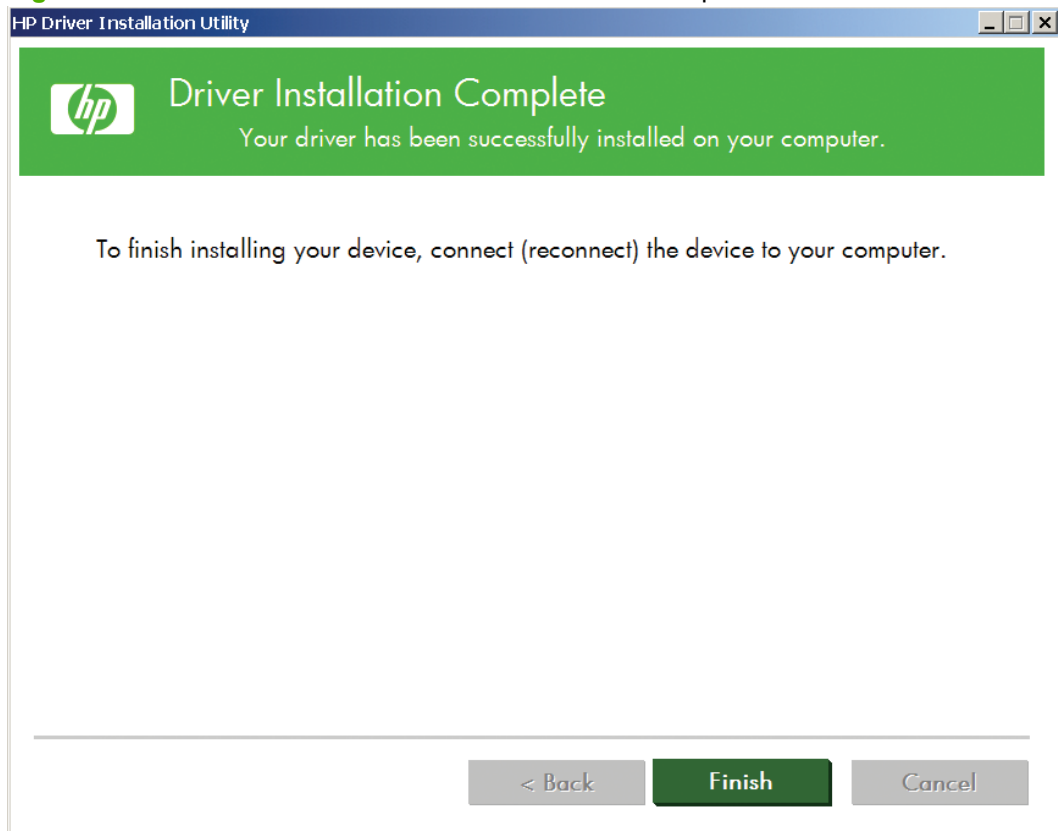
Device to install:

<input checked="" type="radio"/> Host Name	NP123456
<input type="radio"/> IP Address	192.168.0.10
<input type="radio"/> Hardware Address	XXXXXXXXXXXX

[< Back](#) [Install](#) [Cancel](#)

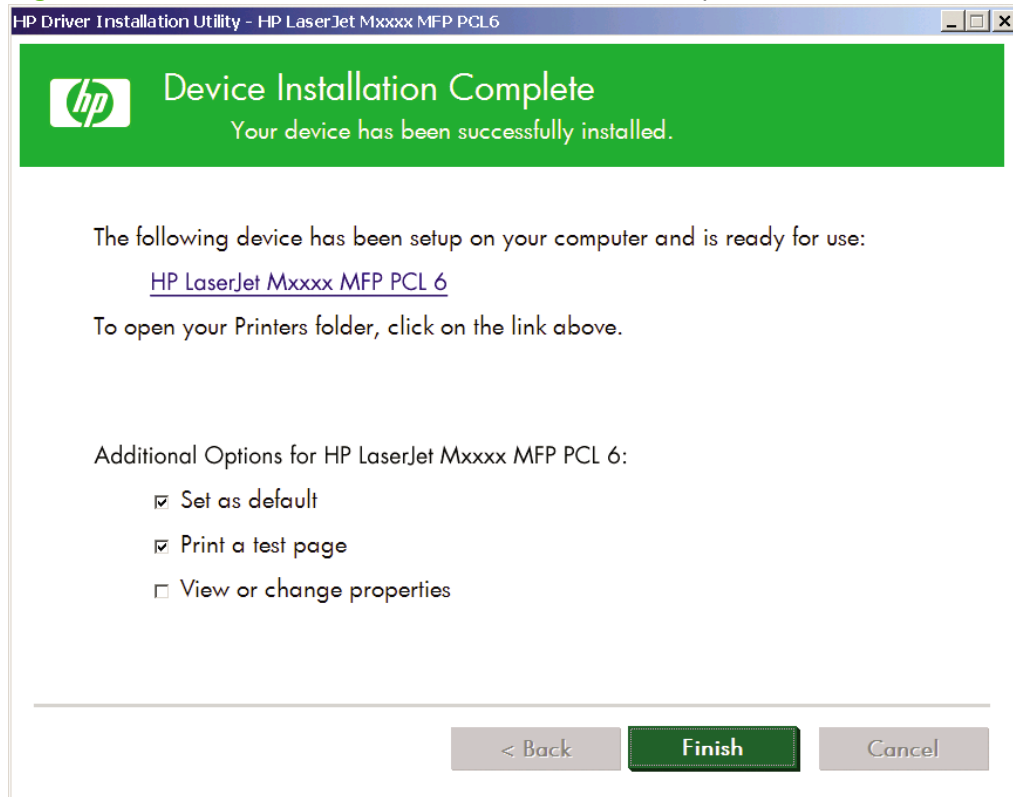
8. If you selected the **Connected directly to the computer** installation method, the following screen will appear at the conclusion of the software installation:

Figure 3-5 Software Installation — Driver Installation Complete screen 1



9. If you selected the **Connected via the network** installation method, the following screen will appear at the conclusion of the software installation:

Figure 3-6 Software Installation — Driver Installation Complete screen 2



Point and Print installation for Windows 2000, XP, Server 2003, and Vista

The following information helps you install a print driver by using the Microsoft Point and Print function when you cannot see the product on the network.

Point and Print is a Microsoft term that describes a two-step driver installation process:

1. Install a shared driver on a network print server.
2. "Point" to the print server from a network client so that the client can use the print driver.

Hewlett-Packard provides drivers that are compatible with the Point and Print feature, but this is a function of the Microsoft operating systems, not of HP print drivers. Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Vista drivers from HP are supported only on Intel x86 processor types.

In a homogenous operating system environment (clients and servers running the same operating system), the same print driver version that is vended from the server to the clients in a Point and Print environment also runs and controls the print queue configuration on the server.

However, in a mixed operating system environment (servers and clients running different operating systems), conflicts can occur when client computers run a version of the print driver that is different from the one on the print server.


In an effort to increase operating system stability, Microsoft determined that in Windows 2000 and all future operating systems, print drivers would run as *user-mode* processes. User-mode drivers run in a

protected part of the operating system, as do all of the normal end-user processes and software programs. A user-mode print driver that functions incorrectly can terminate (or “crash”) only the process in which it is running—not the whole operating system. Because access to critical system resources is restricted, overall operating system stability is increased.

Installer Customization Wizard for Windows

Administrators can use the **Installer Customization Wizard** option to customize the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series installer by pre-setting the installation options in a response file. To start the utility, click **Administrator Software** on the main menu of the software CD browser, and then click **Installer Customization Wizard**. Using this option, administrators can create a silent (unattended) installer that is customized with any of the following selections:

- Language
- Operating system
- Print drivers
- Components


 **NOTE:** For detailed information about the Installer Customization Wizard, see the *HP Device Installer Customization Guide*, which is available on the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series printing-system software CD.

Run the Installer Customization Wizard

The Installer Customization Wizard runs from the CD and can be started from the CD browser. It runs separately from the common Microsoft Installer (MSI) with its own interface.

Running the Installer Customization Wizard produces one installation package and a response file (RESPONSE.INI) for a single system installation. The installation package might work for multiple systems that have the same response information, or the RESPONSE.INI file can be directly edited for system-configuration differences. The *HP Device Installer Customization Guide* which provides the exact text for replacing entries in the RESPONSE.INI file, is available on the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series printing-system CD under **Administrator Documentation**.

Follow these steps to run the Installer Customization wizard.

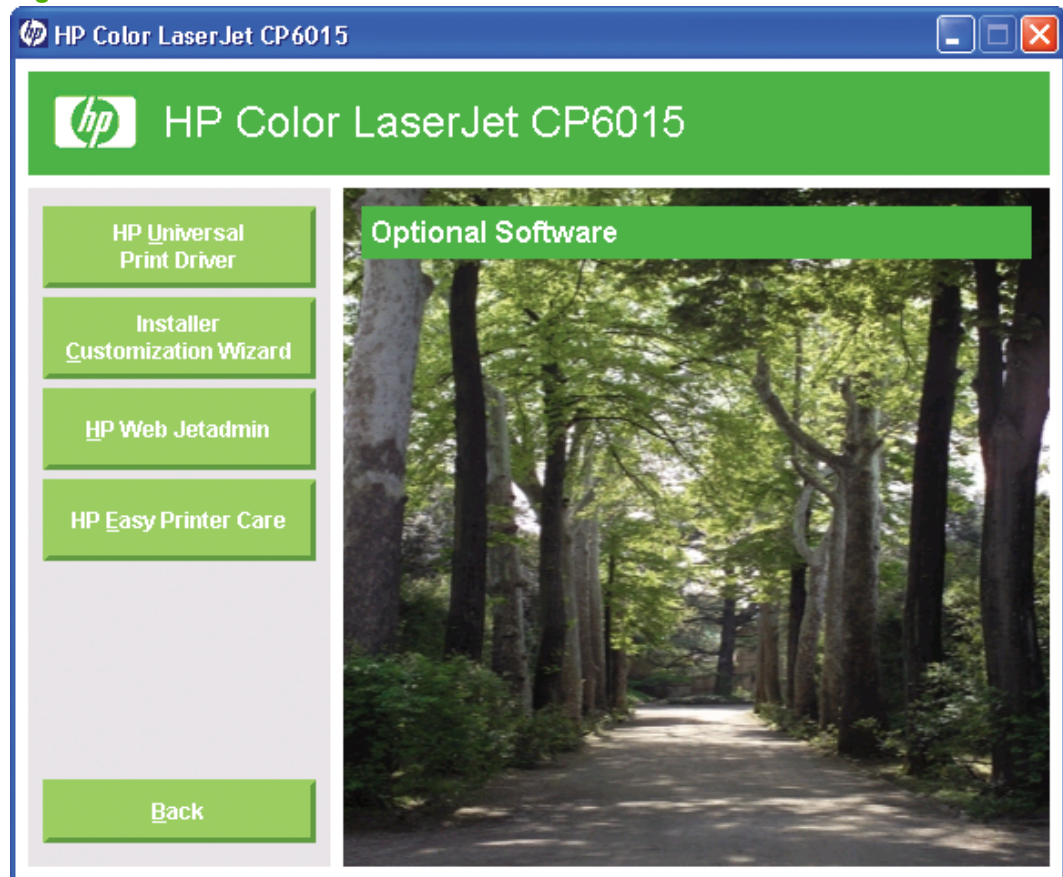
 **NOTE:** To cancel the installation, click **Cancel**.

Click **Back** on any screen where it appears to return to a previous screen.

1. Insert the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series software CD in the CD-ROM drive.

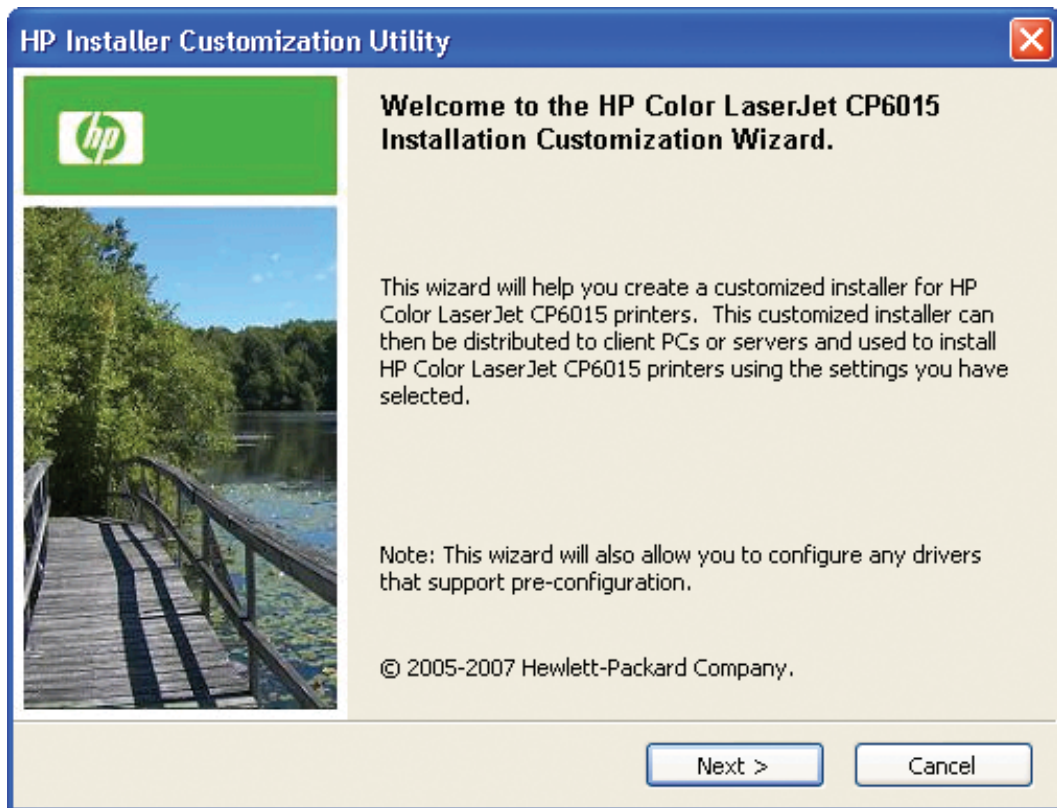
2. In the CD browser main screen, click **Administrator Software**, and then click **Installer Customization Wizard**.

Figure 3-7 Administrator Software – CD browser



3. The **Welcome to the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Installation Customization Wizard** screen appears.

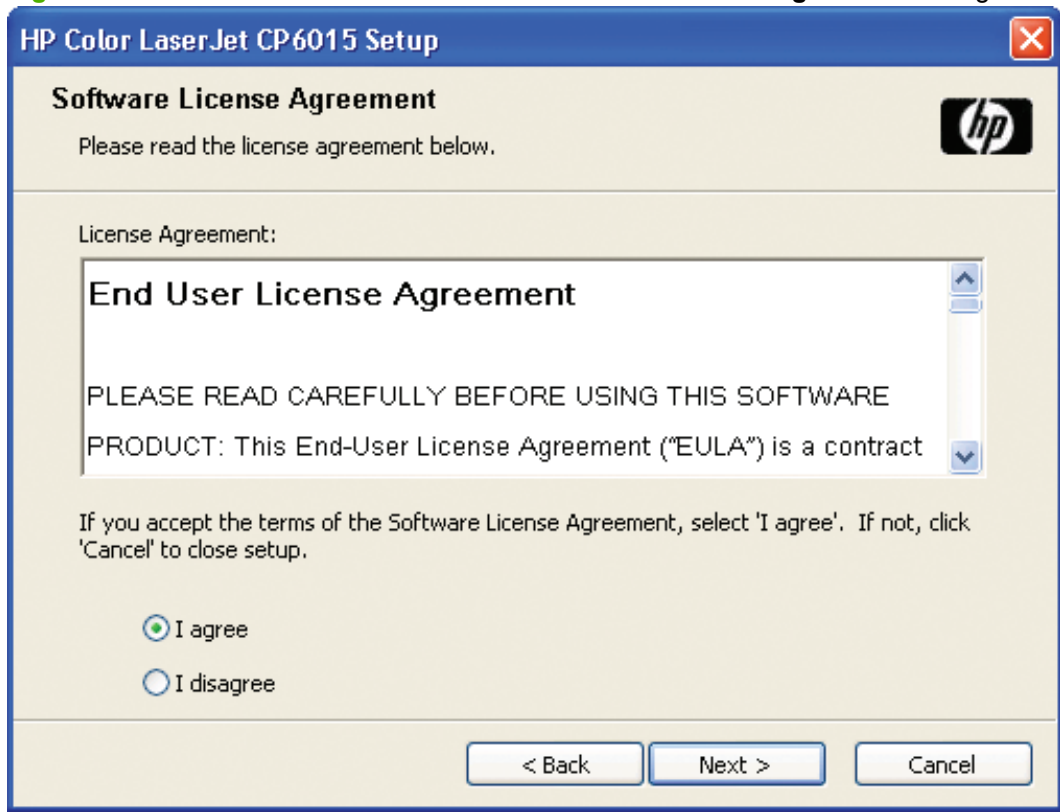
Figure 3-8 Welcome to the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Installation Customization Wizard screen



Click **Next** to continue.

4. The **Software Licence Agreement** dialog box appears.

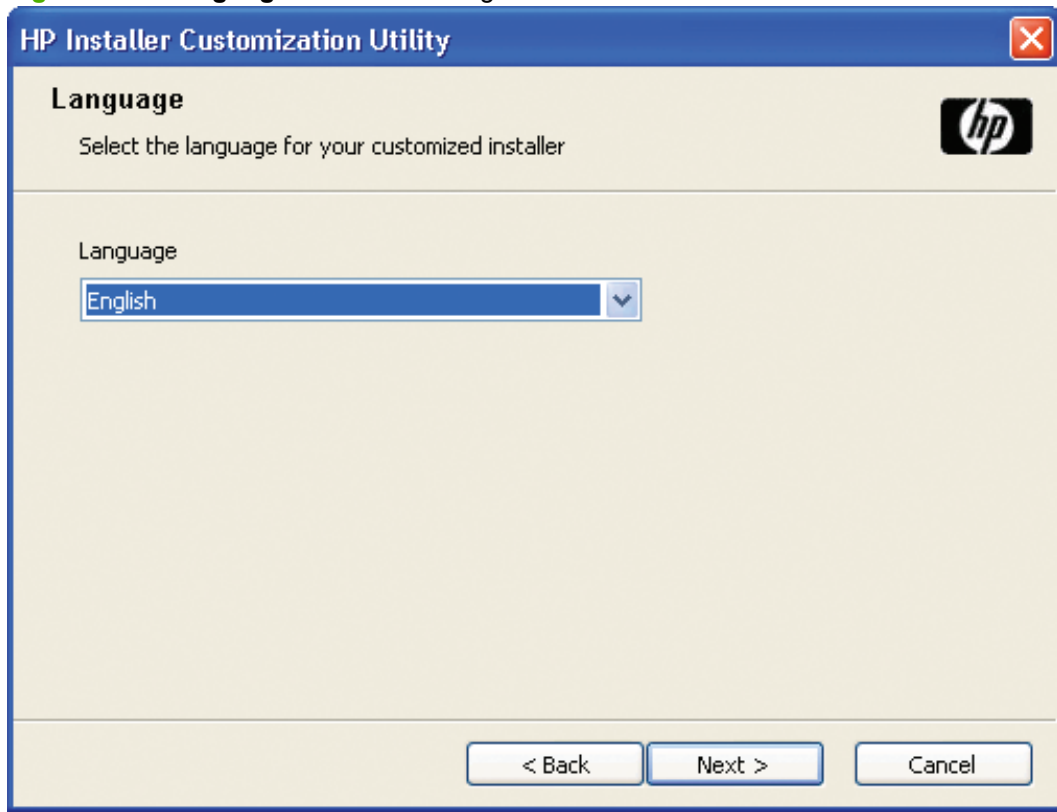
Figure 3-9 Installer Customization Wizard Software License Agreement dialog box




Read the software-license agreement, click **I agree**, and then click **Next**.

5. The **Language Selection** dialog box appears.

Figure 3-10 Language Selection dialog box



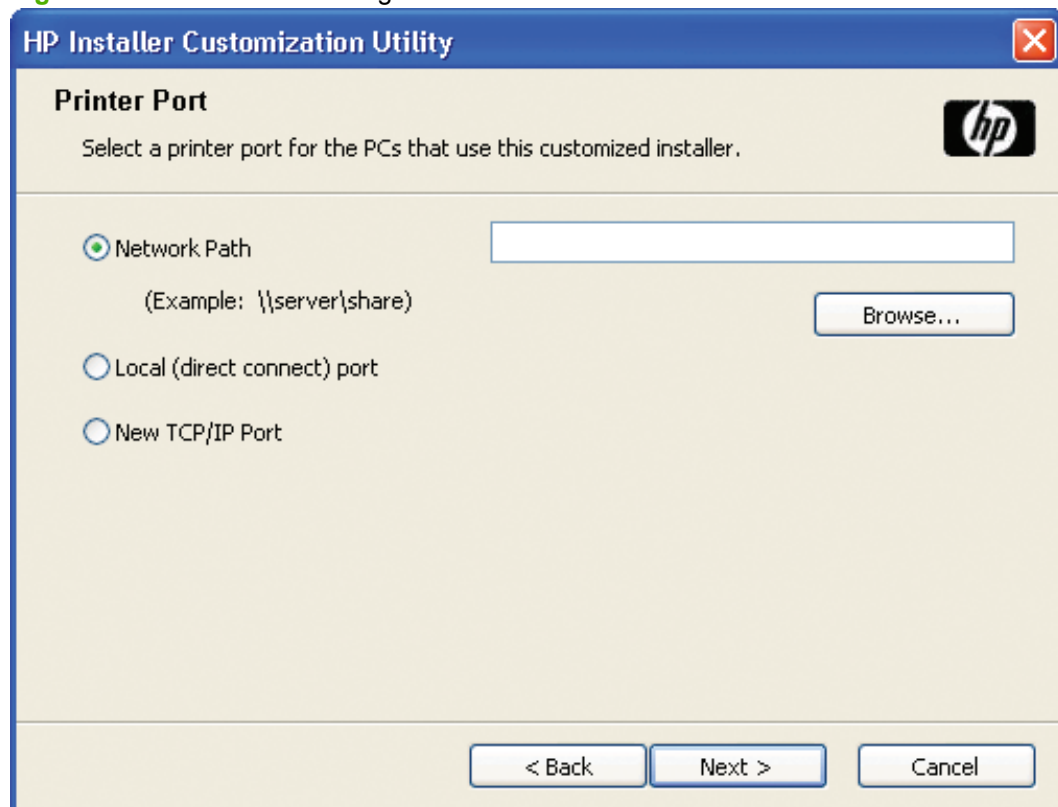
Select the language and then click **Next** to continue.

 **NOTE:** The customized installer limits all system installations of the product to the language that is selected in the **Language Selection** dialog box. Maintenance mode on systems where installation has been completed by using the customized installer does not provide options for changing the language. To change the language on a system that used an Installer Customization Wizard installation, the customized installation must be uninstalled, and a new product must be installed in order to restore the option to install other languages.

The language that you selected is installed on users' computers regardless of the language of the text in the dialog boxes. The **Language Selection** dialog box defaults to the language of the operating system, but any language that is available on the CD can be selected for the customized installer. The language selection is recorded in the response file.

6. The **Printer Port** dialog box appears.

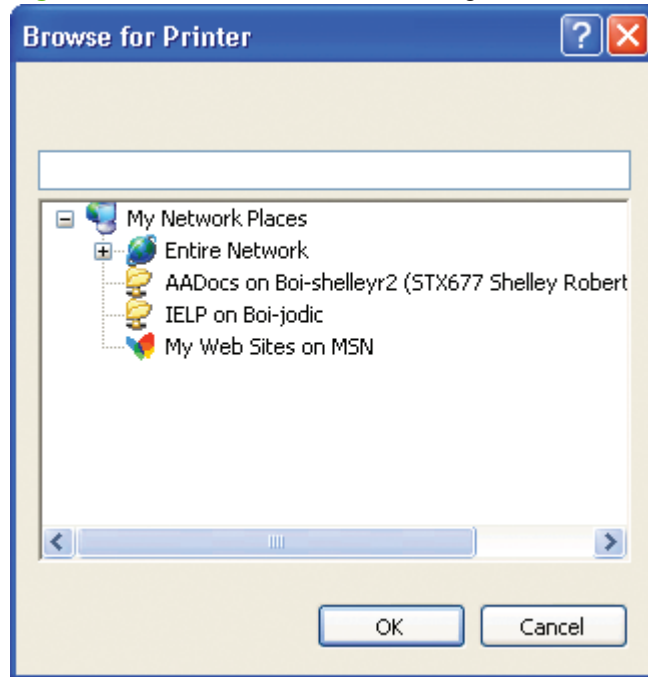
Figure 3-11 Printer Port dialog box



Choose one of the following options.

- Click **Network Path** to make the text field available for a queue name entry. Type the network path in the text field or click **Browse** to open the **Browse for Printer** dialog box.

Figure 3-12 Browse for Printer dialog box



Navigate to a product and click **OK** to record the path in the **Network Path** field in the **Printer Port** dialog box. Click **Cancel** to close the **Browse for Printer** dialog box.

- Click **Local (direct connect) port** and then click **Next** to open the **Drivers** dialog box. See [Figure 3-15 Drivers dialog box on page 101](#).
- Click **New TCP/IP Port** and then click **Next** to open the **Specify TCP/IP Port** dialog box. The **Specify TCP/IP Port** dialog box includes all custom network ports that are available on the

local system. To use any custom network port for the customized installer, the port must be created identically on the system where it will be used.

Figure 3-13 Specify TCP/IP Port dialog box

HP Installer Customization Utility

Specify TCP/IP Port

Specify the network settings of the printer.

Choose one of the following to identify the printer to be installed.

☒ IP Address (IPv4):

☐ IP Hostname:

☐ Hardware Address (MAC):

Note: The Hardware Address cannot be used to search for printers across a subnet.

Do you want to use a default port name or specify your own?

☒ Use Default

☐ Specify:

< Back Next > Cancel

Choose from the following options on the **Specify TCP/IP Port** dialog box.

- Click **IP Address** to make the field available for typing the TCP/IP address for the product. Only numerals are allowed in this field. If this option is selected, you must type at least one digit in the **IP Address** field to prevent an error message from appearing and prompting you for a valid IP address.
- Click **IP Hostname** to make the field available for typing the IP hostname for the product. Any characters are allowed in this field, but an error message appears if spaces are included in the field. If this option is selected, you must type at least one character in the **IP Hostname** field to prevent an error message from appearing and prompting you for a valid IP hostname.
- Click **Hardware Address** to make the field available for typing the hardware address of the product. It accepts any characters but limits the entry to 12 characters. If this option is selected, you must type at least one character in the **Hardware Address:** field to prevent an error message from appearing and prompting you for a valid hardware address.

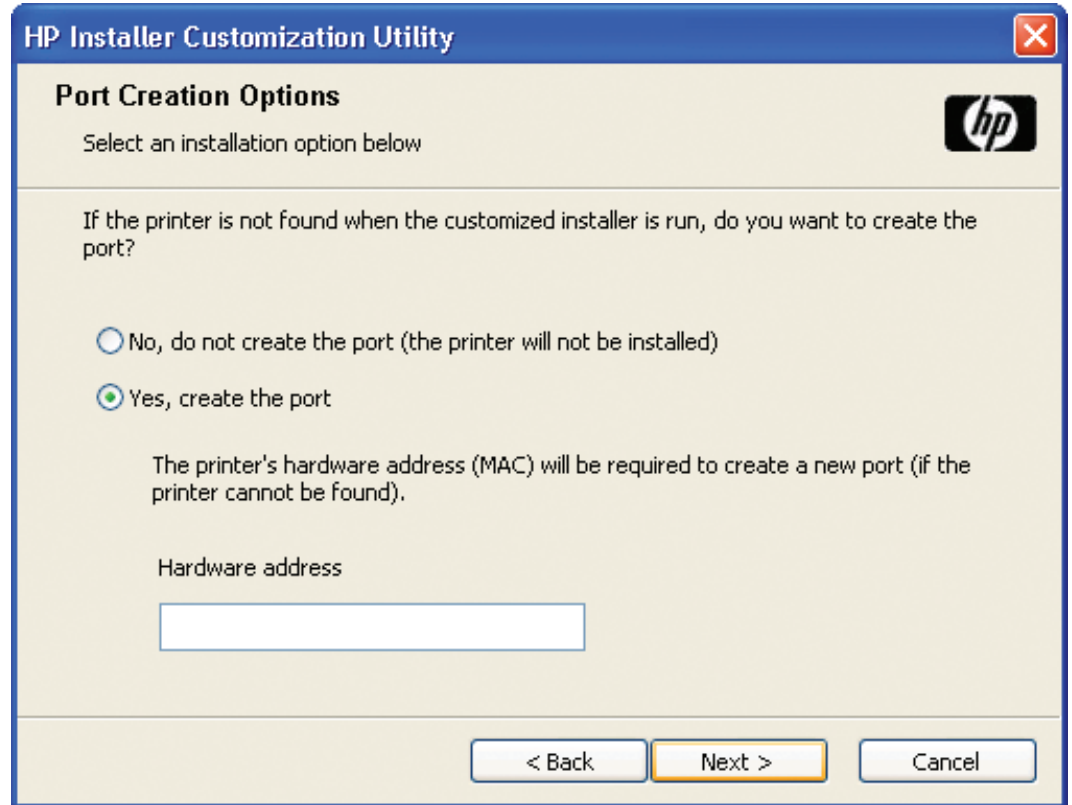
After you select any of the options, type the appropriate name or address, and then click **Next**, the **Drivers** dialog box opens (see [Figure 3-15 Drivers dialog box on page 101](#)).

For each of the options in the **Specify TCP/IP Port** dialog box, you can either use the default port name (as specified in each of the three options) or specify a different name.

If you click **Use Default** and click **Next**, the **Drivers** dialog box opens. See [Figure 3-15 Drivers dialog box on page 101](#).

- To specify a different name, click **Specify:** and click **Next** to open the **Port Creation Options** dialog box.


Figure 3-14 Port Creation Options dialog box



Click **No, do not create the port (the printer will not be installed)** if you do not want to create a port.

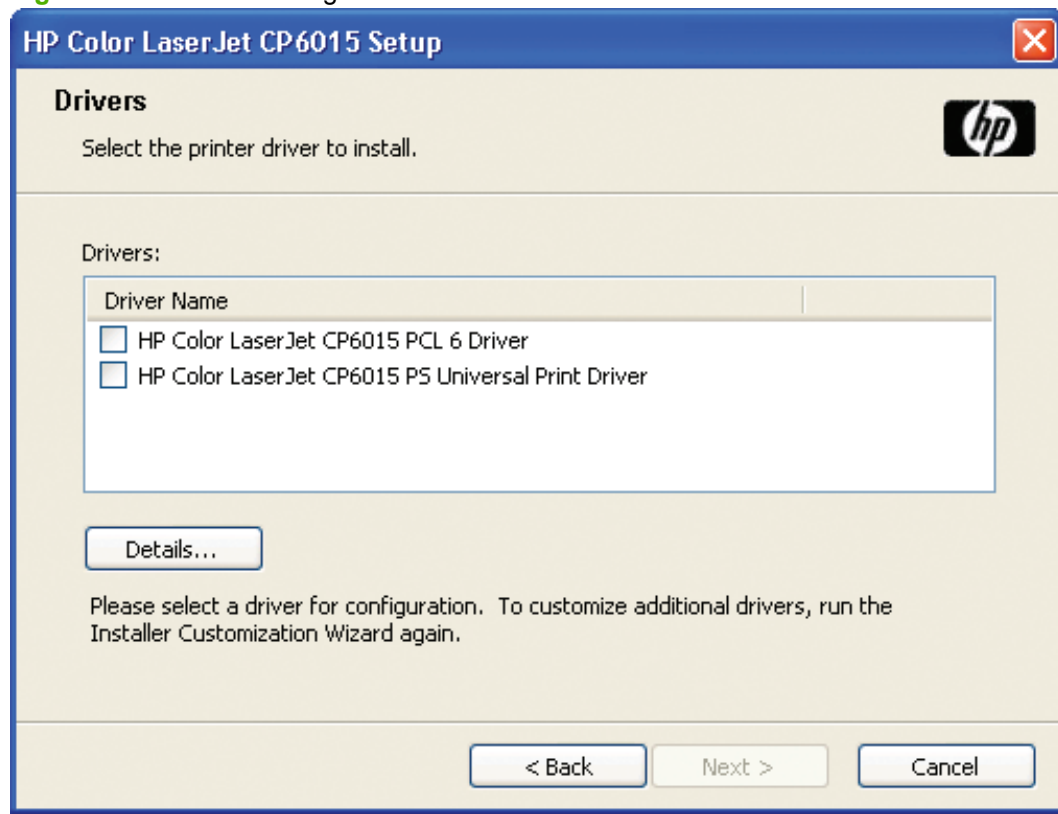
Click **Yes, create the port** and click **Next** to open the **Drivers** dialog box.

If the product cannot be found, type the product hardware address in the **Hardware Address** field and click **Next**.

 **NOTE:** To find the product hardware address, print a configuration page from the product control panel.

7. The **Drivers** dialog box appears next.

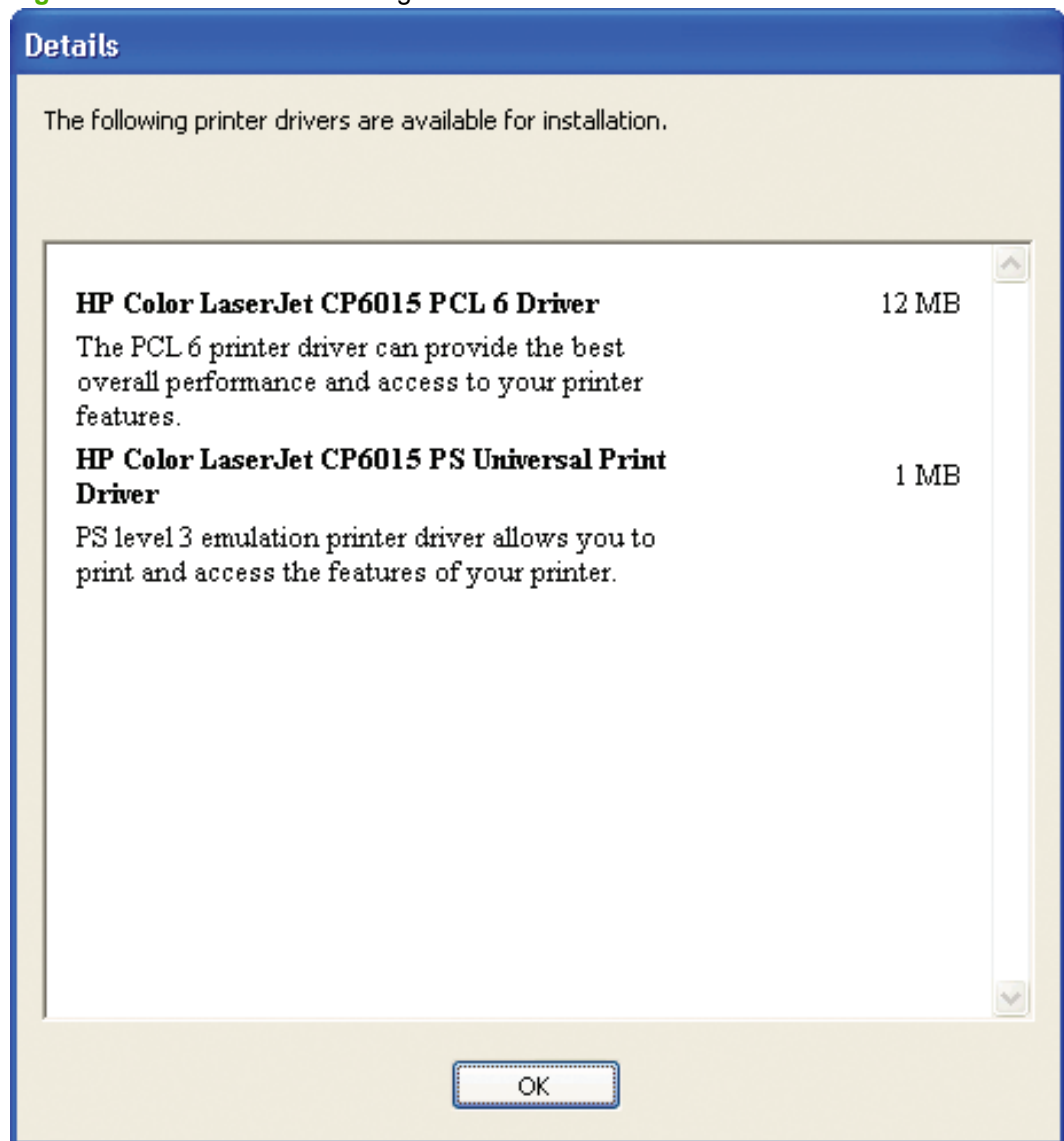
Figure 3-15 Drivers dialog box



Any combination of features can be selected for the installer, and none depends on any other selection. It is not possible to create a custom installer that installs features without including a print driver. Select the driver you want to install. Only one driver can be selected at a time.

- To view details about the drivers, click **Details...**. The driver **Details** dialog box appears.

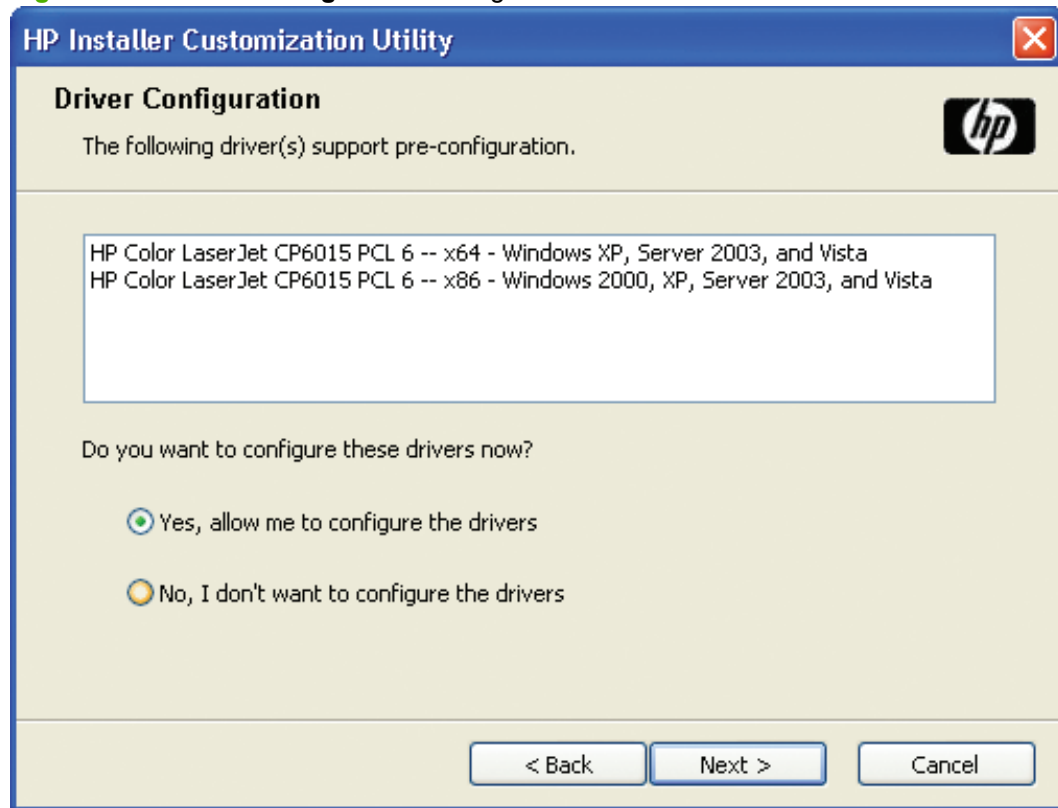
Figure 3-16 Driver **Details** dialog box



All the drivers that are available on the **Drivers** dialog box are described in the **Details** dialog box. Click **OK** to return to the **Drivers** dialog box.

8. On the **Drivers** dialog box, click **Next** to continue the installation. The **Driver Configuration** dialog box appears.

Figure 3-17 Driver Configuration dialog box

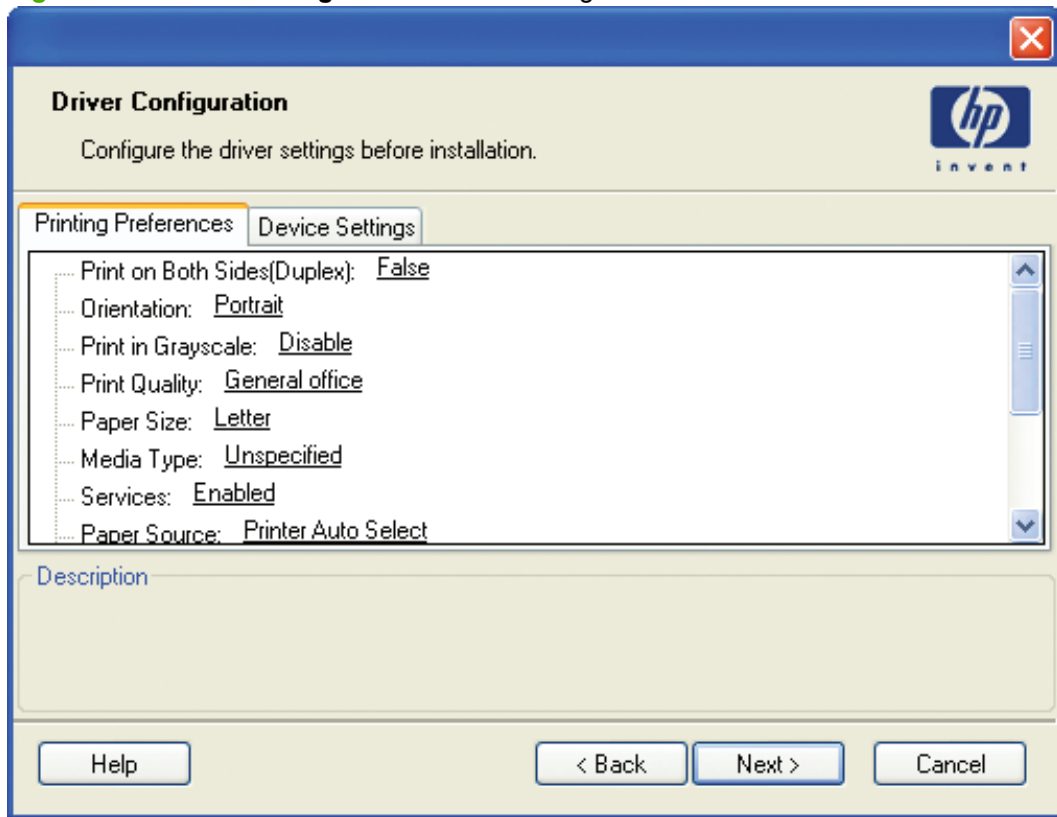


Clicking **No, I don't want to configure the drivers** and then clicking **Next** takes you to the **Additional Software** dialog box.

Clicking **Yes, allow me to configure the drivers** and then clicking **Next** takes you to the **Driver Configuration details** dialog box.

9. Use the **Driver Configuration details** dialog box to configure driver settings.

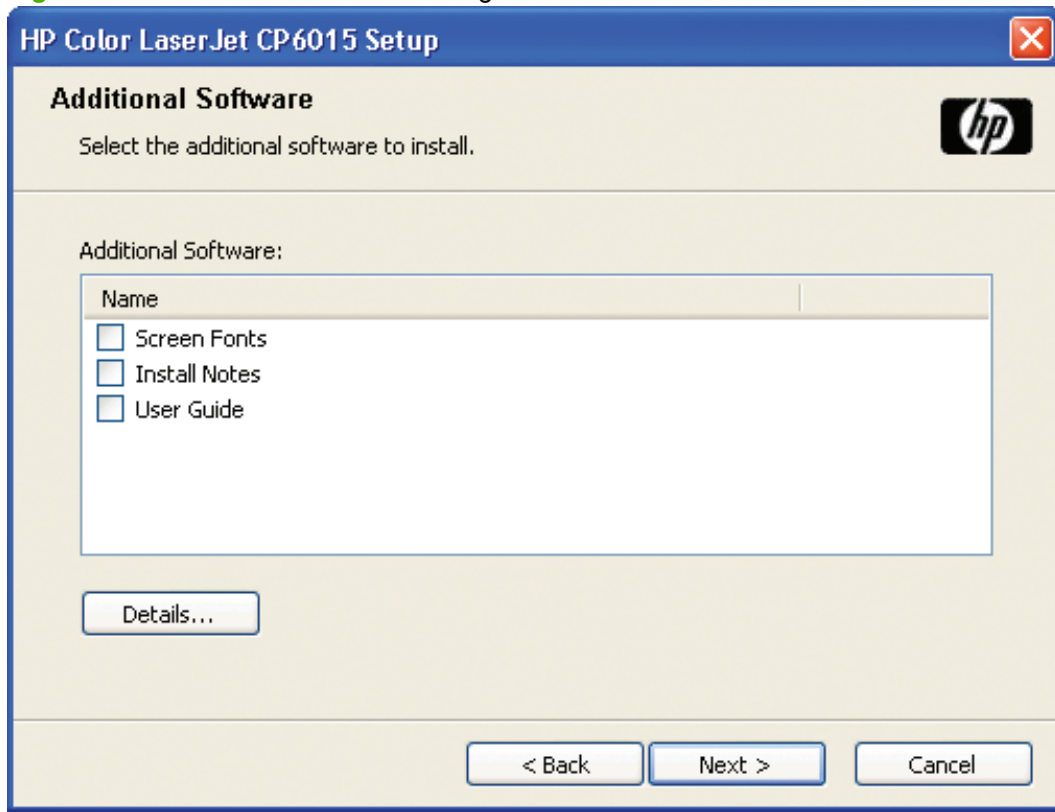
Figure 3-18 Driver Configuration details dialog box



Click any underlined setting to make changes on the **Printing Preferences** and **Device Settings** tabs.

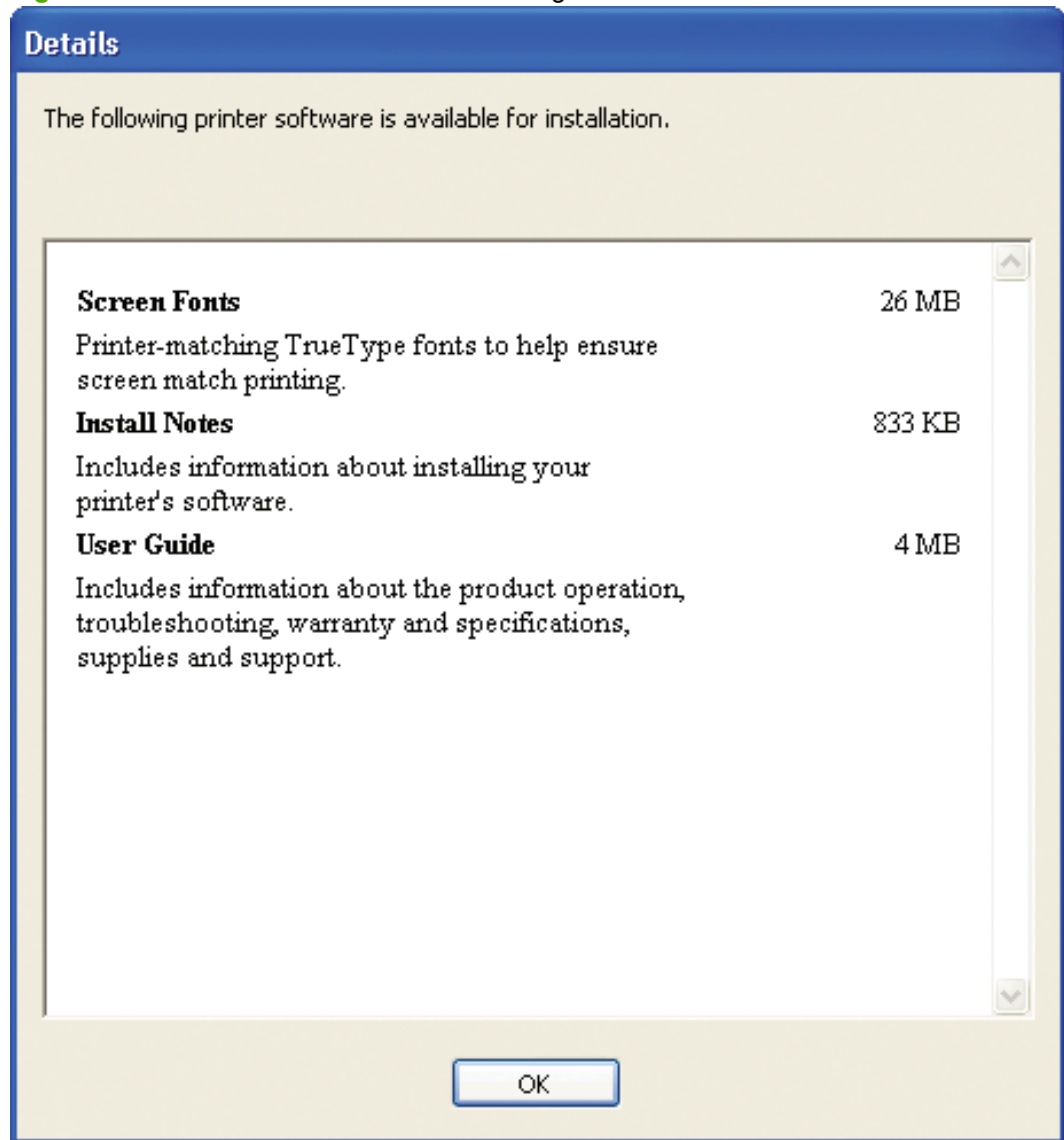
10. Click **Next** to continue. The **Additional Software** dialog box appears.

Figure 3-19 Additional Software dialog box



- To view details about the additional software, click **Details**. The additional software **Details** dialog box appears.

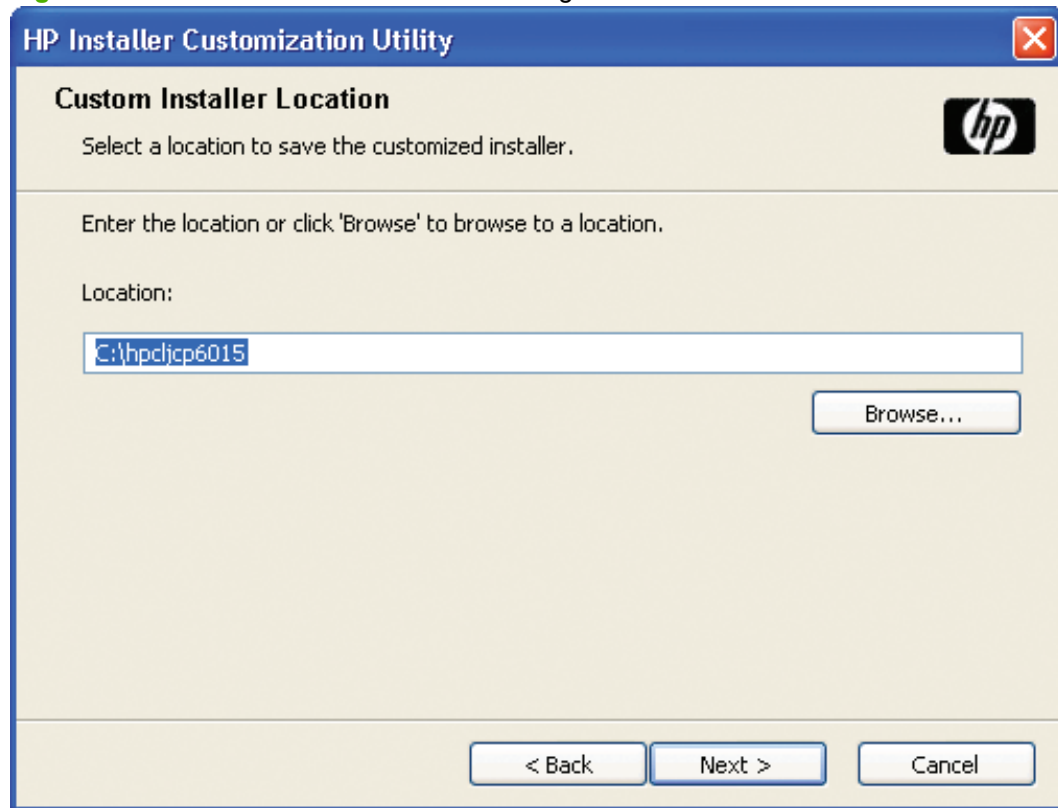
Figure 3-20 Additional software **Details** dialog box



All the software that you selected in the **Additional Software** dialog box is described in the **Details** dialog box. Click **OK** to return to the **Additional Software** dialog box.

11. In the **Additional Software** dialog box, click **Next** to open the **Custom Installer Location** dialog box, which is shown in the following figure.

Figure 3-21 Custom Installer Location dialog box

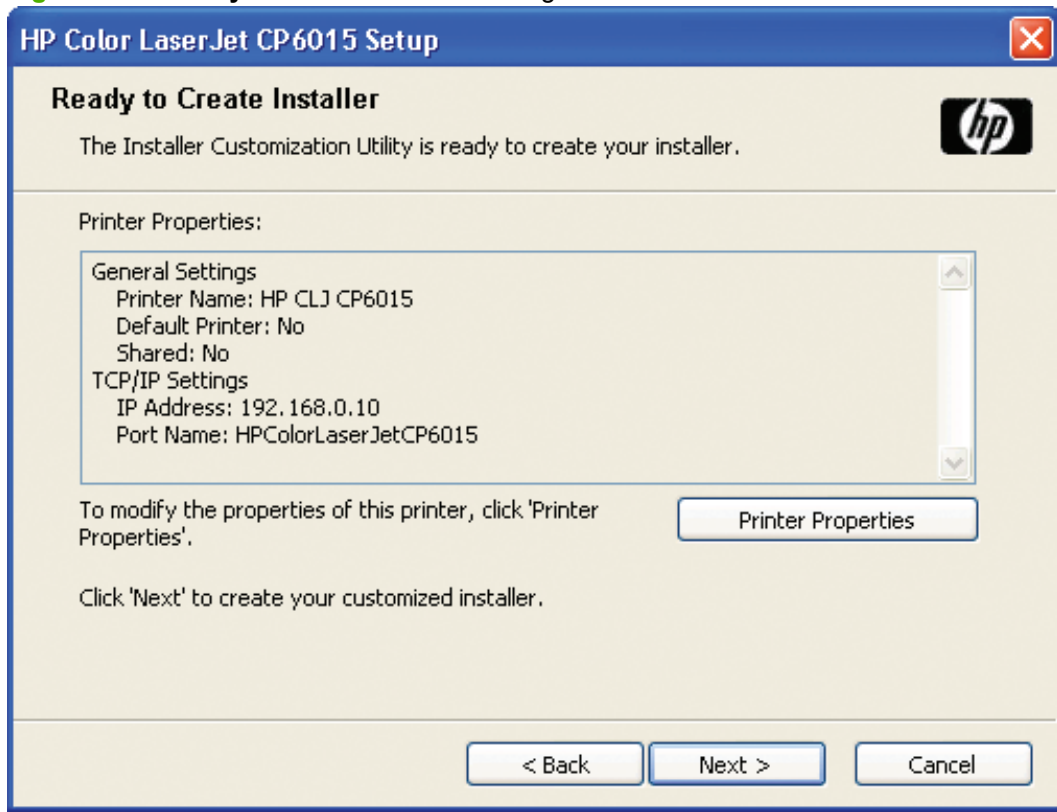



Use the **Location:** text field to type a description of the physical location of the product. The field is large, but allows only a limited number of characters.

To change the physical location of the product, click **Browse...**, navigate to the folder, and then click **OK** to return to the **Custom Installer Location** dialog box.

12. Click **Next** to open the **Ready to Create Installer** dialog box.

Figure 3-22 Ready to Create Installer dialog box

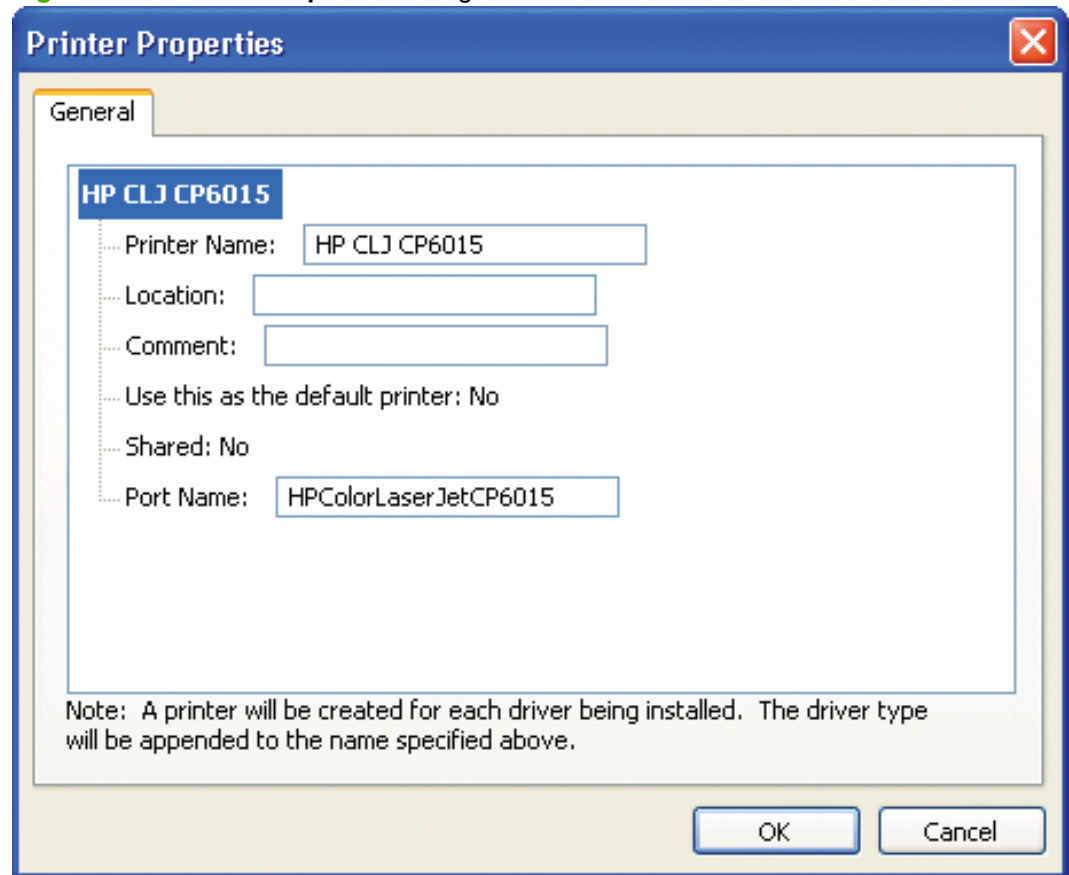


 **NOTE:** The location for the installer package defaults to
c:\<name of product>

NOTE: During installation, several files, including system files, are placed at the root of the directory that appears in the **Location** field on the **Custom Installer Location** dialog box. Be sure that enough space is available on the directory before continuing.

- Click **Printer Properties** to review or change the product properties such as the printer name, location, and sharing.

Figure 3-23 Printer Properties dialog box

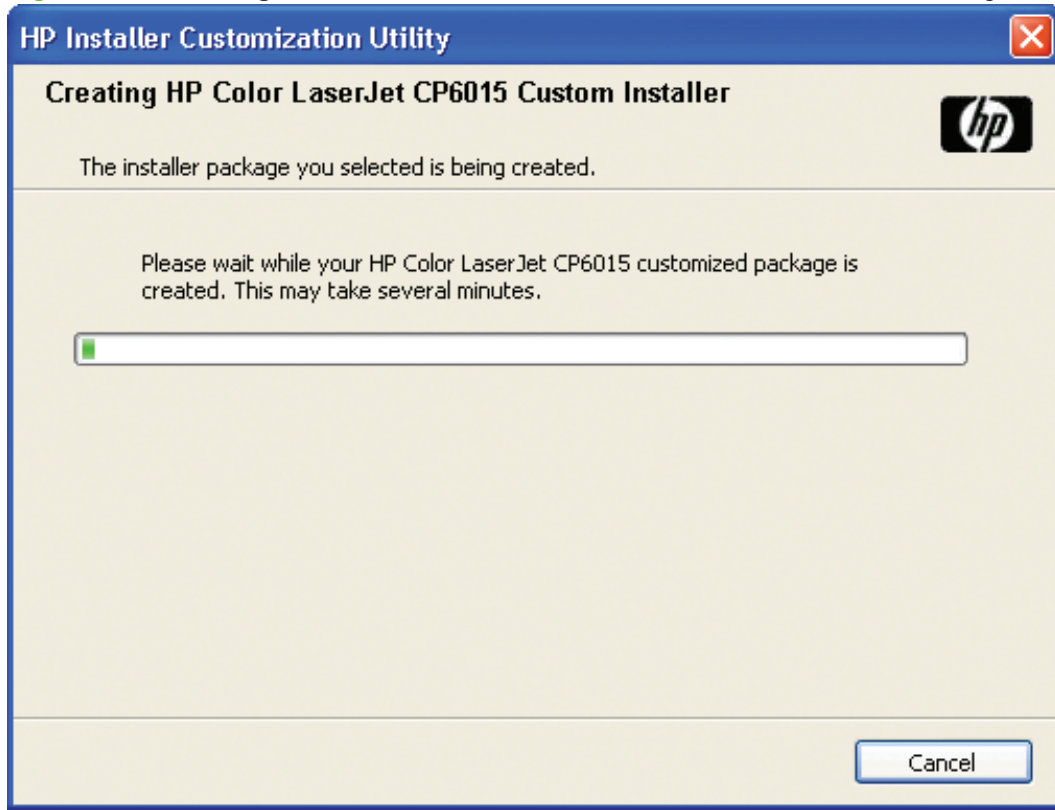


In the **Ready to Create Installer** dialog box, click **Next** to begin the process of copying and installing the printing-system software folders and files.

Click **Cancel** to close the Installer Customization Wizard without installing the printing-system software. At a certain point, the **Cancel** button disappears and the process cannot be revoked.

13. The **Creating HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Custom Installer** dialog box appears next.

Figure 3-24 Creating HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Custom Installer dialog box



Distribution

The installation package is now ready for distribution. It is the same as the package on the CD, except that it is limited to one language, and it only installs the features and options that you selected. The installation package is run silently so that it requires no user interaction. This installation method is useful when you want to use the default selections that the installer provides or when you want to run the installation without being prompted.

You can perform the silent installation in two ways:

- Customized silent installer
- Command-line silent installer

The response file can be renamed, but it must be in the root directory of the installer package. The name cannot contain spaces; spaces prevent the SETUP.EXE file from passing to the installer package.

The end-user cannot customize the command-line silent installer. It installs the printing-system components that are included in the Full Installation.

Detailed MS Windows installation instructions

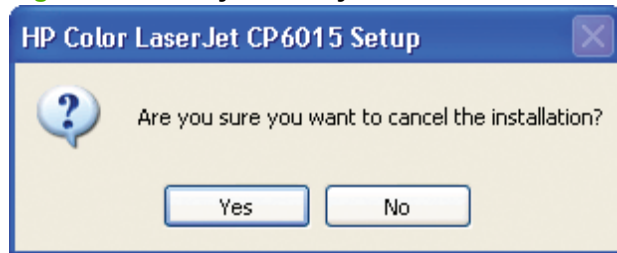
The dialog boxes shown here appear in the Windows XP Professional installation sequence. The order and appearance of dialog boxes can vary among operating systems.

Use the Help, Back, Next, and Cancel buttons

The following buttons appear on various dialog boxes during the installation process.

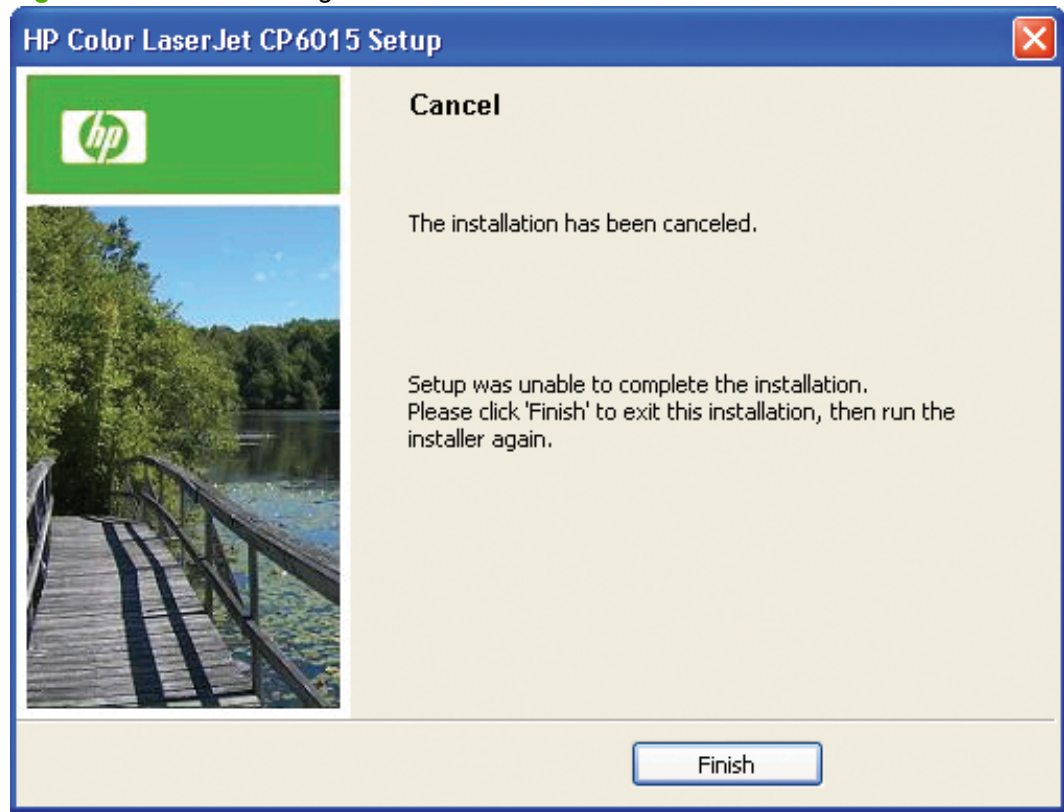
- **Help.** Click this button to find explanations about the installation process.
- **Back.** Click this button to return to the previous dialog box.
- **Next.** After you select any options on a given screen, click this button to proceed to the next step in the installation sequence.
- **Cancel.** Click this button to exit the installer without installing the product. The following sequence occurs when you click **Cancel**.
 1. When you click **Cancel**, a dialog box opens that prompts you with this question: **Are you sure you want to cancel the installation?**

Figure 3-25 Are you sure you want to cancel the installation? dialog box



2. When you click **Yes**, the **Cancel** dialog box opens, stating that the setup was interrupted.

Figure 3-26 Cancel dialog box



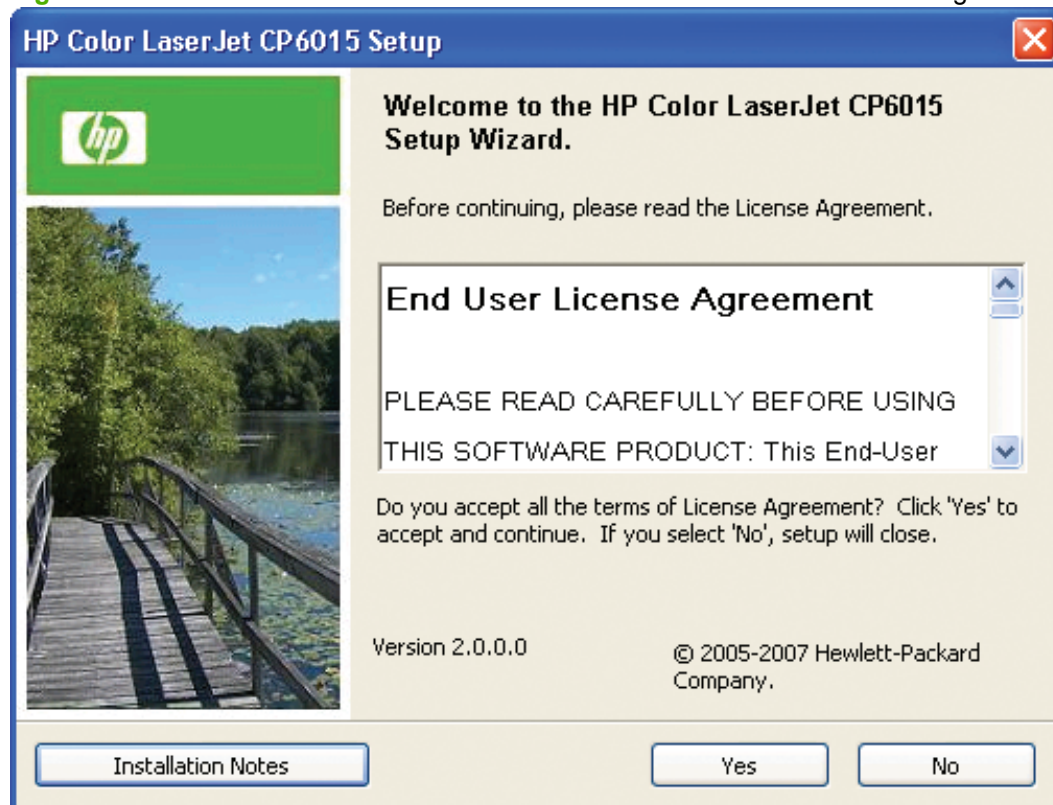
3. Click **Finish** to close the installer.

Printing-system software installation for direct connections

Follow these instructions to install the printing-system software through a direct connection.

1. When you select the **Install** option from the main screen of the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series printing-system software CD, the **Welcome** dialog box appears.

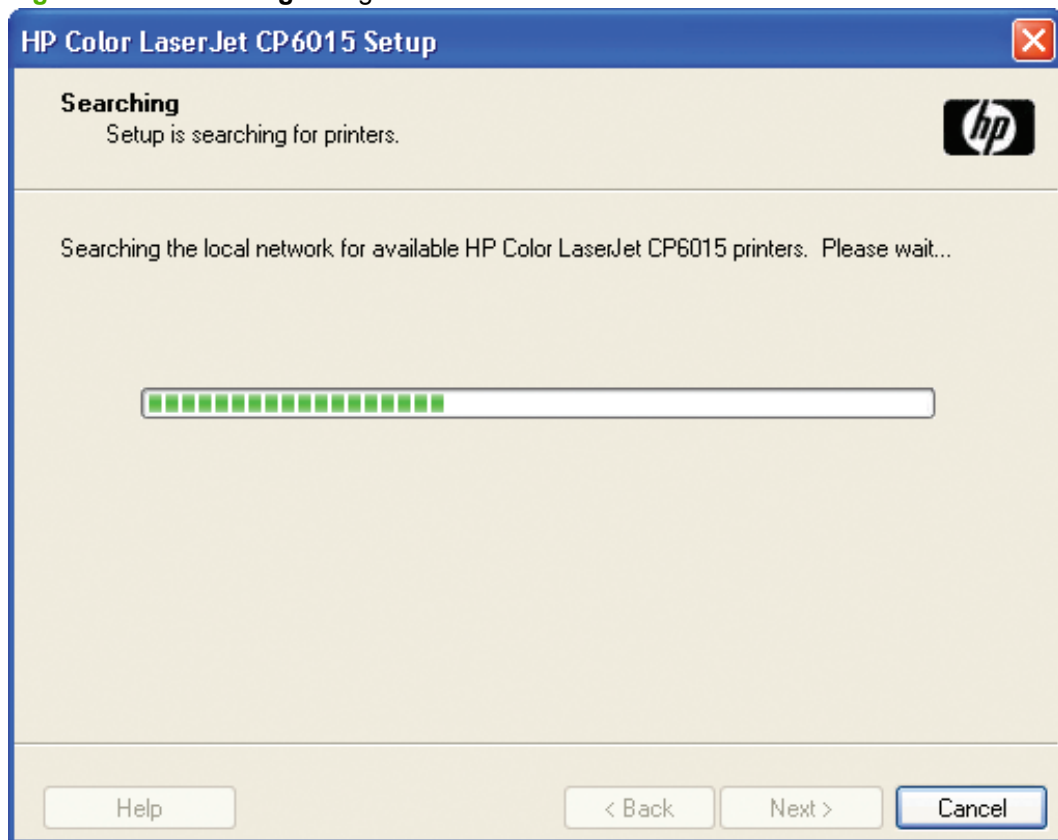
Figure 3-27 Welcome to the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Wizard dialog box



On the **Welcome** screen, read the software-license agreement and click **Yes** to proceed with the installation. Click **No** to cancel the installation.

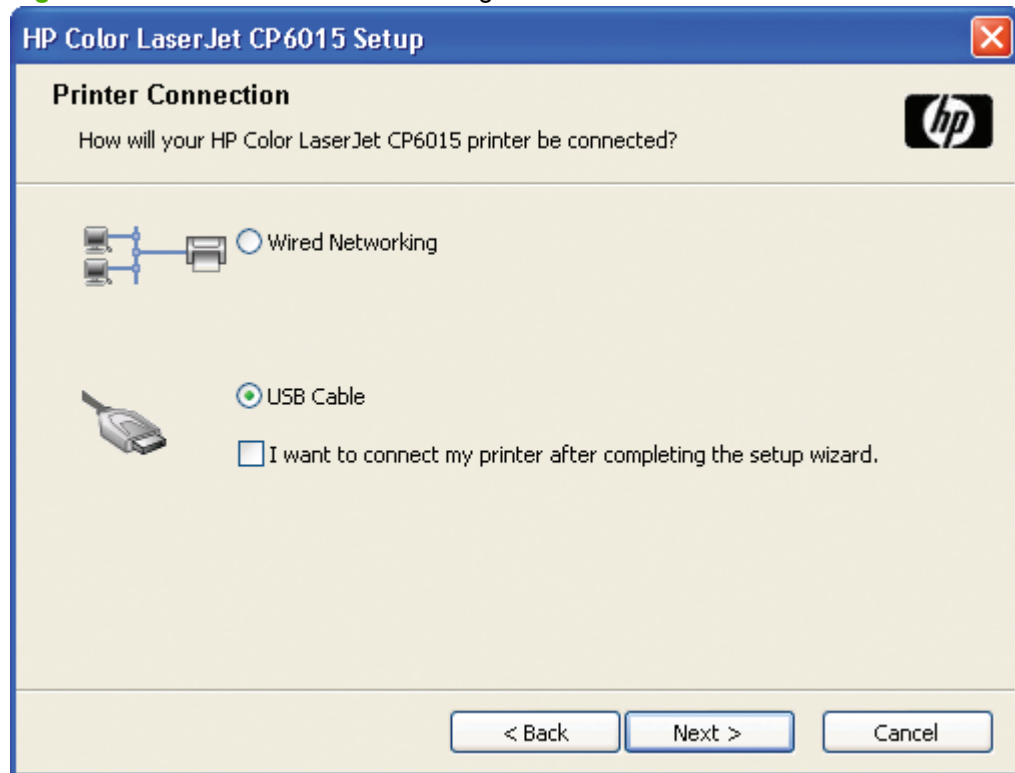
2. If you click **Yes**, the **Searching** dialog box opens.

Figure 3-28 Searching dialog box




3. The installer first searches for a product on the local network. When the product is not found on the network, the **Printer Connection** dialog box appears as shown in the following figure.

Figure 3-29 Printer Connection dialog box



Click **USB Cable** and then click **Next**.

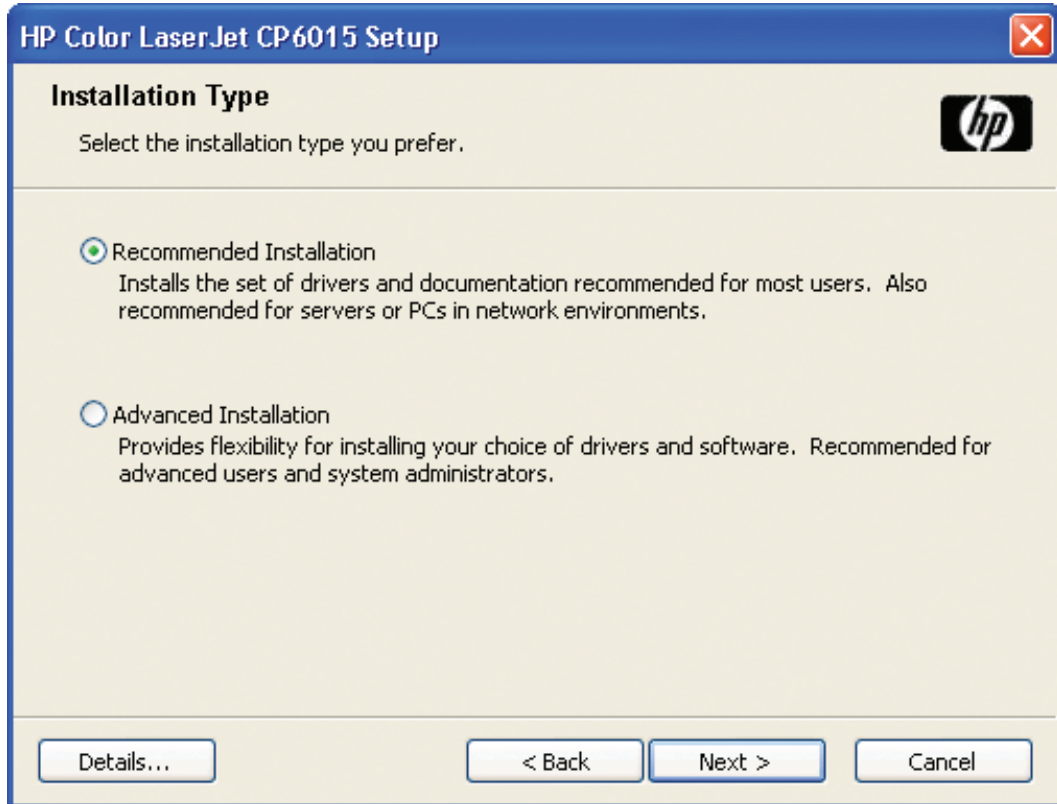
 **NOTE:** If the product is not available during installation, click the **I want to connect my printer after completing the setup wizard.** check box to defer connection to the product.

4. The **Installation Type** dialog box opens.

You can choose to install the software by using either a Recommended Installation or Advanced Installation. The Recommended Installation includes the following components:

- HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series PCL 6 Driver
- Screen Fonts
- User Guide

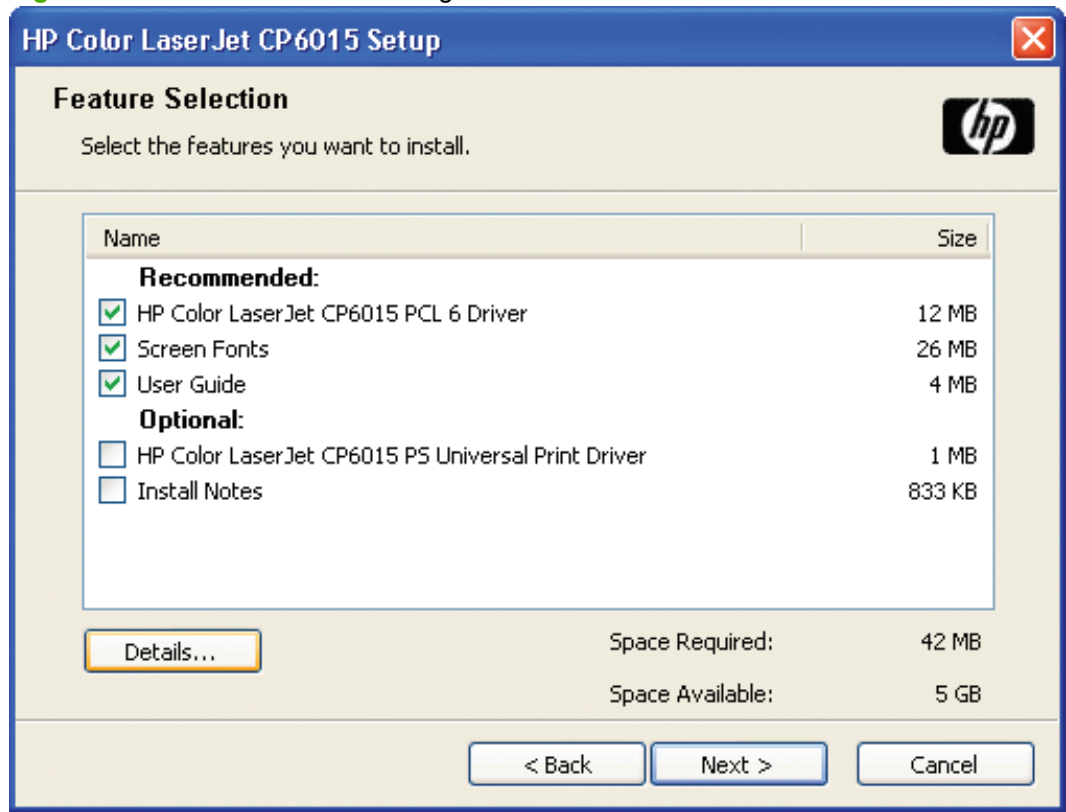
Figure 3-30 Installation Type dialog box



Click **Recommended Installation** and then click **Next**. the **Ready to Install** dialog box opens.

If you select **Advanced Installation** and then click **Next**, the **Feature Selection** dialog box opens.

- **Figure 3-31** Feature Selection dialog box



An empty check box indicates that the feature is not installed. A check mark appears when you select an install state for that feature.

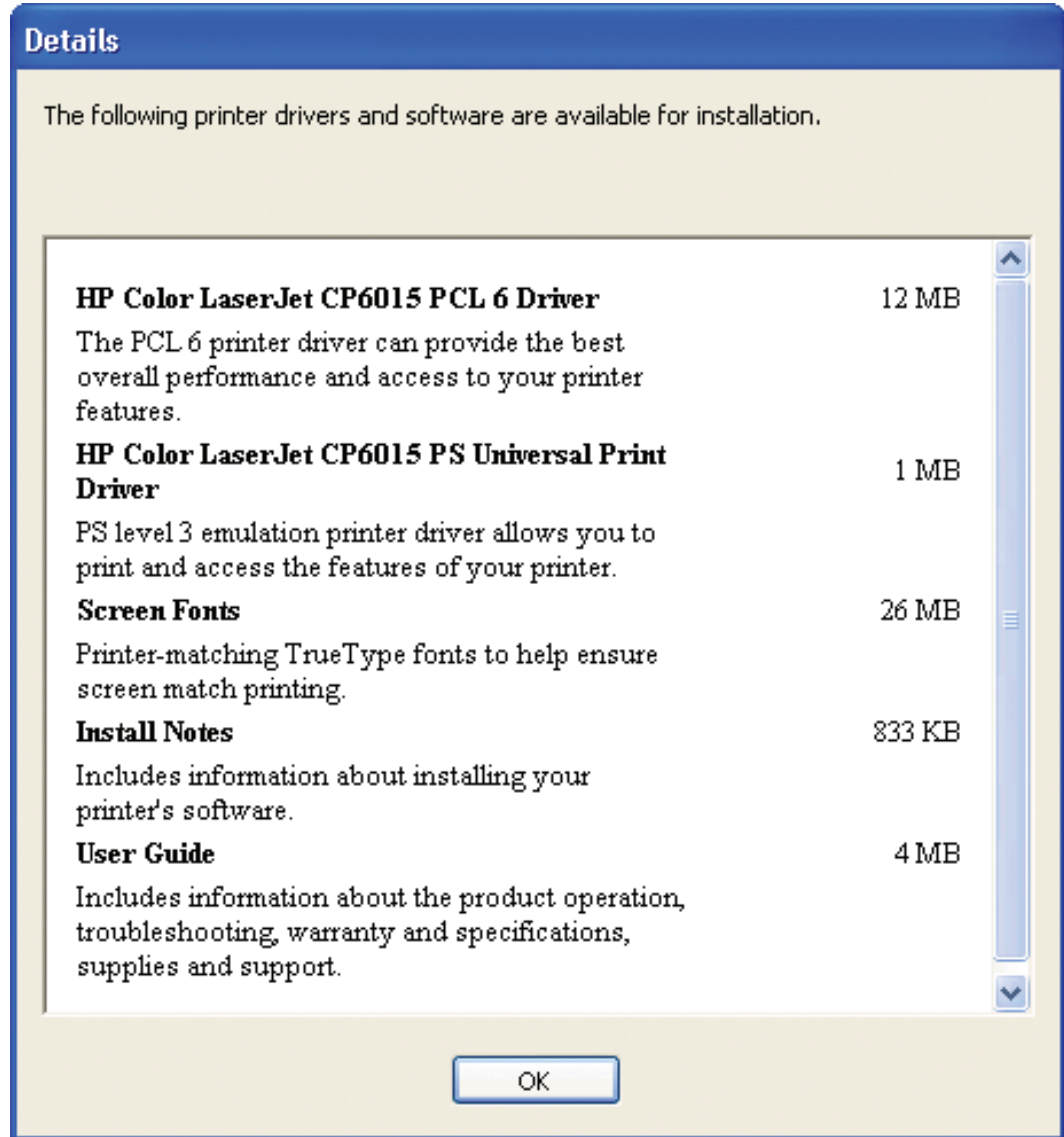
Information about the space required and the space available on your hard drive appears in the dialog box.

Any combination of features can be selected for the installer, and none depends on any other selection. It is not possible to create a custom installer that installs features without including a print driver. Select the driver you want to install. Only one driver can be selected at a time.

- To view details about the features listed, click **Details....** The **Details** dialog box appears.

All the drivers and optional features that are available in the **Feature Selection** dialog box are described in the **Details** dialog box. Click **OK** to return to the **Feature Selection** dialog box.

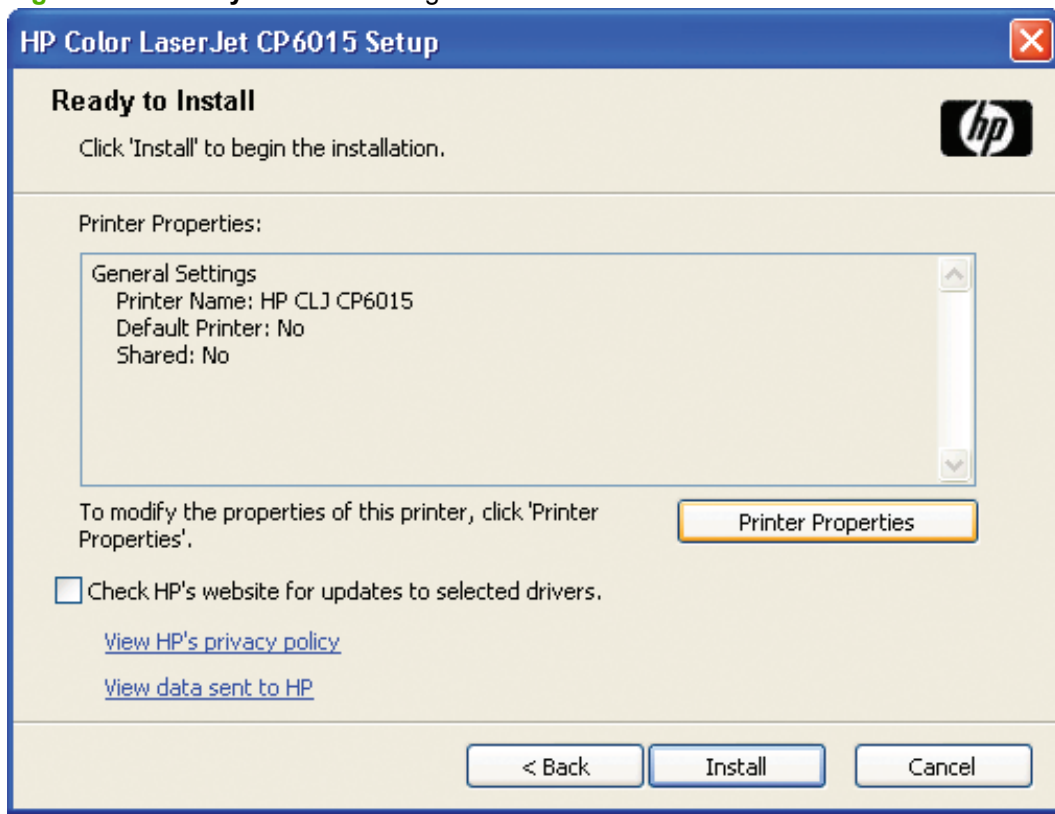
Figure 3-32 Details dialog box



In the **Drivers** dialog box, click **Next** to continue the installation.

5. The **Ready to Install** dialog box appears.

Figure 3-33 Ready to Install dialog box

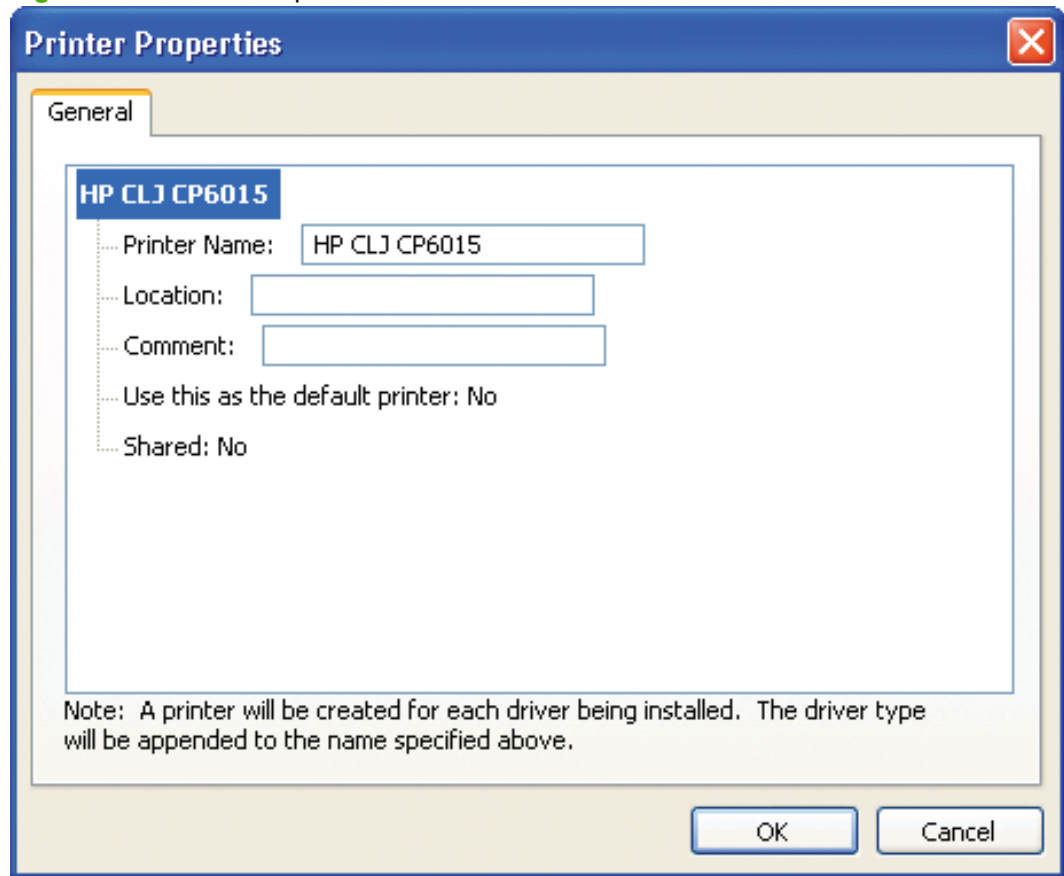


Click **Check HP's website for updates to selected drivers** if you want the installer to download updated drivers.

Click **Printer Properties** to open the dialog box.

- This dialog box has a single **General** tab

Figure 3-34 Printer Properties **General** tab



On the **General** tab, you can change the printer name by typing a new name in the **Printer Name** field.

Use the **Location:** and **Comment:** fields to describe the product. You can also leave these fields blank.

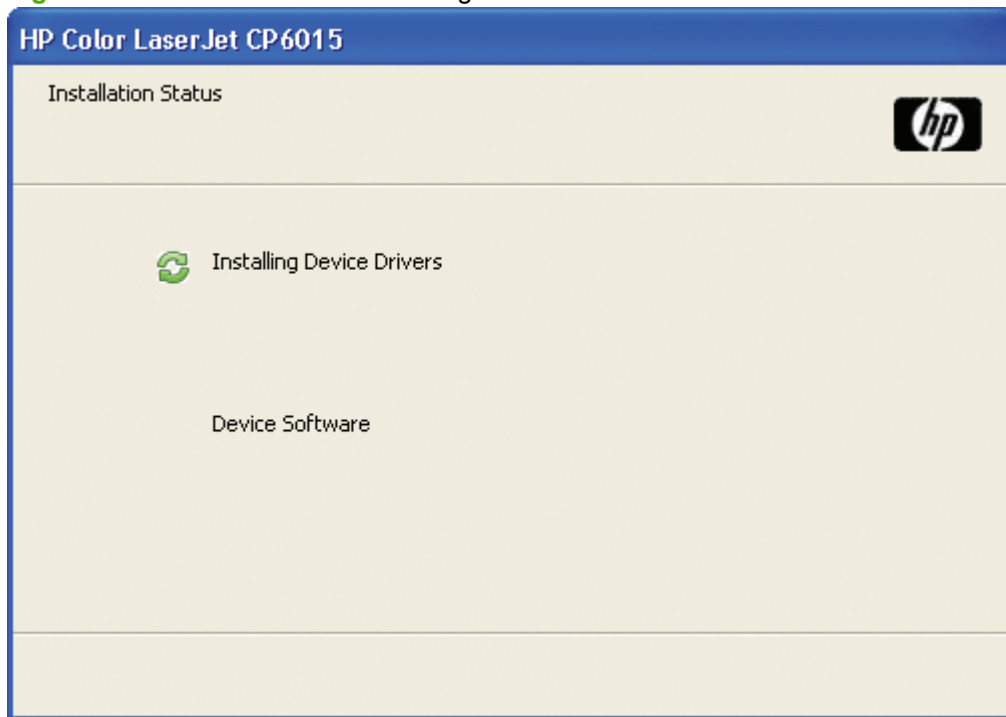
If you want to use the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product as your default printer, select the **Use the printer as the default printer for Windows-based programs** check box.

Use the **Shared:** field to share the product. The product is not shared by default.

Click **OK** to return to the **Ready to Install** dialog box, or click the **Sharing** tab to share the product over a network.

6. In the **Ready to Install** dialog box, click **Next** to begin the process of copying and installing the printing-system software folders and files. The **Installation Status** dialog box is shown in the following figure.

Figure 3-35 Installation Status dialog box

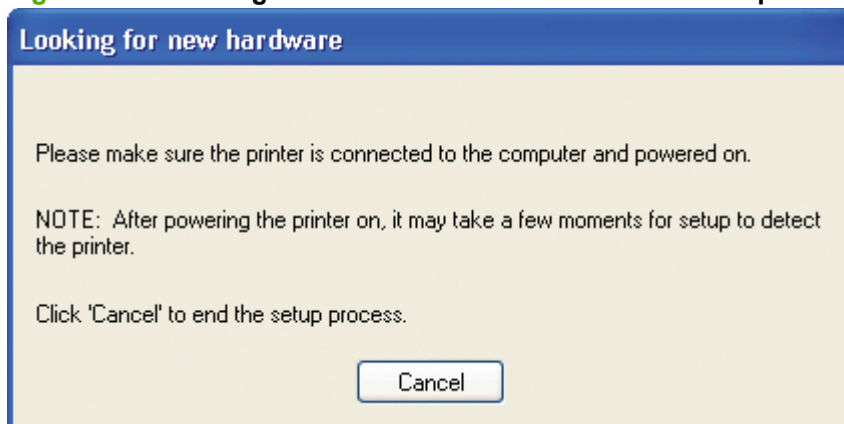


This dialog box remains on the screen until all the installation components are checked off.

If you checked the **I want to connect my printer after completing the setup wizard.** check box on the **Printer Connection** dialog box, the **Finish** dialog box appears next.

7. If you *did not* check the **I want to connect my printer after completing the setup wizard.** on the **Printer Connection** dialog box, the **Looking for new hardware – Please make sure printer is connected** dialog box appears next, prompting you to connect the product to the computer.

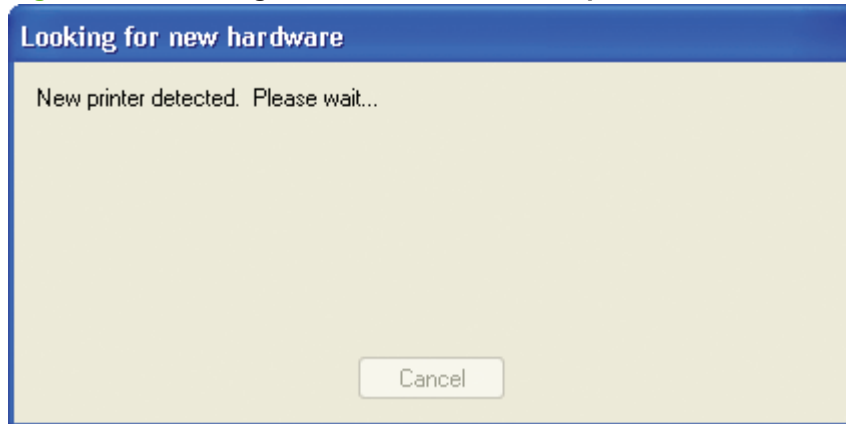
Figure 3-36 Looking for new hardware – Please make sure printer is connected dialog box



Connect the USB cable between the product and the computer.

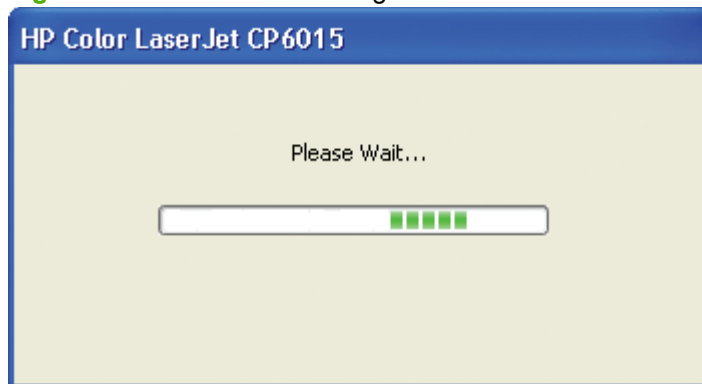
- When the product is detected, the **Looking for new hardware – new printer detected** dialog box appears.

Figure 3-37 Looking for new hardware – new printer detected



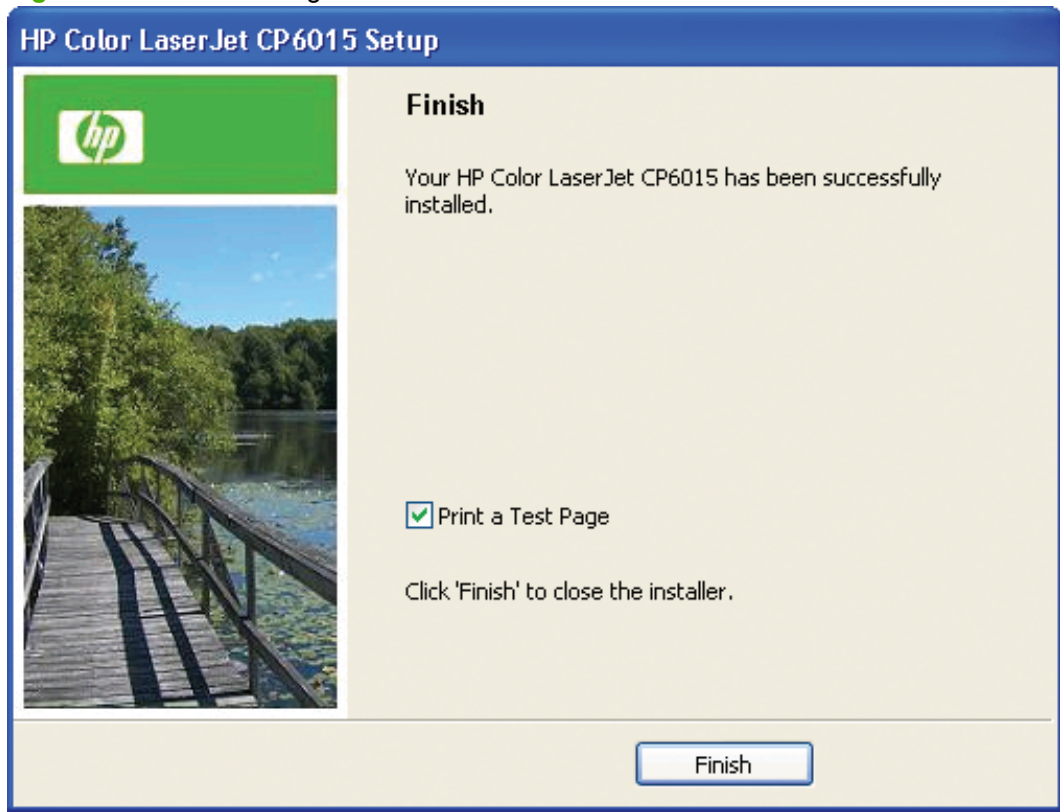
- The **Please wait** dialog box appears as the installation continues.

Figure 3-38 Please wait dialog box



8. When the installation is complete, the **Finish** dialog box appears.

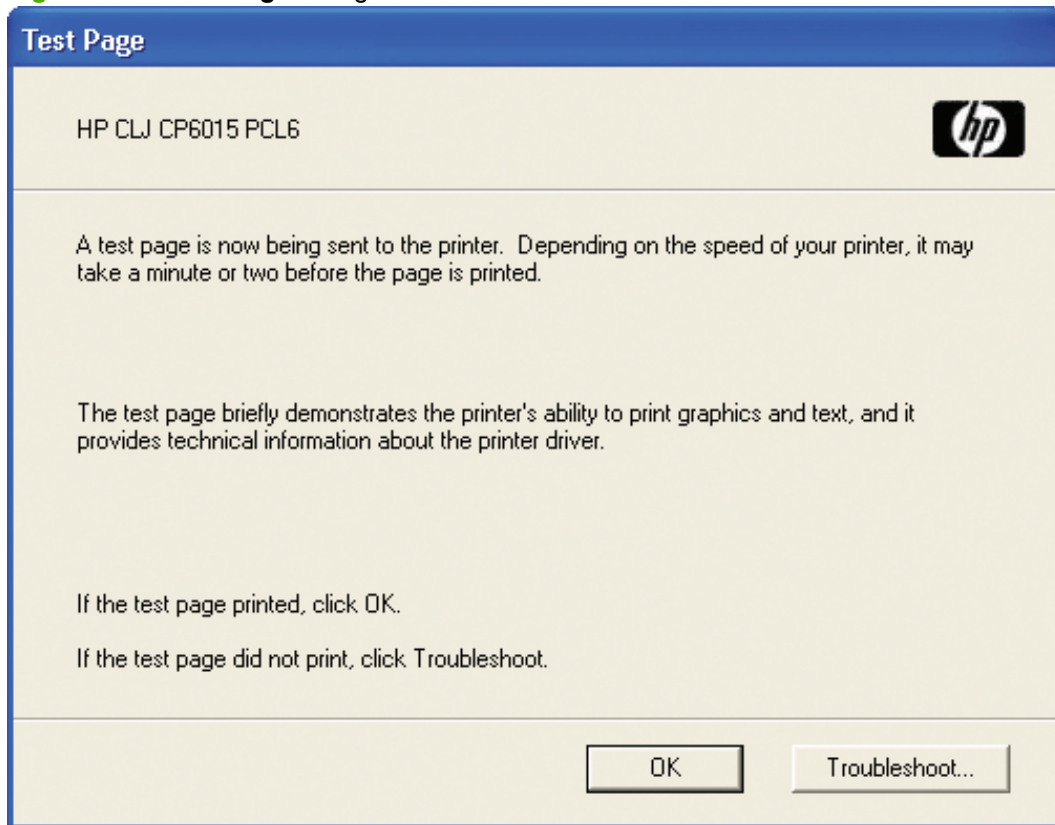
Figure 3-39 Finish dialog box



To verify that the product is connected, click to select the **Print a Test Page** check box. Click **Finish** to close the Installer.

9. If you clicked the **Print a Test Page** check box, the **Test Page** dialog box appears next.

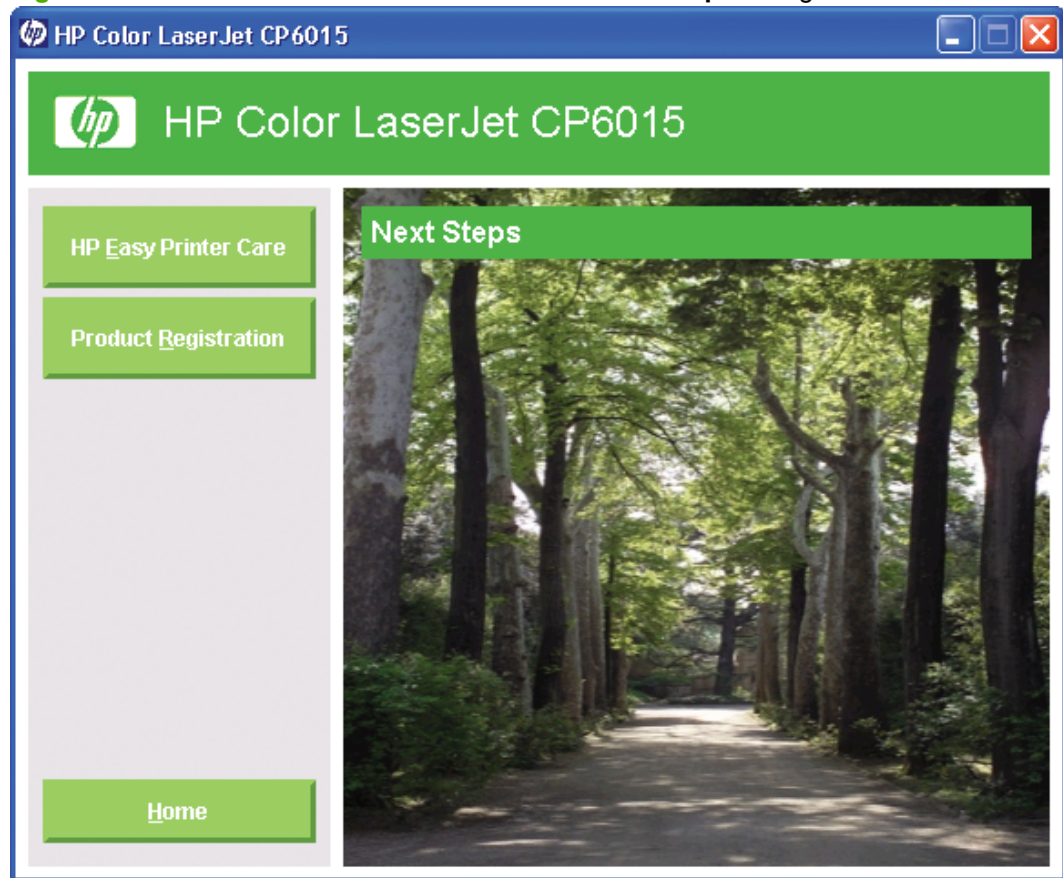
Figure 3-40 Test Page dialog box



If the test page prints correctly, click **OK** to continue. If it does not print, click **Troubleshoot...** to open screens that guide you through options to find the source of the problem.

10. The **HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Next Steps** dialog box appears.

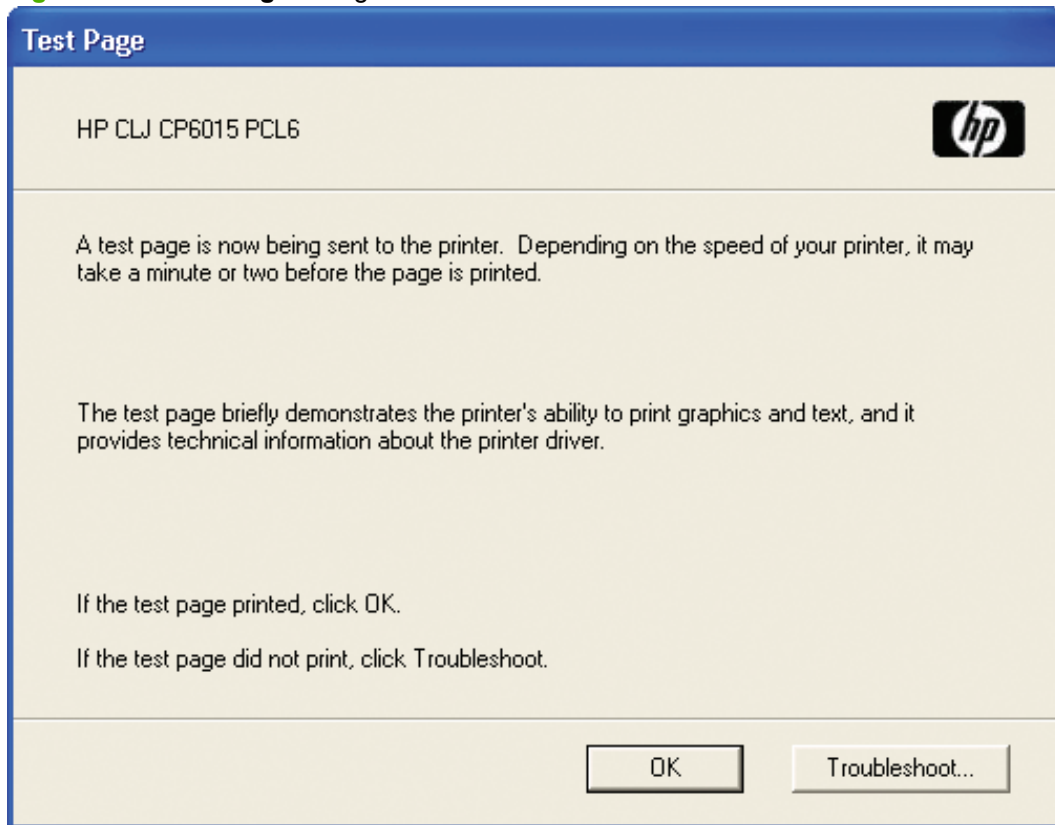
Figure 3-41 HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Next Steps dialog box



If you have access to the Internet, you can register your product online or download HP Easy Printer Care. Click **Product Registration** to open the HP Registration Web site or click **HP Easy Printer Care** to download the program.

11. To verify that the product is connected, click **Print Driver Test Page**. The **Test Page** dialog box appears.

Figure 3-42 Test Page dialog box



If the test page prints correctly, click **OK** to continue. If it does not print, click **Troubleshoot...** to open screens that guide you through options to find the source of the problem.

Printing-system software installation for network connections

For network installations, connect your product to the network, turn on the product, and print a configuration page to find the product IP address, hardware address, or hostname.

Print a configuration page

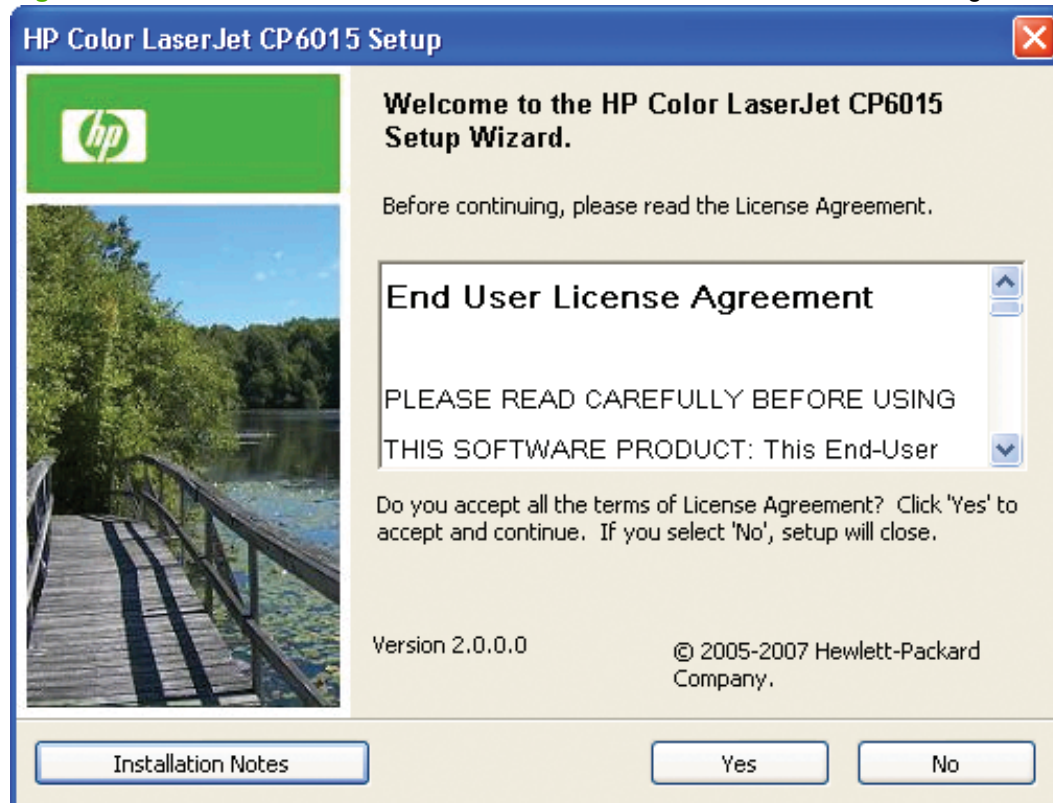
1. Press the **select** button ✓ to open the menus.
2. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to **INFORMATION**, and then press **select** ✓.
3. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to **PRINT CONFIGURATION**.
4. Press **select** ✓ to print the configuration page.

Network installation instructions

Follow these instructions to install the printing-system software on a network connection.

1. Click **Install** from the main screen of the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series printing-system software CD. The **Welcome** dialog box appears.

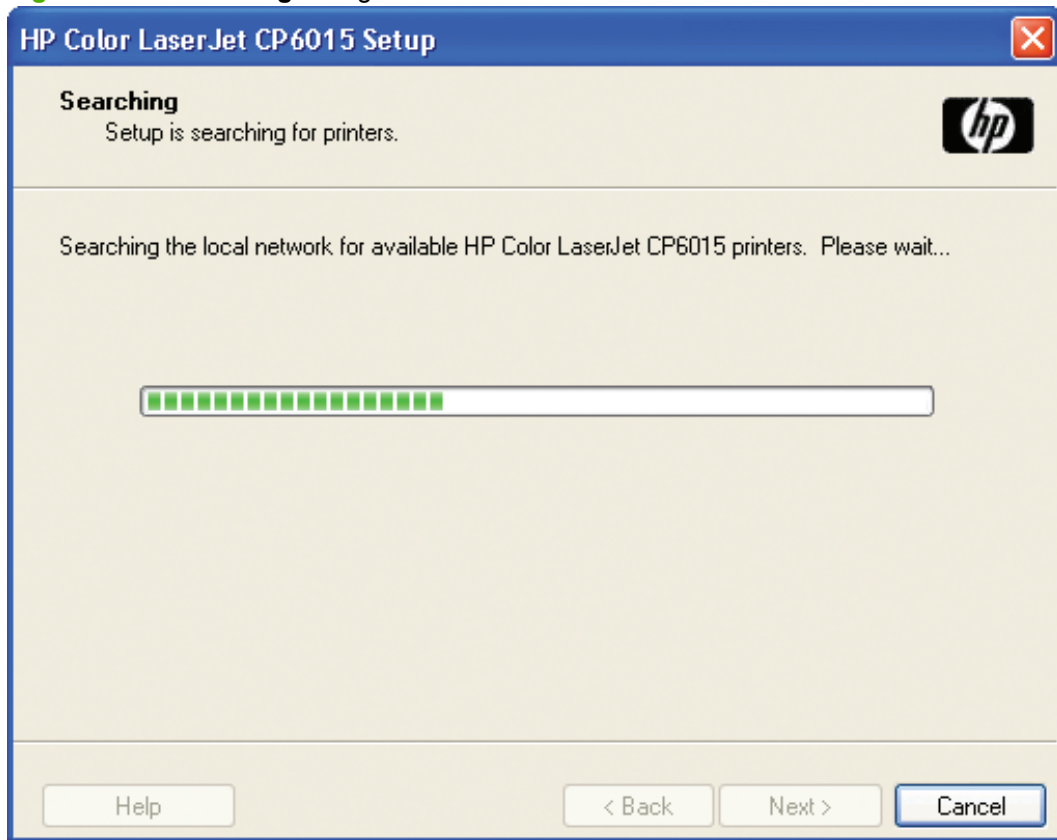
Figure 3-43 Welcome to the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series5 Wizard dialog box



Read the software-license agreement, and then click **Yes** to proceed with the installation. Click **No** to cancel the installation. Click **Installation Notes** to read the product installation notes.

2. If you click **Yes**, the **Searching** dialog box opens.

Figure 3-44 Searching dialog box



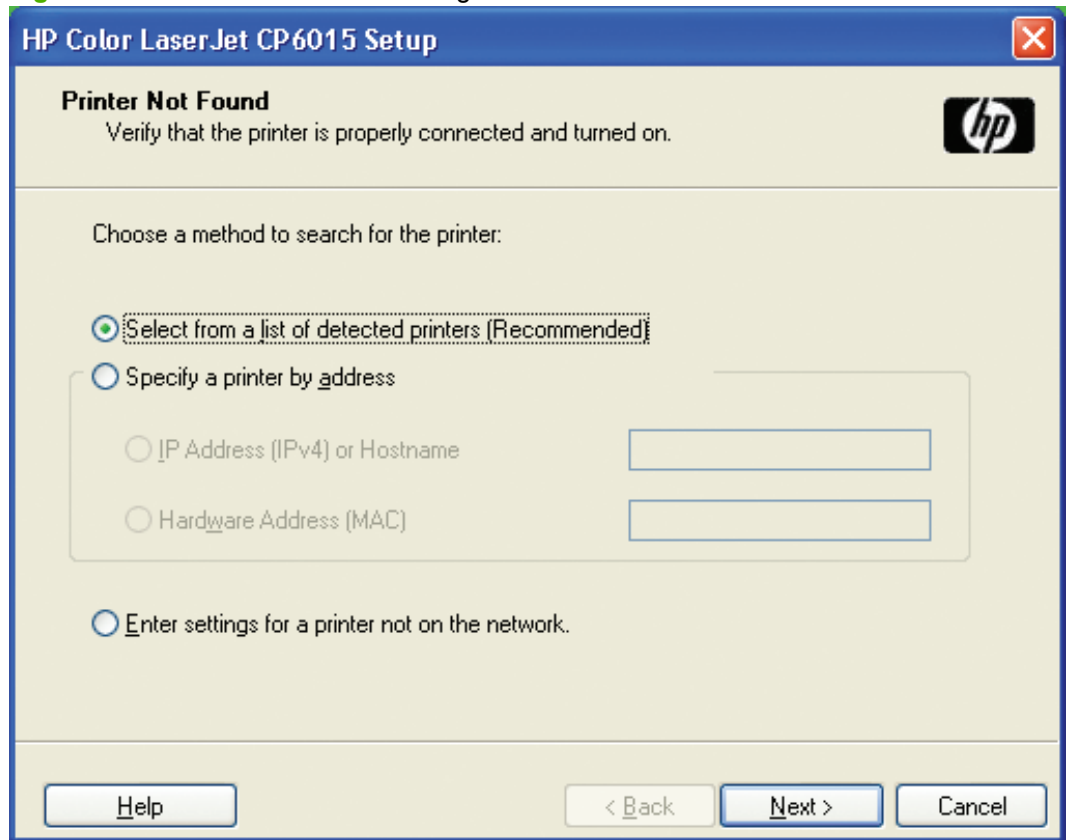
NOTE: If you are installing the product over a network, you must let the search for the first subnet in the network finish in order to find all available products. After the first subnet is scanned for available HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series products, the results appear in the **Printers Found** dialog box. However, the installer continues to search the network for additional products after the first results appear. The search results for the first subnet usually appear within about 20 seconds. It might take longer for the installer to search the other subnets and for the full list of products to appear in the **Printers Found** dialog box.

For a network installation, the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product must be connected to the network and turned on before the printing-system software is installed so that the software can detect the product.

NOTE: For wireless installation instructions using an HP Jetdirect Print Server, consult the documentation that comes with the print server.

- If no product is found on the network, the **Printer Not Found** dialog box appears.

Figure 3-45 Printer Not Found dialog box



Click **Select from a list of detected printers (Recommended)** and then click **Next** to search the network again for the product.

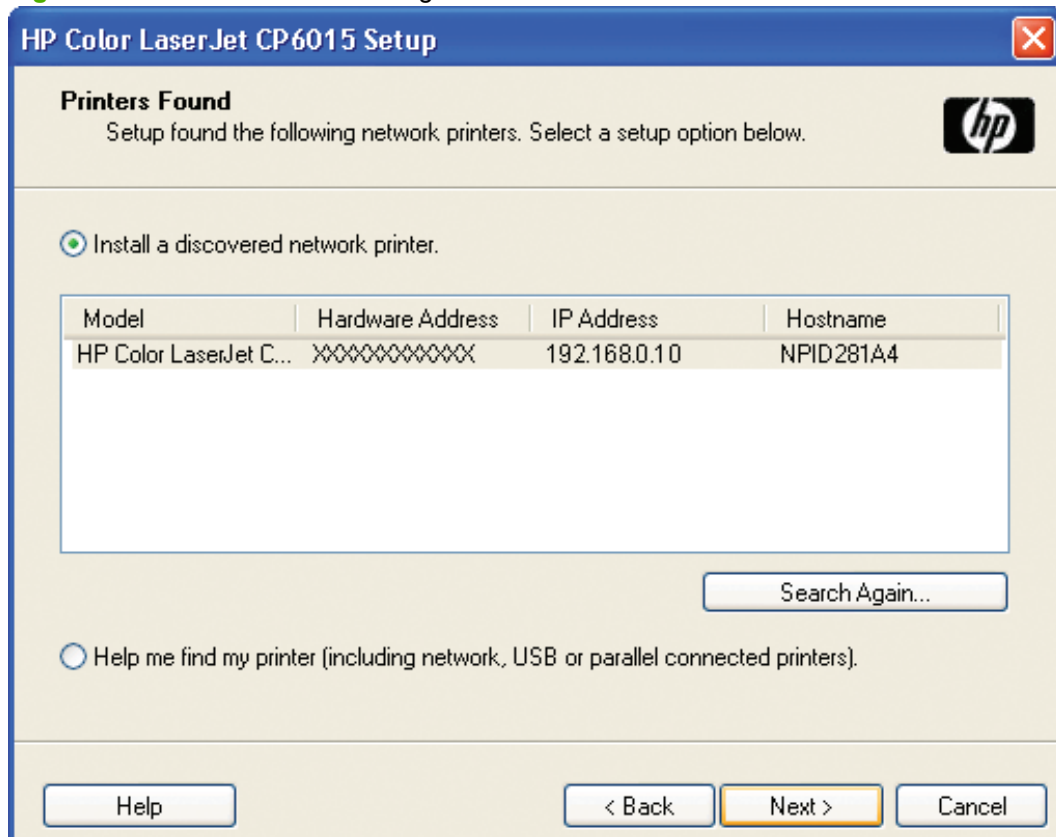
Click **Specify a printer by address** to find the product by providing the IP Address or Hardware Address.

Click **Enter settings for a printer not on the network**, and then click **Next** to find the product by providing the IP Address, IP Host Name, or Hardware Address.

Using any of these options takes you back to the **Printers Found** dialog box.

3. If a product is found, the **Printers Found** dialog box appears, with a list of matching products that have been found on the network.

Figure 3-46 Printers Found dialog box



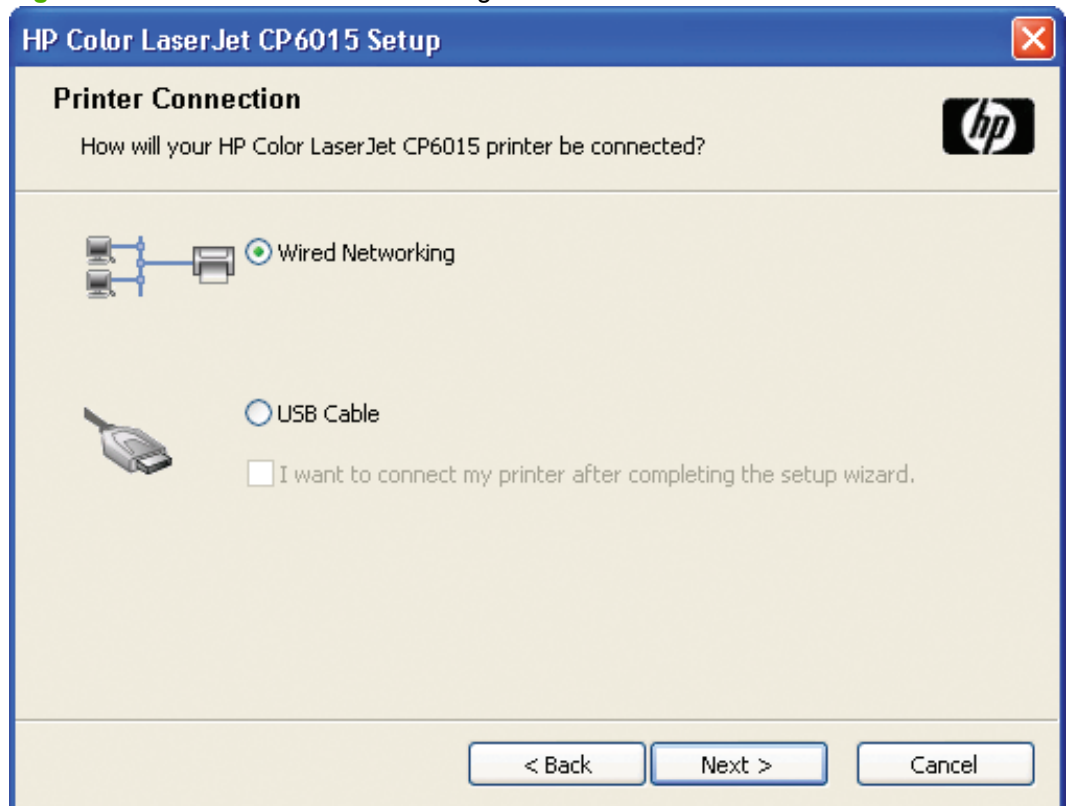
Select the product that you want to install and click **Next**. The **Installation Type** dialog box opens.

If the product that you want to install is not listed and you want the installer to continue searching network subnet masks, click **Search Again...** The **Searching** screen appears. If a product is found, the **Printers Found** dialog box appears. If a network product is not found, the **Printer Not Found** dialog box appears.

If the product that you want to install is not listed and you know its TCP/IP address, click **Help me find my printer (including network, USB or parallel connected printers)**..

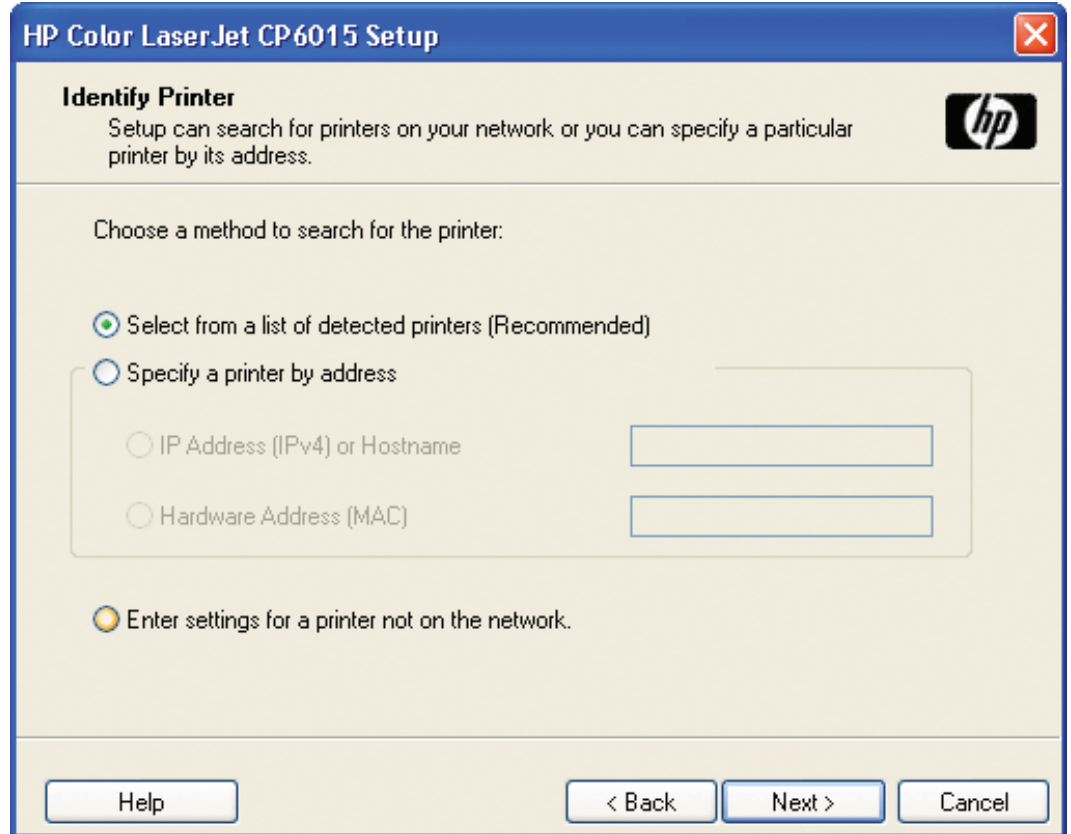
- The **Printer Connection** dialog box appears.

Figure 3-47 Printer Connection dialog box



Click **Wired Networking** and then click **Next** to open the **Identify Printer** dialog box

- **Figure 3-48 Identify Printer** dialog box



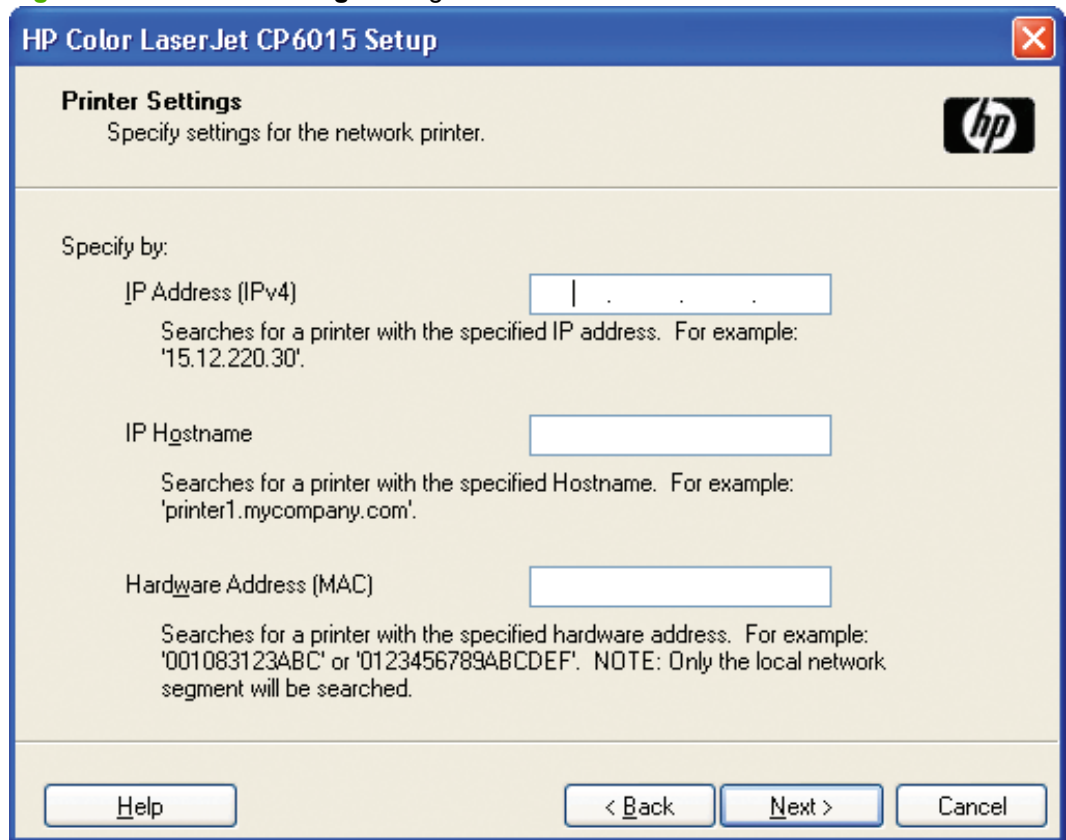
If you click **Select from a list of detected printers (Recommended)** and then click **Next**, the **Searching** dialog box opens. If a product is found, the **Printers Found** dialog box appears. If a network product is not found, the **Printer Not Found** dialog box appears.

If you click **Specify a printer by address**, you have the option of identifying the product by IP Address or Hardware Address. Clicking **Next** takes you to the **Installation Type** dialog box.

If you click **Enter settings for a printer not on the network** and then click **Next**, the **Printer Settings** dialog box opens.

- The **Printer Settings** dialog box opens.

Figure 3-49 Printer Settings dialog box



The image shows a Windows-style dialog box titled "HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Setup". Inside the dialog, the title "Printer Settings" is displayed above the instruction "Specify settings for the network printer." and the HP logo. Below this, a section labeled "Specify by:" contains three input options: "IP Address (IPv4)" with a text field and a description "Searches for a printer with the specified IP address. For example: '15.12.220.30'."; "IP Hostname" with a text field and a description "Searches for a printer with the specified Hostname. For example: 'printer1.mycompany.com'."; and "Hardware Address (MAC)" with a text field and a description "Searches for a printer with the specified hardware address. For example: '001083123ABC' or '0123456789ABCDEF'. NOTE: Only the local network segment will be searched." At the bottom of the dialog are four buttons: "Help", "< Back", "Next >", and "Cancel".

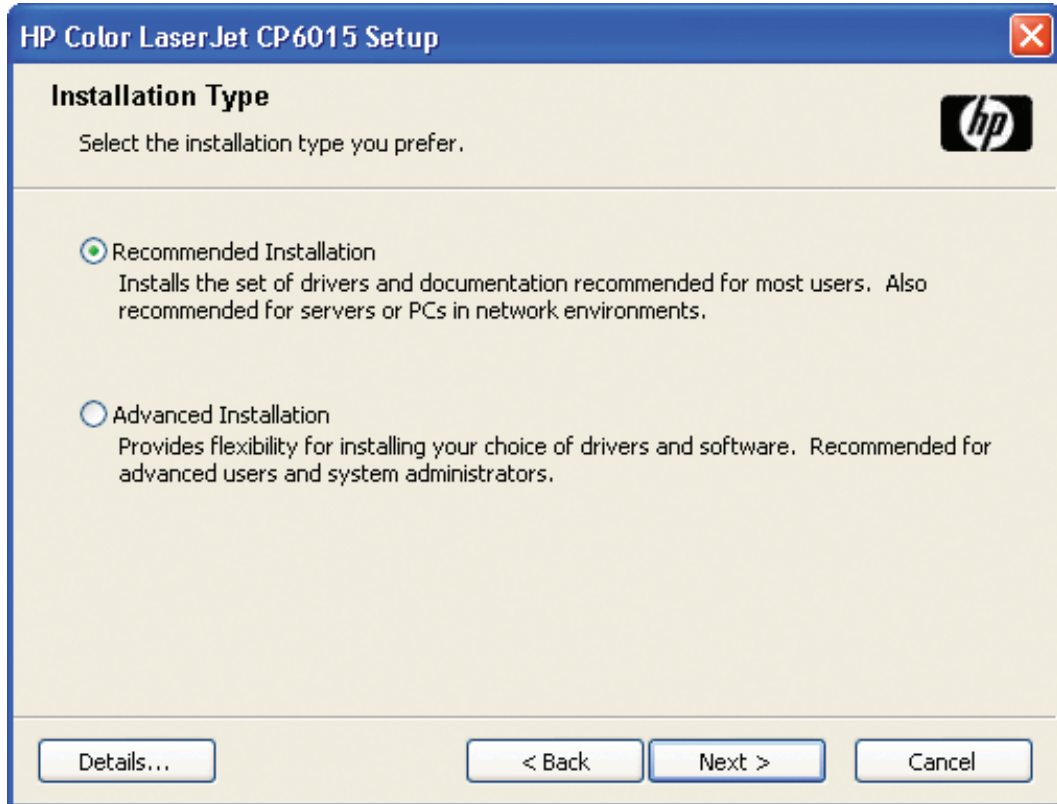
In the **Printer Settings** dialog box, type the product address in the fields provided, then click **Next** to continue the installation. The **Installation Type** dialog box opens.

4. If you click **Yes, install this printer** and then click **Next**, the **Installation Type** dialog box opens.

You can choose to install the software by using either a Recommended Installation or Advanced Installation. The Recommended Installation includes the following components:

- HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series PCL 6 Driver
- Screen Fonts
- User Guide

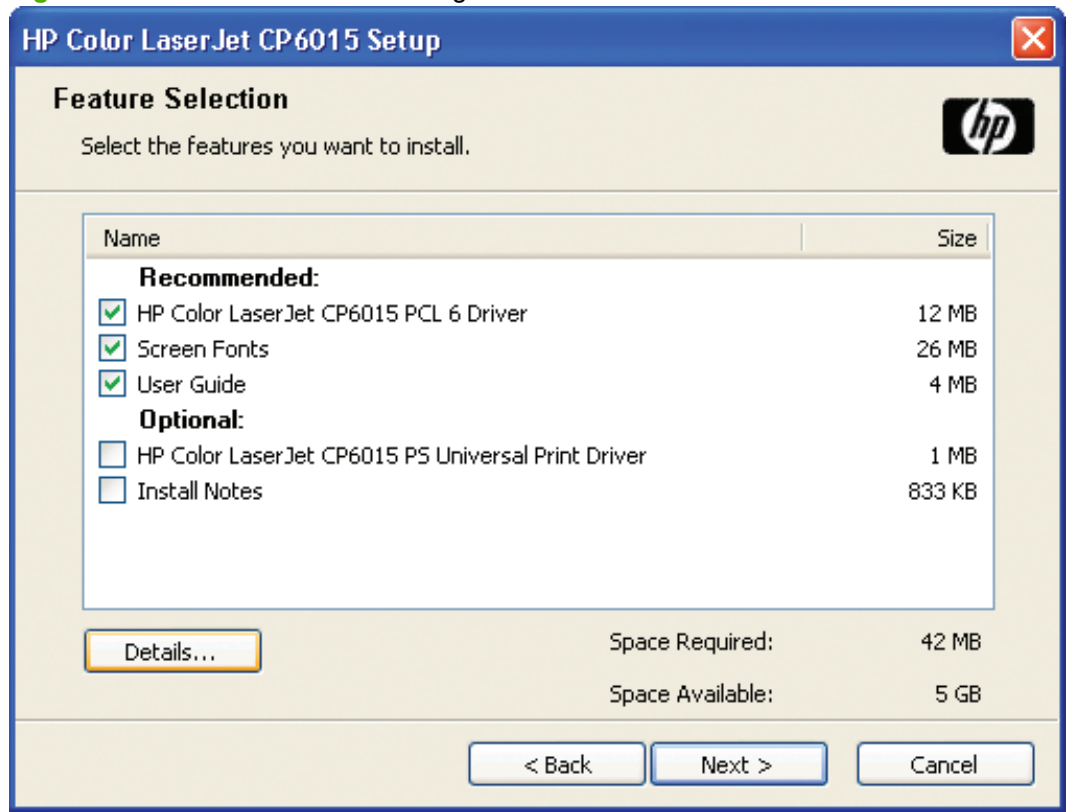
Figure 3-50 Installation Type dialog box



Click **Recommended Installation** and then click **Next**. the **Ready to Install** dialog box opens.

If you select **Advanced Installation** and then click **Next**, the **Feature Selection** dialog box opens.

- **Figure 3-51** Feature Selection dialog box



An empty check box indicates that the feature will not be installed. A check mark appears when you select an install state for that feature.

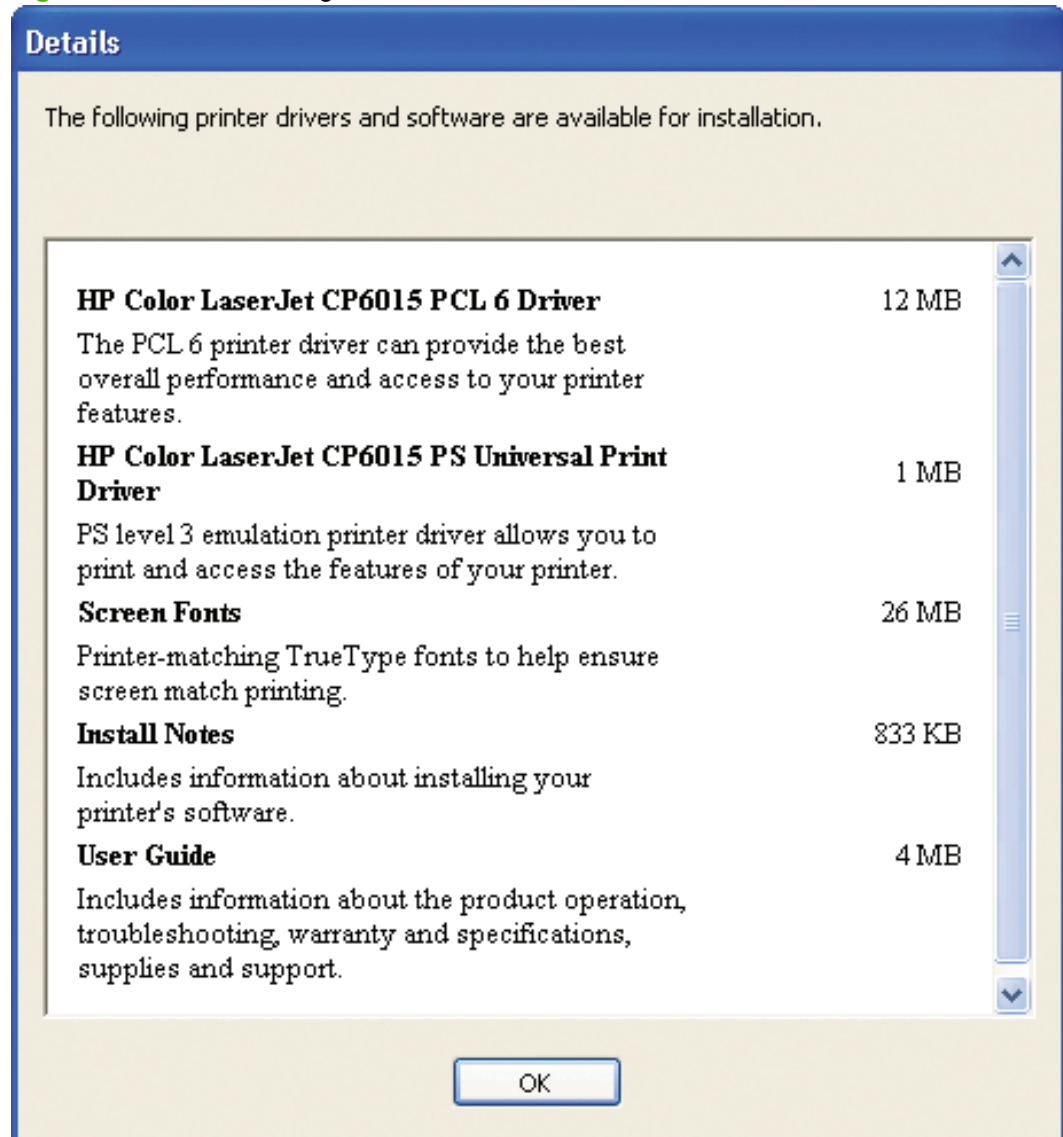
Information about the space required and the space available on your hard drive appears in the dialog box.

Any combination of features can be selected for the installer as long as at least one print driver is selected. It is not possible to create a custom installer that installs features without including a print driver. Select the drivers and features you want to install.

- To view details about the features listed, click **Details....** The **Details** dialog box appears.

All the drivers and optional features that are available in the **Feature Selection** dialog box are described in the **Details** dialog box. Click **OK** to return to the **Feature Selection** dialog box.

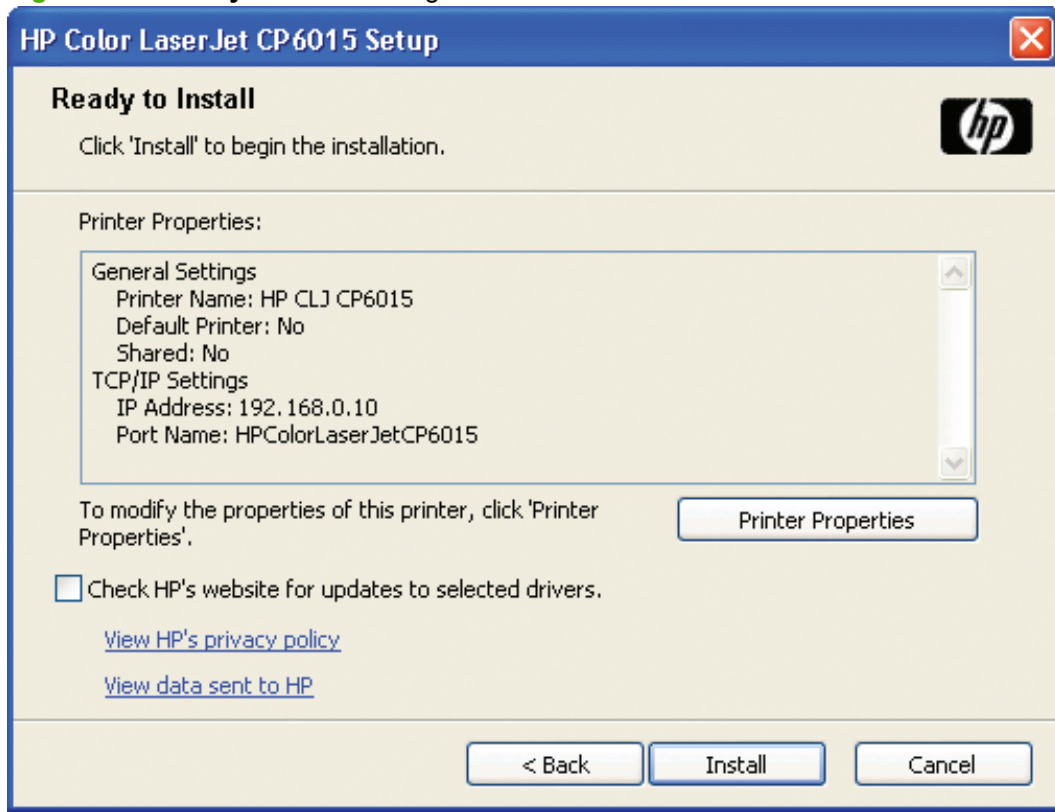
Figure 3-52 Details dialog box



In the **Drivers** dialog box, click **Next** to continue the installation.

5. The **Ready to Install** dialog box appears.

Figure 3-53 Ready to Install dialog box

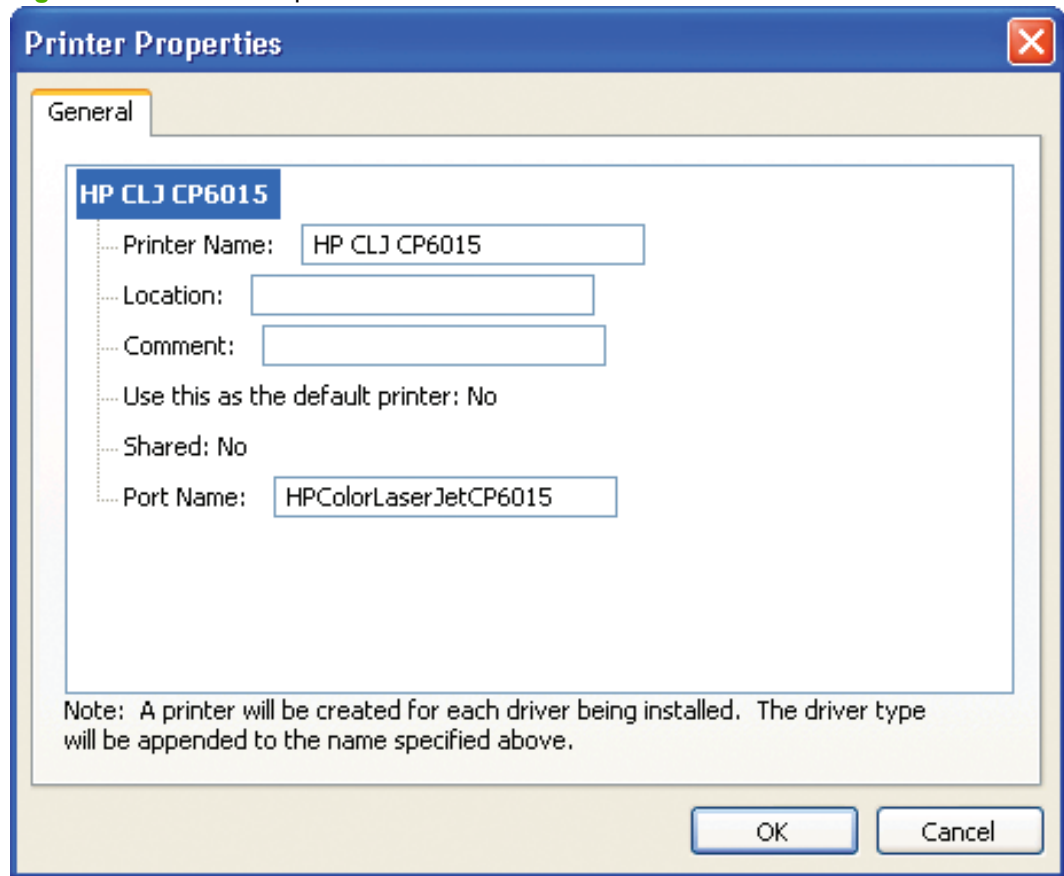


Click **Check HP's website for updates to selected drivers** if you want the installer to download updated drivers.

Click **Printer Properties** to open the dialog box.

- This dialog box has a single **General** tab

Figure 3-54 Printer Properties **General** tab



On the **General** tab, you can change the printer name by typing a new name in the **Printer Name** field.

Use the **Location:** and **Comment:** fields to describe the product. You can also leave these fields blank.

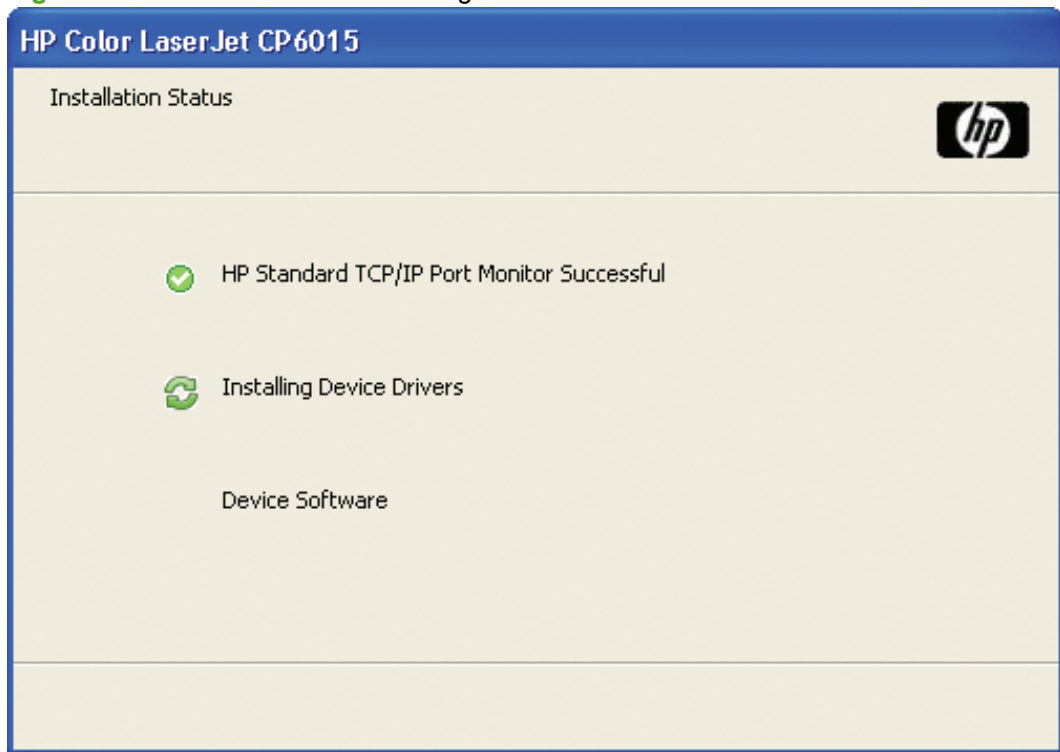
If you want to use the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product as your default printer, click the **Use this as the default printer** field, and then select **Yes** from the drop-down menu that appears.

Click the **Shared:** field and select **Yes** to share the product over the network. The product is not shared by default.

Click **OK** to return to the **Ready to Install** dialog box.

6. In the **Ready to Install** dialog box, click **Install** to begin the process of copying and installing the printing-system software folders and files. The **Installation Status** dialog box is shown in the following figure.

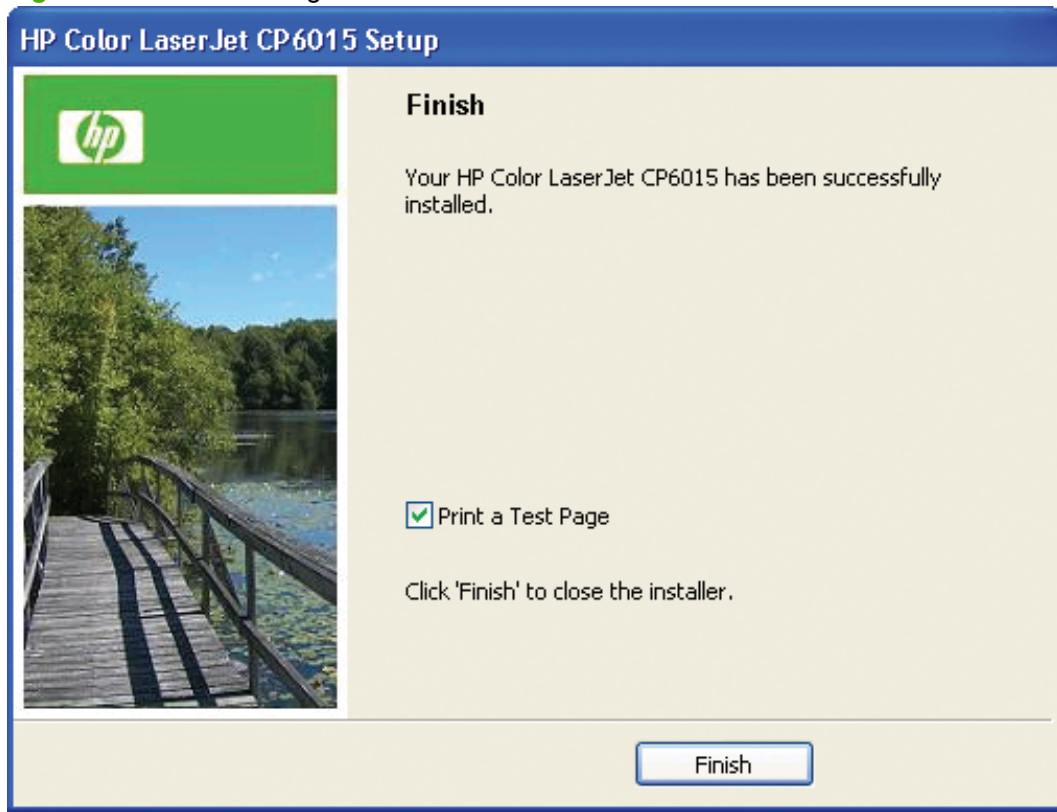
Figure 3-55 Installation Status dialog box



This dialog box remains on the screen until all the installation components are installed.

7. When the installation is complete, the **Finish** dialog box appears.

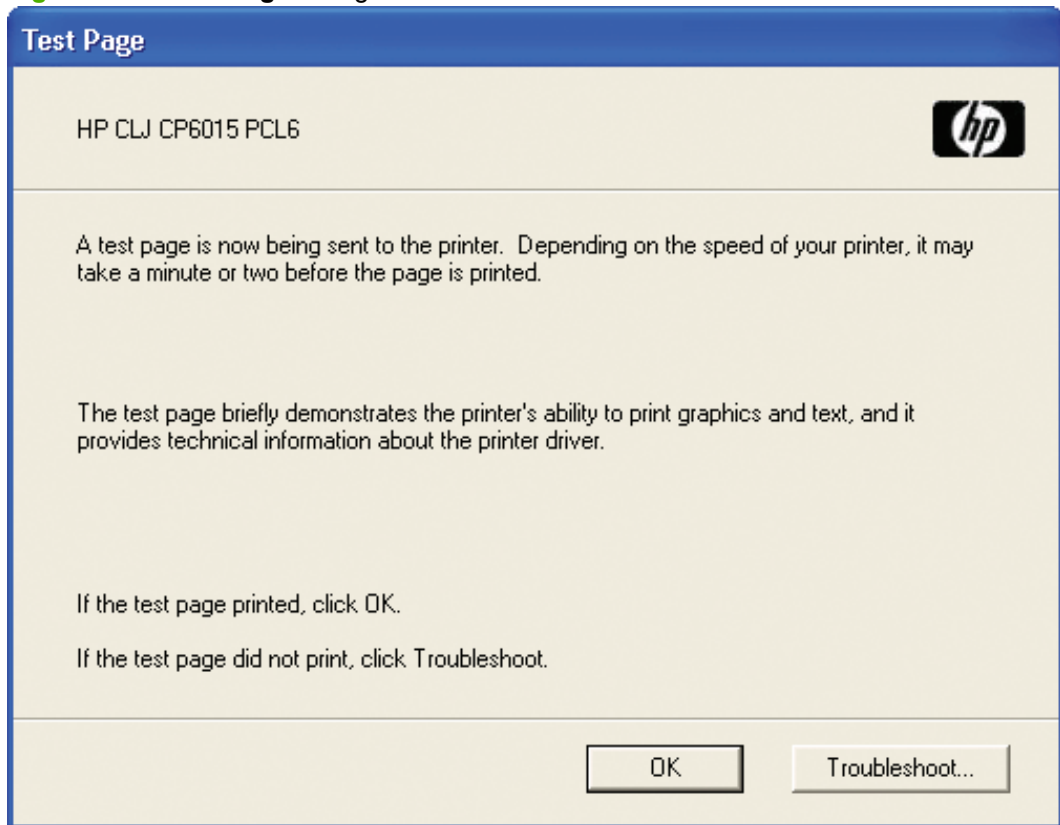
Figure 3-56 Finish dialog box



To verify that the product is connected, click to select the **Print a Test Page** check box. Click **Finish** to close the Installer.

8. If you clicked the **Print a Test Page** check box, the **Test Page** dialog box appears next.

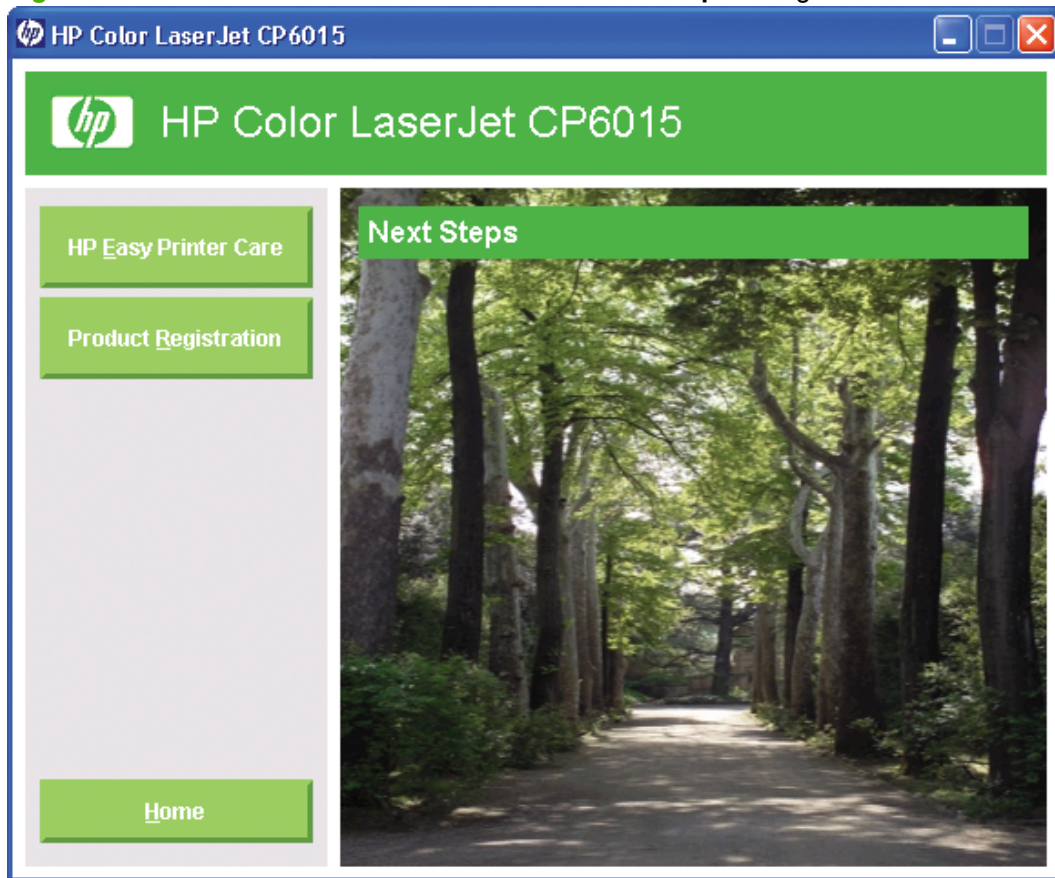
Figure 3-57 Test Page dialog box



If the test page prints correctly, click **OK** to continue. If it does not print, click **Troubleshoot...** to open screens that guide you through options to find the source of the problem.

9. The **HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Next Steps** dialog box appears.

Figure 3-58 HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Next Steps dialog box



If you have access to the Internet, you can register your product online or download HP Easy Printer Care. Click **Product Registration** to open the HP Registration Web site or click **HP Easy Printer Care** to download the program.

Click **Home** to return to the CD browser main screen. Click the **X** to close the CD browser.

Set a default printer

1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, and then click **Hardware and Sound**. Under the **Printers** section, click **Change default printer**.

In Windows XP and Windows Server 2003, click **Start**, click **Control Panel**, and then click **Printers and Faxes** (Windows XP Professional) or **Printers and other hardware devices** (Windows XP Home).

In Windows 2000 operating systems, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

2. Right-click the product that you want to set as the default printer.
3. Click **Set As Default**. A check mark appears next to the menu option.

Modify an existing installation

If an HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product has been installed previously on your system, the appearance of the main install screen changes on the CD Browser, and the install setting changes to **Modify installation**. A pre-existing installation also changes the sequence of installation screens that are presented, depending on the selections made.

Figure 3-59 CD Browser – **Modify Installation** option



Uninstall instructions

Use these instructions to uninstall the product using the Windows Add or Remove Programs feature.



NOTE: You must have Administrator privileges to uninstall the product using Add or Remove Programs.

1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, and then click **Add or Remove Programs**.

In Windows XP and Windows Server 2003, click **Start**, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click **Add or Remove Programs**.

In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, click **Control Panel**, and then click **Add or Remove Programs**.

2. Click the entry for the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product, and then click **Remove**.

4 HP PCL 6 Print Driver for Windows

Introduction

This chapter describes the features of the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series PCL 6 Print Driver for Windows 2000, Windows XP (32-bit and 64-bit), Windows Server 2003 (32-bit and 64-bit), and Windows Vista (32-bit and 64-bit).

You can control print jobs from several places:

- the product control panel
- the software program print dialog box
- the driver user interface

Generally, for features that are duplicated in more than one location (for instance, you can select the paper input tray from any of them), settings that are established in the software program take precedence over print-driver settings. Print-driver settings, in turn, override product control-panel settings.

When you install the printing-system software in Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Vista, the HP PCL 6 Print Driver is installed by default through the installer. The HP PS Universal Print Driver can be installed by performing an Advanced Installation, and the HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver can be installed using the Microsoft Add Printer Wizard.

Topics:

- [Access print drivers](#)
- [Help system](#)
- [Advanced tab features](#)
- [Printing Shortcuts tab features](#)
- [Paper/Quality tab features](#)
- [Effects tab features](#)
- [Finishing tab features](#)
- [Output tab features](#)
- [Job Storage tab features](#)
- [Color tab features](#)
- [Services tab features](#)

- [Device Settings tab features](#)
- [About tab features](#)

Access print drivers

Depending on the operating system on which you are installing the print drivers, you can gain access to the print drivers and different print-driver interfaces in several ways.

To gain access to the print-driver settings from within most software programs, follow these steps:

1. Click **File**.
2. Click **Print**.
3. Click **Properties**.

The appearance and names of the driver tabs can vary, depending on the operating system. These driver settings apply only while that software program is open.

You can control the drivers directly from the Printers folder. Here you have access to two sets of driver tabs: the **Printing Preferences** tabs and the **Properties** tabs. The settings that you make on the **Printing Preferences** driver tabs control the driver default settings for each user's profile. Installable options can be configured in **Properties** driver tabs.

Printing Preferences driver tabs

The **Printing Preferences** driver tabs change the default settings that are used across all software programs. To gain access to these tabs, follow these steps:

1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

In Windows XP and Windows Server 2003, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.
2. Right-click the product name.
3. Click **Printing Preferences**.

The following **Printing Preferences** print-driver tabs are available:

- **Advanced**
- **Printing Shortcuts**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Output**
- **Job Storage**
- **Color**
- **Services**

Properties driver tabs

This set of tabs controls the driver behavior and driver connections. To gain access to the **Properties** tabs, follow these steps:

1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

In Windows XP and Windows Server 2003, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

2. Right-click the product name.
3. Click **Properties**.

The following **Properties** print-driver tabs are available:

- **General**
- **Sharing**
- **Ports**
- **Advanced**
- **Color Management**
- **Security**
- **Device Settings**
- **About**

Help system

The HP PCL 6 Print Driver includes a full-featured Help system to provide assistance with printing and configuration options.


“What's this?” Help

Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Vista support **What's this?** Help. You can gain access to What's this? Help messages in any of the following ways:

- Right-click a feature or control. A pop-up Help window appears.
- Click the ? button in the upper-right corner of the frame, next to the X, to change the cursor to an arrow with a question mark. When you use this special cursor to select a control, the pop-up Help window for that feature appears.
- Click a feature or control, and then press the **F1** key. The Help window for the currently selected control appears.

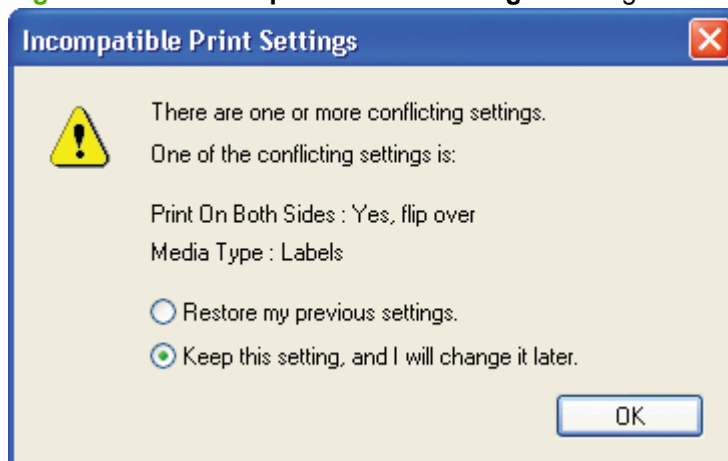
Incompatible Print Settings messages

Incompatible Print Settings (constraint) messages are unsolicited messages that appear in response to specific print-driver selections. These messages alert you to selections that are illogical or impossible given the product capabilities or the current settings of other controls.

 **NOTE:** Constraint messages are limited, and the underlying software architecture might accept some settings that are illogical or impossible for the product to perform. Sending a job with incompatible settings can lead to unexpected results. If print jobs do not print as expected, check the product documentation for the product capabilities.


In supported Windows operating environments, some technically invalid print-driver configurations result in warning messages. Duplexing, for example, is not possible when the Transparency paper type is selected. The following figure shows an **Incompatible Print Settings** message.

Figure 4-1 An **Incompatible Print Settings** message



To resolve the conflicting settings, click **Restore my previous settings.** and then click **OK.** The driver resets the conflicting control back to its previous state.

If you want to keep the conflicting setting, click **Keep this setting, and I will change it later.** and then click **OK.**

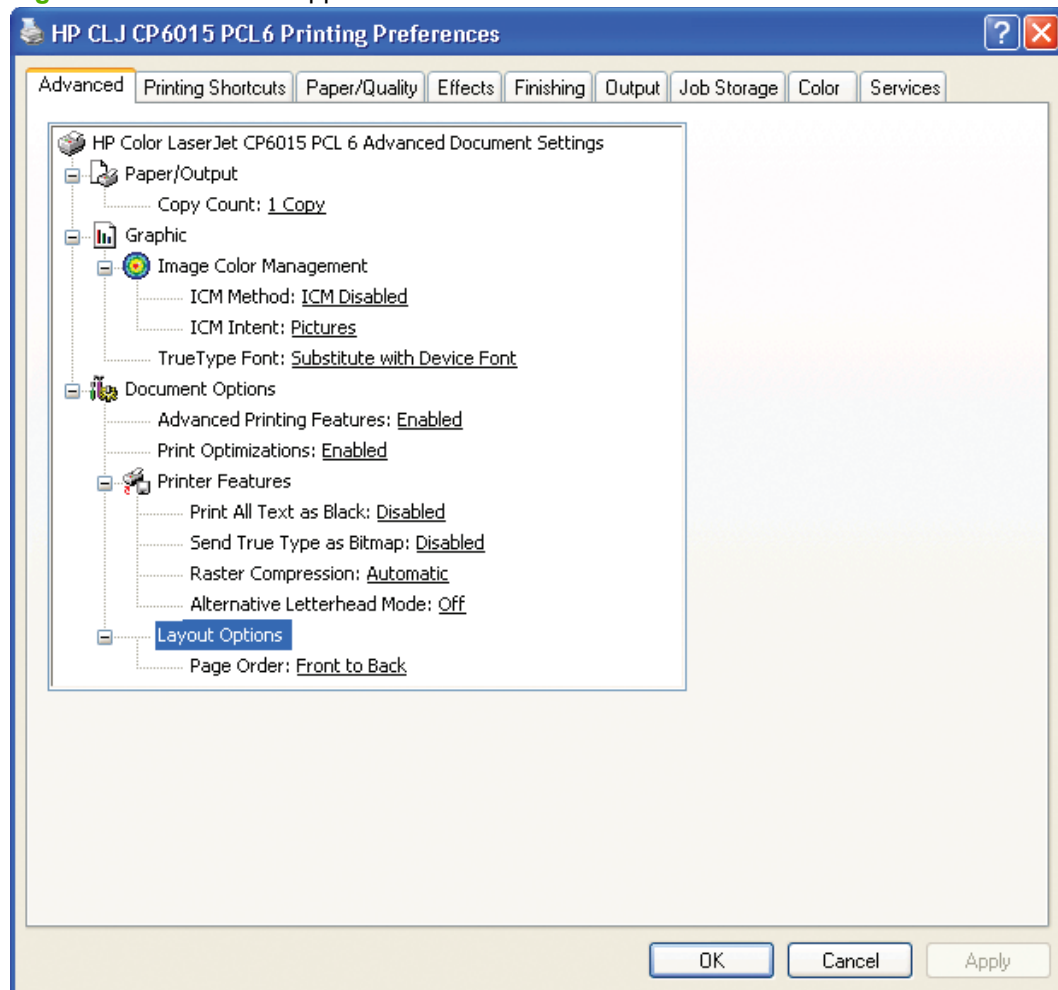
 **NOTE:** In this example, the conflict can be resolved manually. If the conflict is not resolved when the driver is closed, then the same dialog appears again when a print job is sent to the product.

Advanced tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Advanced** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set . For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 147](#),

Use the **Advanced** tab to change the layout of printed pages. Use this tab to configure special controls that are not commonly used, as well as to control features such as paper size and copies in the driver (although most current software programs support these features in the print dialog box or through the page settings in the software program). The following figure shows the **Advanced** tab.

Figure 4-2 The default appearance of the **Advanced** tab



The **Advanced** tab contains the following controls:

- [Paper/Output](#)
- [Graphic](#)
- [Document Options](#)

Paper/Output

The **Paper/Output** setting contains the **Copy Count** setting.

Copy Count

Copy Count specifies the number of copies to print. This driver setting is useful for software programs that do not provide a copy count. If a copy count is available in the software program, set the copy count in the software program.

The number of copies that you request appears in the **Copy Count** option. You can select the number by typing in the text box or by using the up and down arrows to the right of the text box. Valid entries are numbers from 1 to 9999. The copies value will not advance from the maximum number (9999) to 1 when the up arrow is used, or change from 1 to the maximum number (9999) when the down arrow is used. When you click another group box or leave the **Advanced** tab, invalid entries into the text box (such as non-numerical input, numbers less than 1, or numbers greater than the maximum allowed) are changed to the last valid value that appeared in the text box. The default number of copies is 1.

Because you can set the number of copies that you want from some software programs, conflicts between the software program you are using and the driver can arise. In most cases, the software program and the driver communicate, so that the number of copies set in one location (such as the program) will appear in the other (such as the driver). For some programs, this communication does not take place, and the copies values are treated independently. For these programs, setting 10 copies in the program and then setting 10 copies in the driver will result in 100 copies (10 x 10) being printed. It is recommended that you set the number of copies in the program, whenever possible.

Graphic

The **Graphic** setting contains the following controls:

- **Image Color Management** settings
- **True Type Font** settings

Image Color Management

This control lists the available Image Color Management (ICM) options used for printing color graphics. ICM, a set of calculations for color matching, makes it possible for programs to adjust colors before printing so that the color of images on the screen more closely match the color of those images when they are printed. The following options are available:

- **ICM Method.** The ICM Method setting specifies how to print color graphics.
 - To enable Image Color Management, click the option and then select **ICM Enabled**.
 - If you want the host computer to perform calculations for color matching before it sends the document to the product, click **ICM Handled by Host System**.
 - If you want the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product to perform calculations for color matching, click **ICM Handled by Printer**. In this case, a set of rules for mapping the colors is created and downloaded to the product. The product uses these rules to adjust colors in the document.
- **ICM Intent.** The ICM Intent setting specifies how color images are created to produce the image that looks best on the printed page.
 - If you are printing a chart or using fully saturated, bright colors, click **Graphics**.
 - For photographs or pictures where the colors blend together, click **Pictures** to maximize the contrast.

- If your document uses a color that you need to match exactly, and you are sending the document to a product that has that specific color of ink, click **Proof**.
- If you want to preview the color settings from another product, click **Match**.

True Type Font

Use **Substitute with Device Font** (the default setting) to print documents that contain TrueType fonts by using equivalent printer fonts. This permits faster printing; however, you might lose special characters that the equivalent printer font does not support. Select **Download as Softfont** to download TrueType fonts for printing instead of using printer fonts.

Document Options

The **Document Options** setting contains the following controls:

- [Advanced Printing Features](#)
- [Print Optimizations](#)
- [Printer Features](#)
- [Layout Options](#)

Advanced Printing Features

When the **Advanced Printing Features** setting is **Enabled**, metafile spooling is turned on and **Finishing** tab options such as **Page Order**, **Booklet Layout**, and **Pages per Sheet** are available, depending on your product.

Enhanced metafile spooling is used to greatly reduce the amount of time that elapses between a request to print (initiated by an application) and the return of control to the application by the operating system.

For normal printing, leave the **Advanced Printing Features** setting at the default (**Enabled**). If compatibility problems occur, you can disable the feature. However, some advanced printing features might still appear in the print driver, even though they have been disabled. If you select an advanced printing feature in the print driver that has been disabled on the **Advanced** tab, the feature is automatically re-enabled.

Print Optimizations

The default setting for **Print Optimizations** is **Enabled**. When this feature is enabled and your document contains overlapping text and graphics, the text that is placed on top of a graphic might not print correctly. If the printed output is not correct, you can disable this feature. When this feature is disabled, print optimization-features, such as substituting device fonts for TrueType fonts and scanning for horizontal and vertical rules, are turned off.

Printer Features

The **Printer Features** setting contains the following controls:

- **Print All Text as Black**

The feature is **Disabled** by default. When **Enabled** is selected, the driver prints all text as black regardless of the original document text color. Color text is printed as black, except for white text, which remains white. (White text is a reliable method of printing reverse typeface against a dark background.) This setting does not affect graphic images on the page, nor does it affect any text that is part of a graphic.

- **Send True Type as Bitmap**

Send True Type as Bitmap provides an alternative for software programs that have trouble using TrueType fonts for special graphic aspects such as shading, rotation, or slanting. The setting is **Disabled** (off) by default. The TrueType fonts are converted to bitmap soft fonts before downloading. The **Enabled** setting causes the driver to send TrueType fonts to the product as outlines, which retains the standard format (outline) of the fonts.

- **Raster Compression**

Use the **Raster Compression** feature to select the graphics-compression method:

- **Automatic.** The software determines the best compression method to use.
- **Best Quality.** This option forces the software to use a lossless compression method. (Lossless means that no data is lost during compression.)
- **Maximum Compression.** Where applicable, this option requires the software to always use a lossy compression method (some data is lost).

- **Alternative Letterhead Mode**

When selected, this option eliminates the need to flip or reload letterhead or preprinted paper in a tray, whether you are printing on one or both sides of the sheet. Load the paper as you would for printing on both sides. If the product tray has an icon that indicates whether to load paper either face-up or face-down, load the paper in opposite orientation of that shown.

When this option is selected, you must use one of the following options in the **Paper type** setting:

- Letterhead
- Preprinted



NOTE: Because **Alternative Letterhead Mode** is available only if the product is equipped with an automatic duplexing unit, the HP Color LaserJet CP6015n does not support this option.

Layout Options

The **Layout Options** setting contains the **Page Order** setting.

Page Order specifies the order in which the pages of your document are printed. **Front to Back** prints the document so that page 1 prints first. **Back to Front** prints the document so that page 1 prints last.



NOTE: The page-ordering operation works on whole sheets of paper rather than on individual logical pages. Accordingly, if you set **Pages per Sheet** (on the **Finishing** tab) to be greater than one, the ordering of logical pages on a physical sheet of paper does not change.

Printing Shortcuts tab features

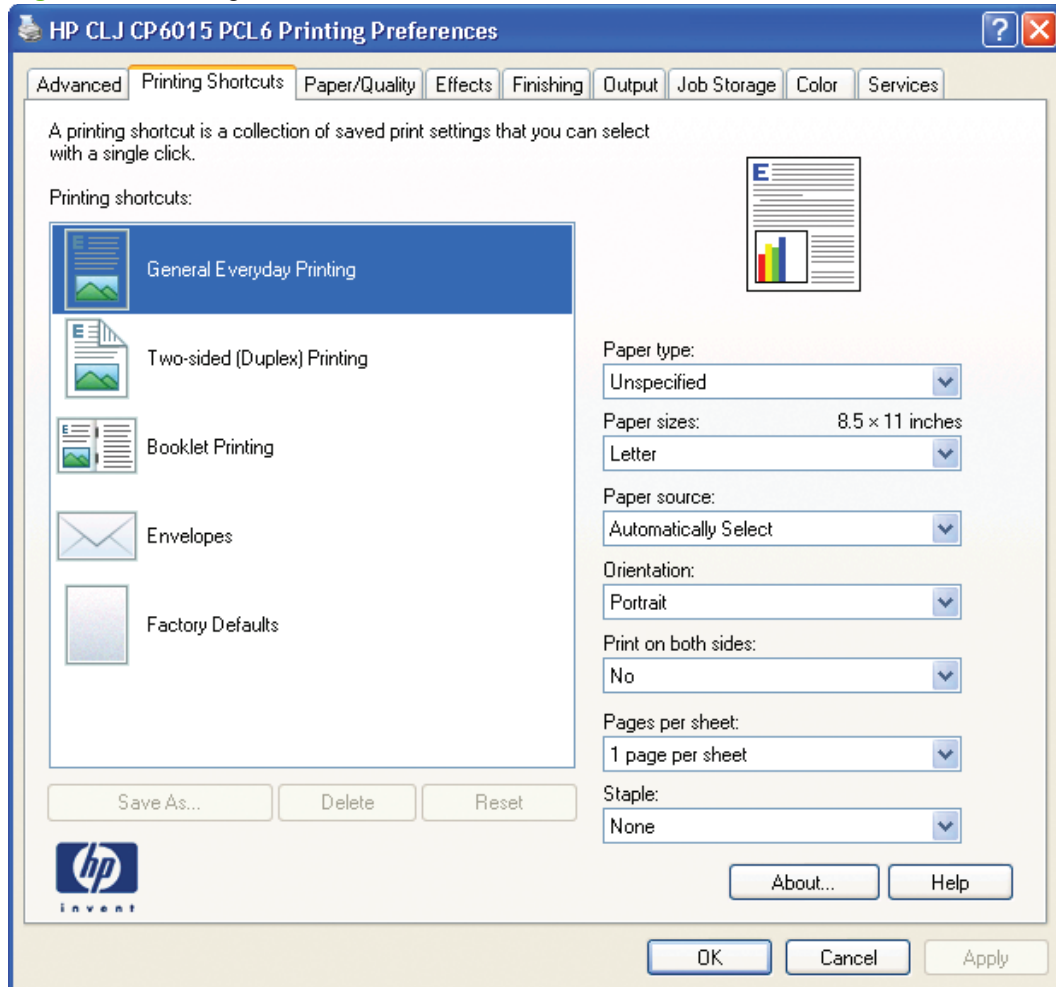
- [Use defined printing shortcuts](#)
- [Create a custom printing shortcut](#)

 **NOTE:** The **Printing Shortcuts** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set . For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 147](#),

Use the **Printing Shortcuts** tab to store specific combinations of driver settings for easy use.

The following figure shows the **Printing Shortcuts** tab.

Figure 4-3 Printing Shortcuts tab



The **Printing Shortcuts** tab is a new tab that appears on the HP PCL 6 Print Driver beginning with the HP Color LaserJet CM4730 MFP. In previous drivers, the Print Task Quick Sets appeared in most of the driver tabs, and was used to capture commonly used driver settings. Like Quick Sets, the **Printing Shortcuts** tab saves commonly used driver settings under a shortcut name.

- [Use defined printing shortcuts](#)
- [Create a custom printing shortcut](#)

Use defined printing shortcuts

The **Printing Shortcuts** tab contains the following control sets:

- [General Everyday Printing](#)
- [Two-sided \(Duplex\) Printing](#)
- [Booklet Printing](#)
- [Envelopes](#)
- [Factory Defaults](#)
- [Document preview image](#)

General Everyday Printing

When **General Everyday Printing** is selected, the following controls are available:

- **Paper type:**
- **Paper sizes:**
- **Paper source:**
- **Orientation:**
- **Print on both sides:**
- **Pages per sheet:**
- **Staple:** (This option appears only if the optional HP 3-bin Stapler/Stacker Accessory or the HP Booklet Maker/Finisher Accessory are installed on the product.)

When options other than the defaults are selected, the **Save as...** and **Reset** buttons become active.

Click **Save as...** to create a custom printing shortcut.

Click **Reset** to change customized settings back to the default settings.

Paper type

The following options are available:

- **Unspecified** (default)
- **Plain**
- **HP LaserJet 90 g/m2**
- **Light 60-74 g/m2**
- **Interpaperte 85-95 g/m2**
- **Bond**
- **Recycled**
- **HP Color Laser Matte 105 g/m2**

- **Mid-Weight 96-110 g/m2**
- **Mid-Weight Glossy 96-110 g/m2**
- **Heavy 111-130 g/m2**
- **Heavy Glossy 111-130 g/m2**
- **HP Premium Choice Matte 120 g/m2**
- **HP Presentation Soft Gloss 120 g/m2**
- **HP Professional Soft Gloss 120 g/m2**
- **Extra Heavy 131-175 g/m2**
- **Extra Heavy Glossy 131-175 g/m2**
- **HP Color Laser Brochure Matte 160 g/m2**
- **HP Superior Laser Matte 160 g/m2**
- **HP Color Laser Brochure Glossy 160 g/m2**
- **HP Superior Laser Glossy 160 g/m2**
- **Cardstock 176-220 g/m2**
- **HP Laser Cover Matte 200 g/m2**
- **HP Matte Photo 200 g/m2**
- **HP Color Laser Photo Glossy 220 g/m2**
- **Card Glossy 176-220 g/m2**
- **Color Laser Transparency**
- **Labels**
- **Letterhead**
- **Envelope**
- **Heavy Envelope**
- **Preprinted**
- **Prepunched**
- **Colored**
- **Rough**
- **Heavy Rough**
- **HP Tough Paper**
- **Opaque Film**

Paper sizes

The following options are available:

- **Letter** (default)
- **Legal**
- **Executive**
- **Statement**
- **8.5x13**
- **11x17**
- **C size sheet**
- **12x18**
- **4x6**
- **5x8**
- **A3**
- **A2**
- **A4**
- **A5**
- **A6**
- **AR3**
- **SRA3**
- **B4 (JIS)**
- **B5 (JIS)**
- **B6 (JIS)**
- **8K 270x390mm**
- **16k 195x270mm**
- **8K 260x368 mm**
- **16k 184x260mm**
- **8K 273x394 mm**
- **16k (197x273mm)**
- **Envelope DL**

Paper source

The following options are available:


- **Automatically Select** (default)
- **Printer auto select**
- **Manual Feed in Tray 1**
- **Tray 1**
- **Tray 2**
- **Tray 3** (HP Color LaserJet CP6015x only)
- **Tray 4** (HP Color LaserJet CP6015xh only)
- **Tray 5** (HP Color LaserJet CP6015HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Seriesxh only)

Orientation

The following options are available:

- **Portrait** (default)
- **Landscape**

Print on both sides

 **NOTE:** Because the HP Color LaserJet CP6015n model does not include a duplexing unit, the **Print on both sides** option is available, but duplexing is a manual process.

The following options are available:


- **No** (default)
- **Yes, Flip Over**
- **Yes, Flip Up**

Pages per sheet

The following options are available:

- **1 page per sheet** (default)
- **2 pages per sheet**
- **4 pages per sheet**
- **6 pages per sheet**
- **9 pages per sheet**
- **16 pages per sheet**


Staple

 **NOTE:** The **Staple** options appear only if the optional HP 3-bin Stapler/Stacker Accessory or the HP Booklet Maker/Finisher Accessory are installed on the product.

The following staple options are available.

- **None**
- **One staple left**
- **One staple right**
- **Two staples left**
- **Two staples right**
- **Fold and Stitch (Max 15 sheets)**


Two-sided (Duplex) Printing

 **NOTE:** Because the HP Color LaserJet CP6015n model does not include a duplexing unit, the **Two-sided (Duplex) Printing** option is available, but duplexing is a manual process.

When **Two-sided (Duplex) Printing** is selected, the following options are selected.

- **Paper type: Unspecified**
- **Paper sizes: Letter**
- **Paper source: Automatically Select**
- **Orientation: Portrait**
- **Print on both sides: Yes, flip over**
- **Pages per sheet: 1 page per sheet**
- **Staple: none** (This option appears only if the optional HP 3-bin Stapler/Stacker Accessory or the HP Booklet Maker/Finisher Accessory are installed on the product.)

Booklet Printing

 **NOTE:** The **Booklet Printing** option appears only if the optional HP 3-bin Stapler/Stacker Accessory or the HP Booklet Maker/Finisher Accessory are installed on the product.

When **Booklet Printing** is selected, the following options are selected.

- **Paper source: Automatically Select**
- **Paper sizes: Letter**
- **Paper type: Unspecified**
- **Staple: Fold and Stitch (Max 15 sheets)**
- **Orientation: Portrait**
- **Booklet Layout: Left binding**
- **Print document on: Letter**

Envelopes

When **Envelopes** is selected, the following options are selected.

- **Paper type: Unspecified**
- **Paper sizes: Envelope #9**
- **Paper source: Automatically Select**
- **Orientation: Portrait**

Factory Defaults

When **Factory Defaults** is selected, the customizable options are grayed out, locking in those default options.

The **Factory Defaults** are as follows:

- **Paper type: Unspecified**
- **Paper sizes: Letter/A4** (This setting changes according to country/region.)
- **Paper source: Automatically select**
- **Orientation: Portrait**
- **Print on both sides: No**
- **Pages per sheet: 1 page per sheet**
- **Staple: None** (This option appears only if the optional HP 3-bin Stapler/Stacker Accessory or the HP Booklet Maker/Finisher Accessory are installed on the product.)

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up.

Move the cursor over the document preview image to change the cursor from an arrow to a gloved hand. Toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Figure 4-4 Document preview image



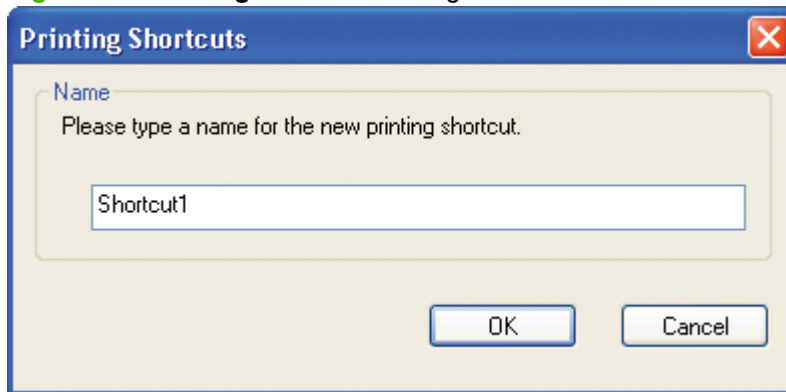
Create a custom printing shortcut

Follow these instructions to create a custom printing shortcut:

1. Select one of the defined printing shortcuts as a base.
2. Select the appropriate print settings on the **Printing Shortcuts** tab, or by using the settings on any of the **Printing Preferences** tabs.

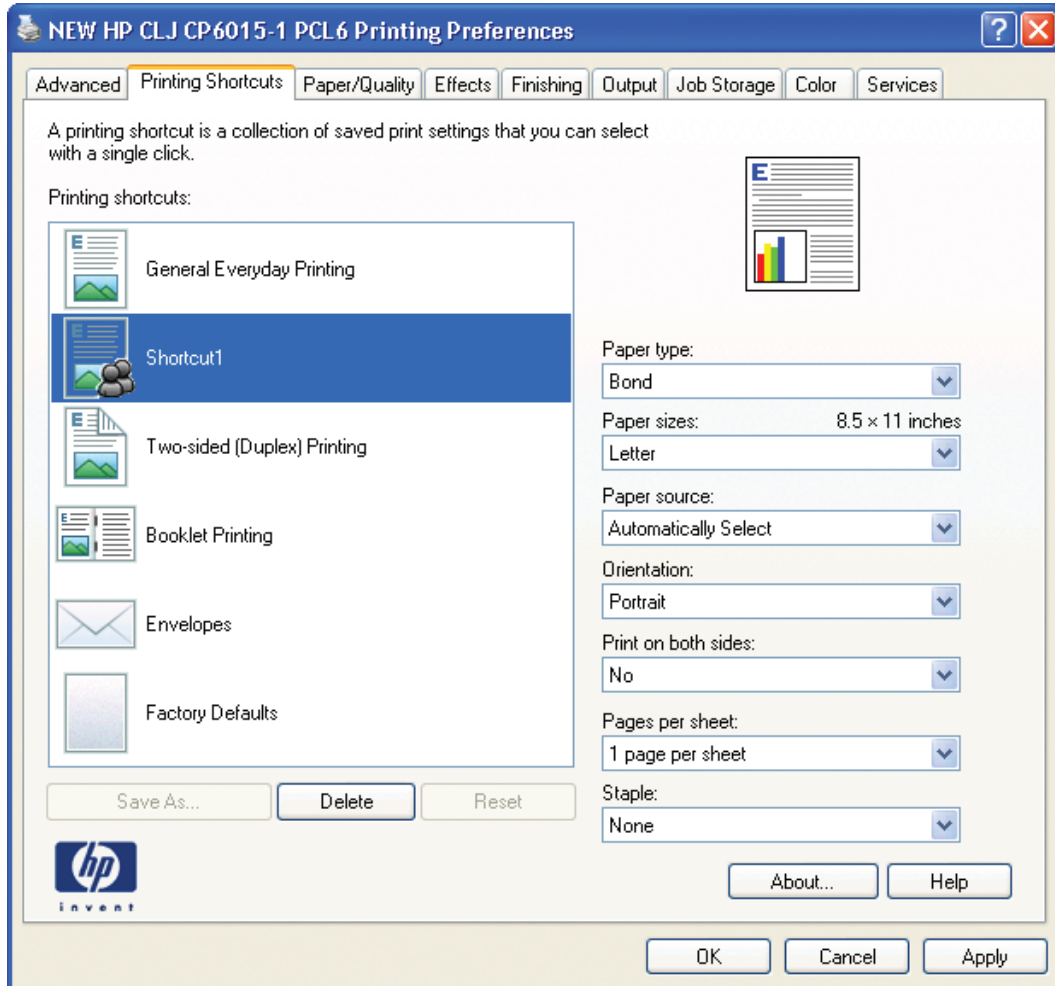
3. On the **Printing Shortcuts** tab, click **Save As. . .** The **Printing Shortcuts** dialog box appears.

Figure 4-5 Printing Shortcuts dialog box



4. Type a name for the custom printing shortcut, and then click **OK**. The custom printing shortcut appears in the printing shortcuts list.

Figure 4-6 Printing Shortcuts tab – custom shortcut



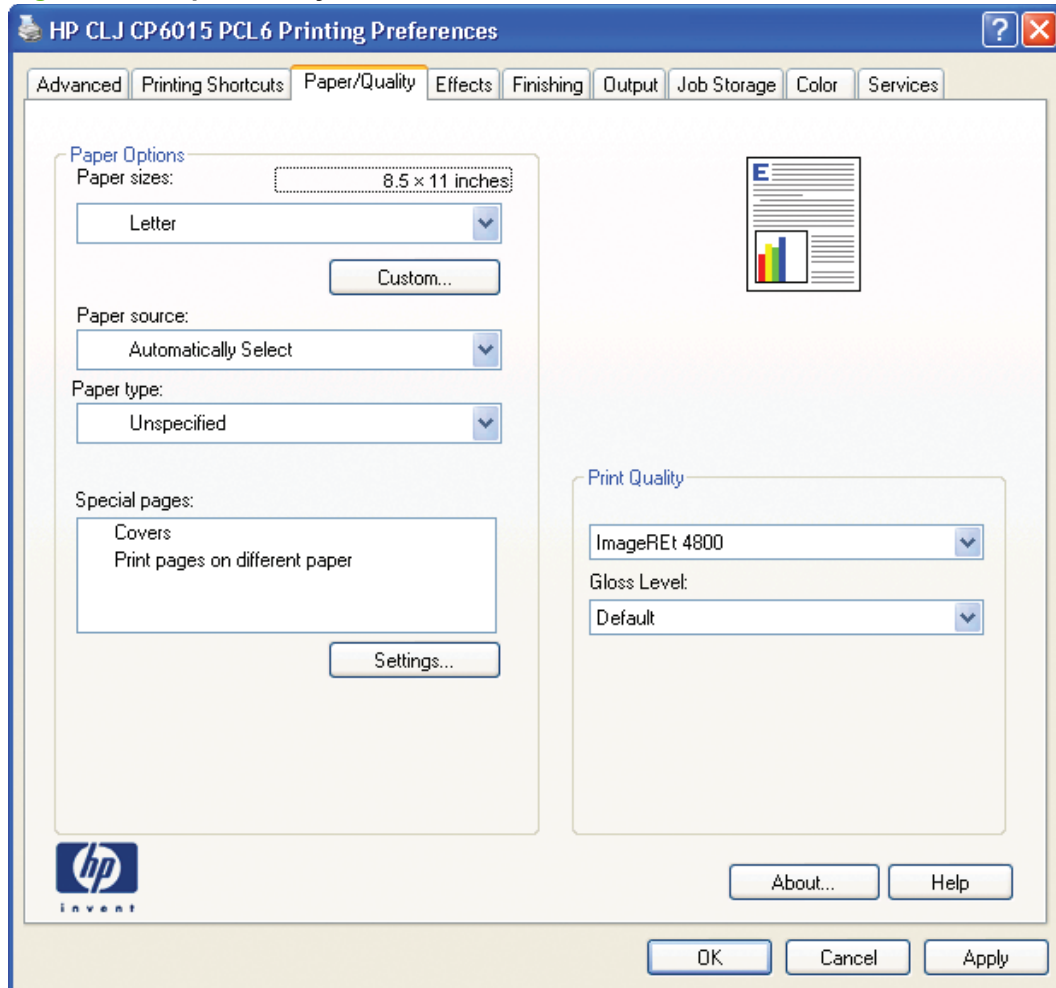
5. To delete a custom printing shortcut, click the custom shortcut, then click **Delete**.

Paper/Quality tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Paper/Quality** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set . For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 147](#),

Use the **Paper/Quality** tab to specify paper size, type, and source. You can also use this tab to specify different paper selections for the front cover, first page, other pages, last page, and back cover of the document. The following figure shows the **Paper/Quality** tab.

Figure 4-7 Paper/Quality tab



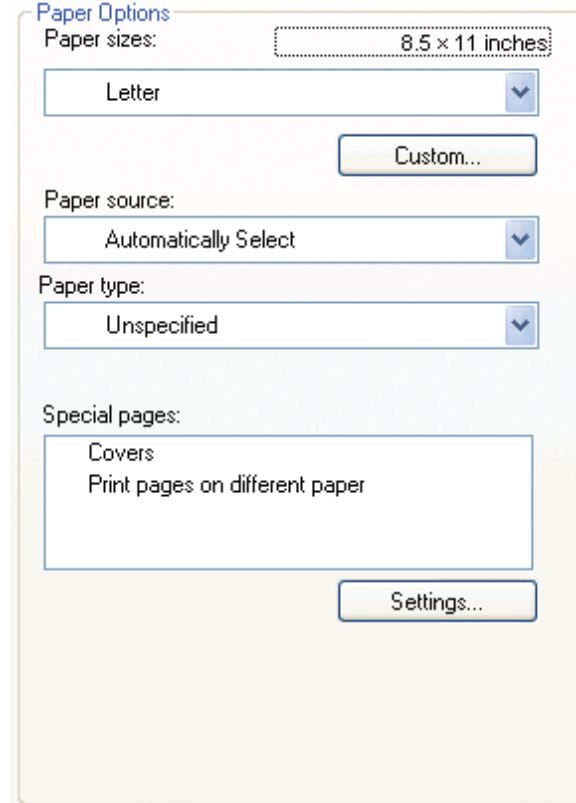
The **Paper/Quality** tab contains the following control sets:

- [Paper Options](#)
- [Document preview image](#)
- [Print Quality](#)

Paper Options

The settings specified in the **Paper Options** group box on the **Paper/Quality** tab apply to all of the pages of the document. The following figure shows the **Paper Options** group box and the selections that are available by default.

Figure 4-8 Paper Options group box



The settings in the **Paper Options** group box are described in the following order:


- [Paper sizes](#)
- [Custom Paper Size](#)
- [Paper source](#)
- [Paper type](#)
- [Special pages](#)

Paper sizes

The **Paper sizes** setting is a drop-down menu that lists all of the supported paper sizes.


When you move the mouse over the dimensions label, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. Click the dimensions label to toggle between English and metric units.

Because paper-size settings in most software programs override driver settings, it is generally best to use the driver to set paper size only when you are printing from software programs that do not include a paper-size setting, such as NotePad, or when you are producing a book or a booklet that does not require different paper sizes.

 **NOTE:** Certain software programs can override the size command and specify different paper sizes within a single document.

When you change the print-driver setting to a paper size that is not currently loaded in the product, a control-panel message appears that prompts you to load the paper size or select another tray.

For information about paper sizes, see [Media attributes on page 336](#).

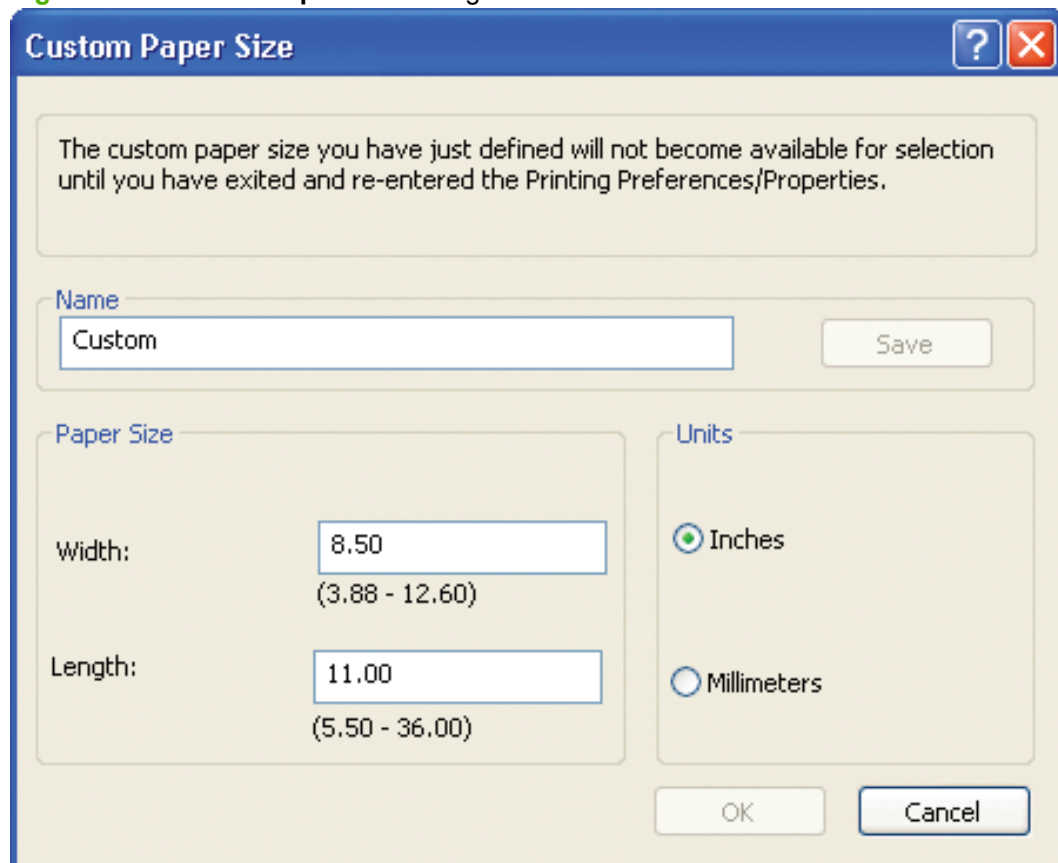
 **NOTE:** The HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product supports Banner paper sizes up to 36 inches in length. To use this paper size, set the Custom Paper Size to match the Banner paper size you are using, up to 36 inches in length.

When the **Settings** under the **Special Pages** section have been changed, the **Paper sizes**, **Paper source**, and **Paper type** menus change also, offering a variety of options. For more information, see [Special pages on page 169](#).

Custom Paper Size

The **Custom Paper Size** dialog box appears when you click **Custom...** on the **Paper/Quality** tab. The following figure shows the initial appearance of the **Custom Paper Size** dialog box.

Figure 4-9 Custom Paper Size dialog box



Name

Use the **Name** text box to type a new name for a custom paper size.

The name that appears in the **Name** text box depends on the following conditions:

- If a saved custom paper size has been selected from the drop-down menu on the **Paper/Quality** tab, then the **Name** text box shows the name of the selected custom paper size.
- If a standard paper size has been selected on the **Paper/Quality** tab, then the **Name** text box shows the default name of "Custom."
- If a new name has been typed into the **Name** text box for the purpose of saving a new size or renaming an existing size, then that new name will remain in the text box until the new size is saved or the dialog box is closed.

If you type a new name into the **Name** text box, but then do not click **Save**, you can change the width and height values without losing the name. However, if you close the dialog box without clicking **Save**, any unsaved name or size values are lost without warning.

Paper size

The width and height values can be changed by typing numeric strings into the edit boxes in the **Paper Size** group box.

Any entry that is greater than the maximum limits of the width and height control is rounded down to the maximum valid entry, while any entry that is smaller than the minimum limits of the width and height control is rounded up to the minimum valid entry.

If units are in millimeters, the custom paper-size range minimum is the limit rounded up to the nearest whole millimeter. The custom paper-size range maximum is the limit rounded down to the nearest whole millimeter. Any non-numerical entry reverts to the last valid entry. Width and height entries are validated when the focus has changed.

The resolution of each control is 1 millimeter or 1/10 of an inch, depending on the current measurement units.

Units

To change measurement units, click one of the options in the **Units** group box (either **Inches** or **Millimeters**).

Custom width and height control limits

The minimum paper size for the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product is 98.6 x 139.7 mm (3.9 x 5.5 in) and the maximum is 320 x 457.2 mm, or 915 mm for banner printing (12.6 x 18 inches, or 36 inches for banner printing). The following table summarizes paper size limits for each paper-handling device.

Table 4-1 PCL 6 custom paper sizes

Tray	Dimensions	Minimum	Maximum
Tray 1 (100-sheet multipurpose)	Width	98.6 mm (3.9 in)	320 mm (12.6 in)
	Length	139.7 mm (5.5 in)	457.2 mm (18.0 in)
			915 mm (36.0 in) for banner printing
Tray 2 (500-sheet)	Width	148.0 mm (5.83 in)	297 mm (11.7 in)
	Length	210.0 mm (8.26 in)	432 mm (17.0 in)

Table 4-1 PCL 6 custom paper sizes (continued)

Tray	Dimensions	Minimum	Maximum
Trays 3-5 (500-sheet)	Width	148 mm (5.8 in)	297 mm (11.7 in)
	Length	210 mm (8.3 in)	432 mm (17.0 in)
Duplexing unit	Width	174.0 mm (6.9 in)	320.0 mm (12.6 in)
	Length	210.0 mm (8.3 in)	457 mm (18.0 in)

Paper source

The **Paper source** setting specifies the source tray to use for printing a document. The list of source trays depends on the product accessories that are installed. Any optional source trays that are installed through the **Device Settings** tab also appear here.

The **Paper source** drop-down menu can contain the following options, depending on what has been installed on the product:

- **Automatically select**
- **Printer Auto Select**
- **Manual Feed in Tray 1**
- **Tray 1** (100-sheet multipurpose tray)
- **Tray 2** (500-sheet tray)
- **Tray 3** (500-sheet tray, HP Color LaserJet CP6015x and HP Color LaserJet CP6015xh only)
- **Tray 4** (500-sheet tray, HP Color LaserJet CP6015xh only)
- **Tray 5** (500-sheet tray, HP Color LaserJet CP6015xh only)

The default setting is **Automatically Select**. When this setting is selected, the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series uses the source tray that supports the paper size that you have selected. If you select a source tray other than **Automatically select**, make sure that the correct paper size is loaded in the source tray. For information about paper sources, see [Media attributes on page 336](#).

Paper type

The **Paper type** drop-down menu shows the first few paper types that the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series supports and an entry for **More**. Clicking **More** opens the **Type Is** dialog box, which shows all of the paper types that the product supports, listed in the following categories.

- **Unspecified**
- **Everyday <96g**
 - **Plain**
 - **HP LaserJet 90 g/m²**
 - **Light 60-74 g/m²**
 - **Intermediate 85-95 g/m²**

- **Bond**
- **Recycled**
- **Presentation 96-130g**
 - **HP Color Laser Matte 105 g/m2**
 - **Mid-Weight 96-110 g/m2**
 - **Mid-Weight Glossy 96-110 g/m2**
 - **Heavy 111-130 g/m2**
 - **Heavy Glossy 111-130 g/m2**
 - **HP Premium Choice Matte 120 g/m2**
 - **HP Presentation Soft Gloss 120 g/m2**
 - **HP Professional Soft Gloss 120 g/m2**
- **Brochure 131-175g**
 - **Extra Heavy 131-175 g/m2**
 - **Extra Heavy Glossy 131-175 g/m2**
 - **HP Color Laser Brochure Matte 160 g/m2**
 - **HP Superior Laser Matte 160 g/m2**
 - **HP Color Laser Brochure Glossy 160 g/m2**
 - **HP Superior Laser Glossy 160 g/m2**
- **Photo/Cover 176-220g**
 - **Cardstock 176-220 g/m2**
 - **HP Laser Cover Matte 200 g/m2**
 - **HP Matte Photo 200 g/m2**
 - **HP Color Laser Photo Glossy 220 g/m2**
 - **Card Glossy 176-220 g/m2**
- **Other**
 - **Color Laser Transparency**
 - **Labels**
 - **Letterhead**
 - **Envelope**
 - **Heavy Envelope**
 - **Preprinted**

- **Prepunched**
- **Colored**
- **Rough**
- **Heavy Rough**
- **HP Tough Paper**
- **Opaque Film**

When you use the default setting, **Unspecified**, the product uses the default paper type, which is usually **Plain**.

No mechanism exists for manually adding custom paper types through the driver. Custom types can be added only by using the bidirectional communication mechanism, so they must already exist in the product when the bidirectional query occurs. If bidirectional communication is enabled, then the information an updated list of paper types is returned. If bidirectional communication is not enabled, then the driver looks for custom paper types that have been saved from a previous bidirectional communication query, and uses those. Otherwise, no custom paper types are available through the driver.

The default setting is **Unspecified**, and the program selects the paper type. If you select a different setting, make sure that the correct paper type is loaded in the tray that you selected in the **Paper source** setting. For more information about paper types, see [Media attributes on page 336](#).

When you change the print-driver setting to a paper type that is not currently loaded in the product, a control-panel message appears that prompts you to load the paper type or select another tray.

Special pages

To specify special pages to be used, click the **Settings** button under **Special Pages**.

Covers

To use specify cover settings, click **Covers** on the **Special Pages** window.

Use the **Covers** options to include a blank or preprinted cover on a document, or to include a front/back cover from a source tray that is different from the one used for the remainder of the document.

The following are the **Covers** options:

- **Add a blank or preprinted cover:** Select which cover is customized: **Front**, **Back**, or **Both**.
- **Paper source:** The **Paper source** setting specifies the source tray to use for adding a front and/or back cover to the document. The list of source trays depends on the accessories that are installed. Any optional trays that are installed through the **Device Settings** tab also appear here.
- **Paper type:** The **Paper type** setting specifies the paper size to use for front and/or back covers. Changes made to the **Paper type** setting here override any previous **Paper type** settings using the same paper source.



NOTE: The **Back Cover** options are not available when the **Booklet Printing Layout** setting is enabled on the **Finishing** tab. The back cover setting is unavailable, because this page would be printed in the middle of a booklet.

NOTE: The same size of paper will be used for the entire print job.

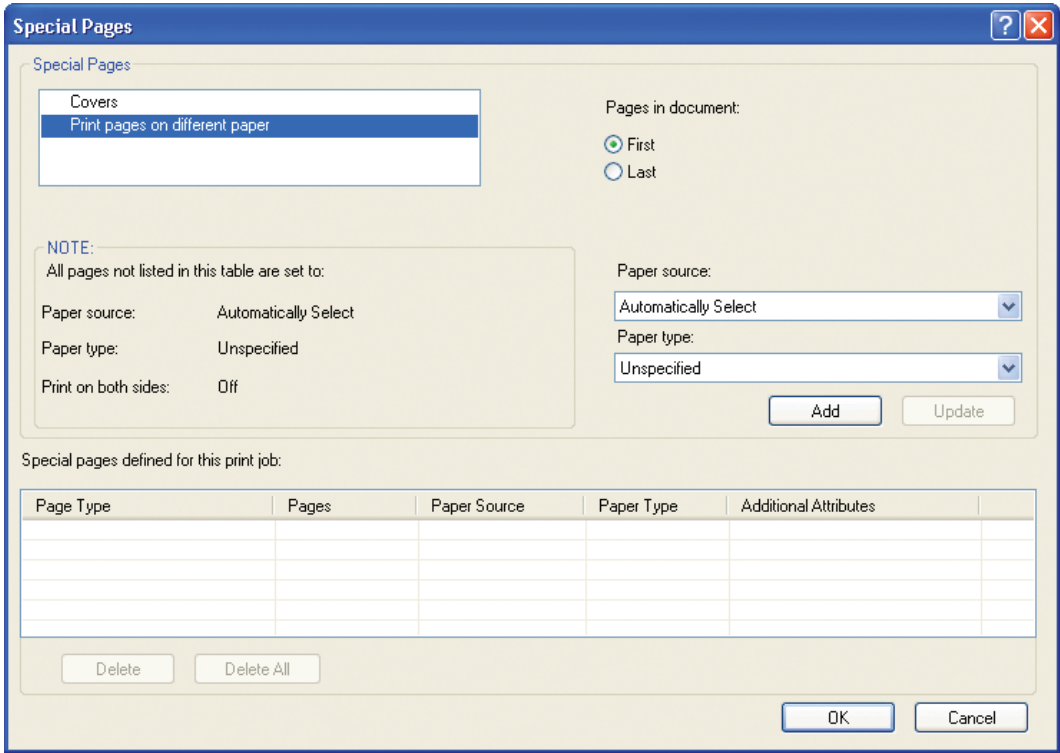
When you change the type and source of the paper and covers, the settings remain configured until you close the software program.

Print pages on different paper

Use the **Print pages on different paper** options to select an alternative paper type or source for the first or last page of a document.

The following figure shows the **Print pages on different paper** settings and options.

Figure 4-10 Print pages on different paper — First, or Last



The following are the **Print pages on different paper** options:

- **Pages in document.** Select which pages are customized: the **First** page, or the **Last** page.
- **Paper source:** The **Paper source** setting specifies the source tray to use for printing a document. The list of source trays depends on the accessories that are installed. Any optional trays that are installed through the **Device Settings** tab also appear here.
- **Paper type:** The **Paper type** drop-down menu shows all of the paper types that the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series supports.

 **NOTE:** The same type of paper is used for the entire print job.

When you change the type and source of the paper and covers, the settings remain configured until you close the software program.

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of the following **Printing Preferences** driver tabs:

- **Printing Shortcuts**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Output**
- **Color**

Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When you move the mouse over the document preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Print Quality

The **Print Quality** group box contains the following controls:

- [Print Quality drop-down menu](#)
- [Gloss Level](#)

Print Quality drop-down menu

Use this control to select a print quality. Numeric values are in dots per inch (dpi). ImageREt settings precisely control colors by combining up to 4 colors within a single dot and varying the amount of toner in a given area to create millions of smooth colors, sharp images, and crisp text.

The **Print Quality** drop-down menu contains the following resolution options.

- **ImageREt 4800.** This setting produces 4800 dpi color laser-class print quality. This setting is selected by default.
- **1200 x 600.** This setting is the best option for printing line images and fine text. It provides laser-class print quality, but is slower than ImageREt 4800.

Gloss Level

The HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series is capable of printing exceptionally high gloss levels on a wide range of paper types. However, on some paper types, the gloss level might noticeably decrease from page to page for a particular print job.

The following adjustments can be set by the user in order to maintain exceptionally high gloss level on all printed pages.

Gloss Level driver settings

For users who normally print general office documents where high gloss levels are not critical but need high gloss for particular print jobs. Users can select the appropriate gloss option for their document through the driver

On the **Paper/Quality** tab, the following **Gloss Level** settings are available:

- **Default.** Uses printer settings for gloss.
- **Best.** High gloss on all pages.
- **Standard.** Uses the standard gloss setting. This setting provides the fastest print performance, but also produces some gloss variation over time.

Select **Best** for glossy print jobs such as photos or brochures if the gloss finish decreases after the first page is printed. The **Best** setting reduces printing performance on the print job for which it was selected, but it does not impact product performance for other users.

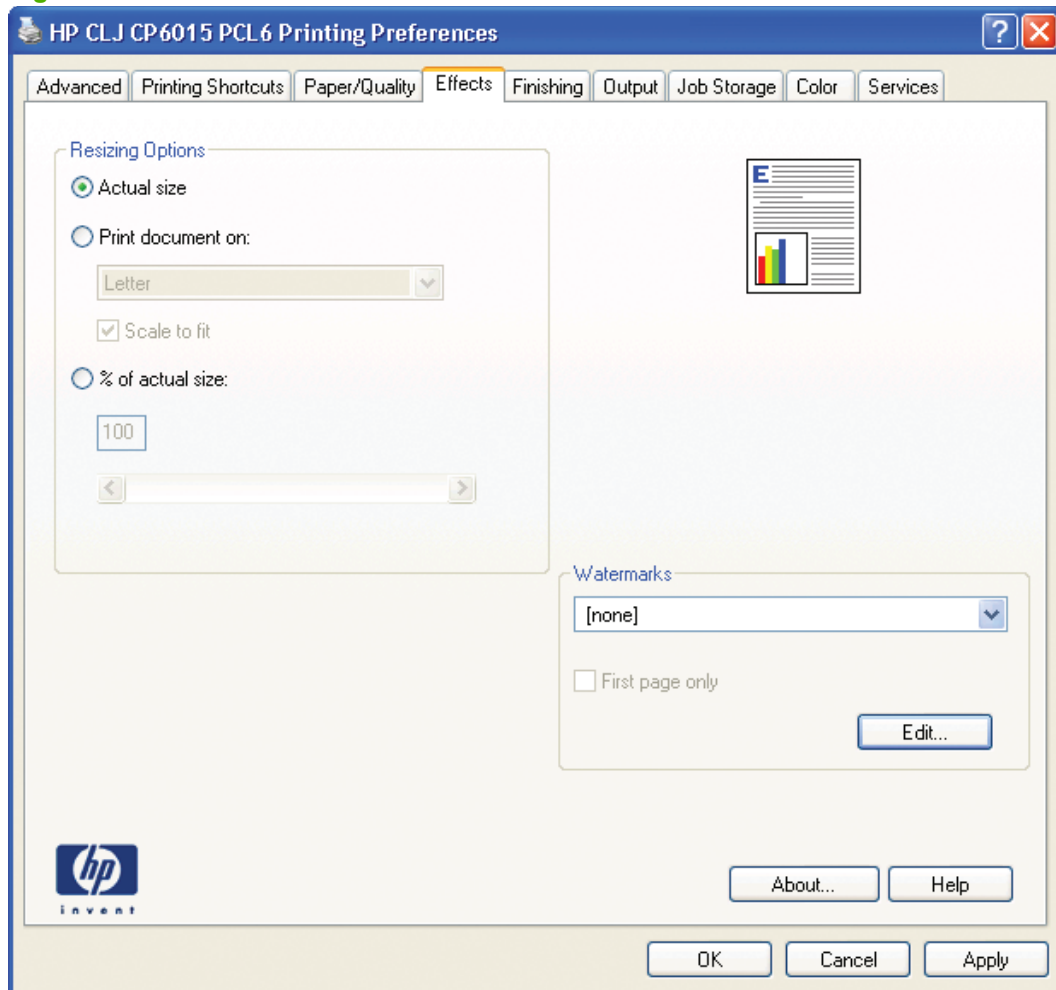
See the *HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series User Guide* for control panel options and further information about maintaining high gloss levels.

Effects tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Effects** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set . For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 147](#),

Use the **Effects** tab to create unique paper effects such as scaling and watermarks. The following figure shows the **Effects** tab.

Figure 4-11 Effects tab



The **Effects** tab contains the following controls:

- [Resizing Options](#)
- [Document preview image](#)
- [Watermarks](#)

Resizing Options

The **Resizing Options** group box consists of the following controls:

- **Actual Size** (default)
- **Print Document On** setting

- **Scale to Fit** option
- **% of Actual Size** setting

Actual Size

Actual Size is the default setting. It prints the document without changing the document size.

Print Document On

Click the **Print Document On** option to format the document for one paper size and then print the document on a different paper size, with or without scaling the image to fit the new paper size.

The **Print Document On** control is disabled by either of the following conditions:

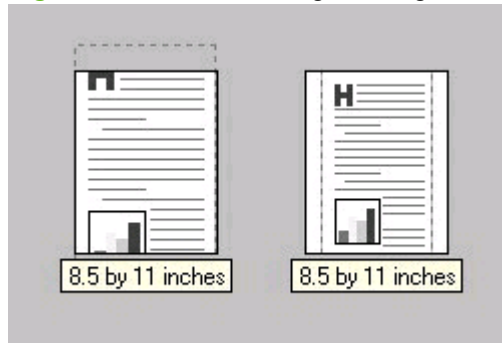
- The **% of Actual Size** value is not 100.
- The **Pages per Sheet** value (on the **Finishing** tab) is not 1.

When **Print Document On** is selected, the drop-down menu shows the paper sizes on which you can print. The list contains all of the standard paper sizes that the selected paper source supports and any custom sizes that you have created. When **Print Document On** is selected, **Scale to Fit** is automatically selected. Clear this check box if you do not want your document reduced or enlarged to fit on the selected paper.

Scale to Fit

The **Scale to Fit** option box specifies whether each formatted document page image is scaled to fit the target paper size. By default, **Scale to Fit** is selected when **Print Document On** is selected. If the setting is turned off, then the document page images will not be scaled, and are instead centered at full size on the target paper. If the document size is larger than the target paper size, then the document image is clipped. If it is smaller, then it is centered within the target paper. The following figure shows preview images for a document formatted for Legal-size paper with the **Print Document On** check box selected, and the target size specified as **Letter**.

Figure 4-12 Preview images – Legal on Letter; **Scale to Fit** off (left) and on (right)



When the size for which the document is formatted (that is, the logical size) differs from the target size, the preview image uses a dashed gray line to show the boundaries of the logical page in relation to the target paper size.

% of Actual Size

The **% of Actual Size** option provides a slider bar to use for scaling the percentage setting. The default setting in the entry box is 100% of actual size. Actual size is defined as the paper size that is selected

within the driver or what the driver receives from the software program (if the software program does not negotiate the paper size with the driver). The driver scales the page by the appropriate factor and sends it to the product.

The limits of the range are from 25% to 400%, and any values outside the range are adjusted to those limits as soon as the focus is removed from the control (that is, when the Tab key is pressed or another control is selected).

Any change to the scale also changes the page preview, which increases or decreases from the upper-left corner of the preview.

The slider bar controls the scale directly. The value in the edit box changes as the slider-bar indicator is dragged, and the document preview image is updated to the new image scale. Each click on the arrows increases or decreases the scale by 1%. Each click on the slider bar affects the scale by 10%.

You cannot achieve an exact value by dragging the slider-bar indicator. Instead, either use the slider-bar indicator to approximate the value that you want and then use the arrows to refine the value, or type the value into the entry box.

The following settings disable **% of Actual Size**:

- **Print Document On** (on the **Effects** tab) is selected
- **Pages per Sheet** (on the **Finishing** tab) is not 1

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of the following Printing Preferences driver tabs:

- **Printing Shortcuts**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Output**
- **Color**

Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When you move the mouse over the document preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Watermarks

Use the **Watermarks** feature to select a watermark, create a new watermark (text only), or edit an existing watermark. The following watermarks are preset in the driver:

- **(none)**
- **Confidential**

- **Draft**
- **SAMPLE**

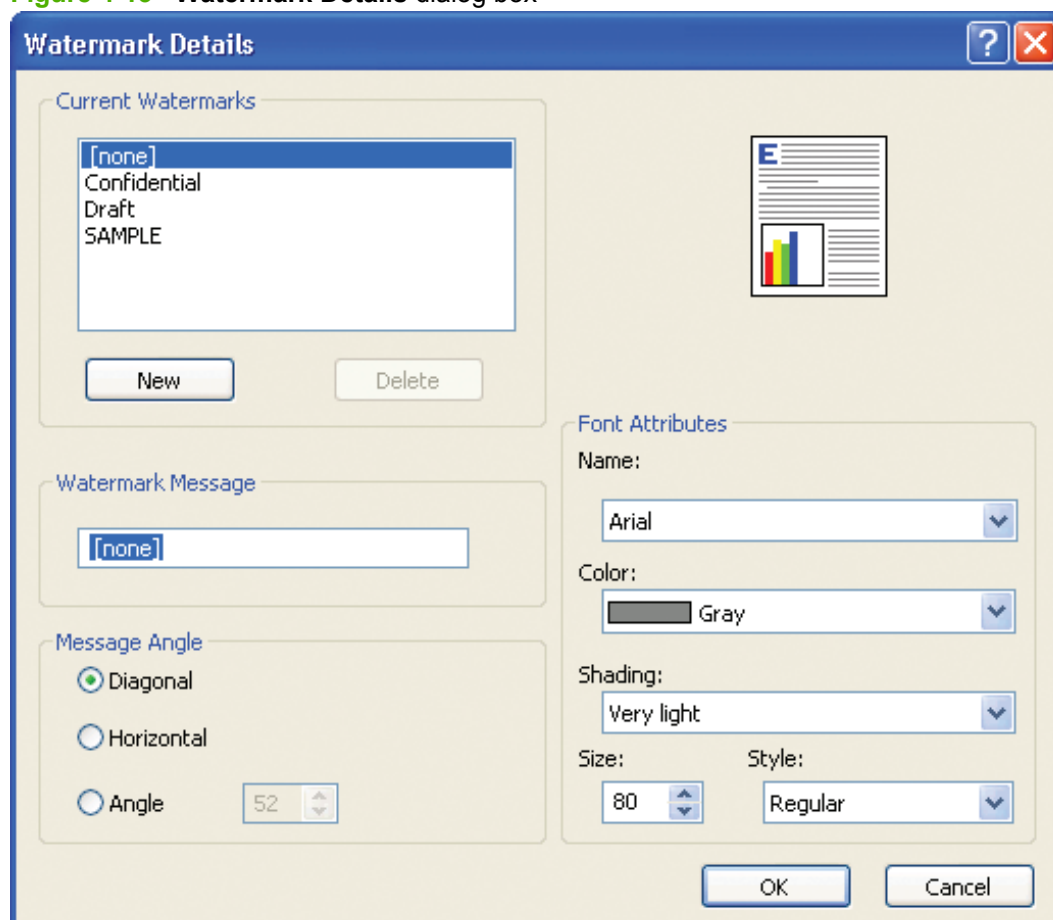
The drop-down menu shows alphabetically sorted watermarks that are currently available on the system, plus the string "(none)," which indicates that no watermark is selected. This is the default setting. Any watermark that is selected from this list appears in the preview image.

When the **First Page Only** check box is selected, the watermark is printed only on the first page of the document. The **First Page Only** check box is disabled when the current watermark selection is "(none)."

Watermarks are applied to logical pages. For example, when **Pages per Sheet** is set to "4" and **First Page Only** is turned off, four watermarks appear on the physical page (one on each logical page).

Click **Edit**, and the **Watermark Details** dialog box appears.

Figure 4-13 Watermark Details dialog box



The dialog box shows a preview image and provides options for creating a new watermark and controlling the message angle and font attributes.

Click **OK** to accept all of the changes that are made in the **Watermark Details** dialog box. However, clicking **Cancel** does not cancel all of the changes. If you make changes to a watermark and then select a different watermark or click **New**, all of the changes are saved, and only the current, unsaved changes can be canceled.

Current watermarks

The **Current Watermarks** group box contains a list of available watermarks, both predefined watermarks that are available in the driver and any new watermarks that you have created.

To create a new watermark, click **New**. The new watermark appears in the **Current Watermarks** list and in the **Watermark Message** edit box as "**Untitled**" until you name it. The name that you type in the **Watermark Message** field appears in the **Current Watermarks** group box in the **Watermark Details** dialog box and in the **Watermarks** group box on the **Effects** tab.

To name the new watermark, type the selected watermark text in the **Watermark Message** edit box.

To delete a watermark, select the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list and click **Delete**. A warning appears asking whether you are sure you want to delete the selected item. Click **Cancel** if you want to keep the watermark. Click **OK** to delete the selected watermark.



NOTE: You can have no more than 30 watermarks in the **Current Watermarks** list at one time. When you reach the limit of 30 watermarks, the **New** button is disabled.

To edit an existing watermark, select the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list. If you change the **Watermark Message** for that watermark, you are, in effect, creating a new watermark.

Watermark Message

The **Watermark Message** is also the name that identifies the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list, except when more than one watermark has the same message. For example, you might want several different watermarks with the message DRAFT, each with a different typeface or font size. When this occurs, the string is appended with a space, a pound sign, and a number (for example, **Draft #2**). When a number is added, the number two is used first, but if the resulting name is also in the list, then the number increases until the name is unique (**Draft #3**, **Draft #4**, and so on).

Message Angle

Use the controls in the **Message Angle** group box to print the watermark in different orientations on the page. All settings center the watermark string within the page; the selection of a particular setting affects only the angle of the string placement. The following settings are available:

- **Diagonal**. This is the default setting. Select this setting to place the text along a line that spans the lower-left to upper-right corners of the page.
- **Horizontal**. Select this setting to place the text along a line that spans the mid-left and mid-right edges of the page.
- **Custom**. Select this setting to place the text at the specified angle across the page. Use the numeric spin box to select the angle.

Font Attributes

Use the controls in the **Font Attributes** group box to change the font and the shading, size, and style of the font.

The **Font Attributes** group box contains the following controls:

- **Name**

The **Name** drop-down menu lists fonts that are currently installed on the system. The default is language-dependent.

- **Color**

The **Color** drop-down menu contains the following selections:

- **Gray**
- **Red**
- **Yellow**
- **Green**
- **Cyan**
- **Blue**
- **Magenta**

- **Shading**

The default **Shading** setting for new and preset watermarks is **Very Light**. The following range of shades is available from the **Shading** drop-down menu:

- **Lightest**
- **Very Light** (default)
- **Light**
- **Medium Light**
- **Medium**
- **Medium Dark**
- **Dark**
- **Very Dark**
- **Darkest**

These values represent the intensity of the gray that is used. Select **Light** to produce a lightly saturated gray watermark. Select **Lightest** to produce the lightest shade of watermark. Select **Darkest** to produce a black watermark.

- **Size**

Font sizes from 1 to 999 points are available from the **Size** menu. The default point size is language-dependent.

- **Style**

The following settings are available:

- **Regular**
- **Bold**
- **Italic**
- **Bold Italic**

The default **Style** setting for new and preset watermarks is **Regular**.

Default watermark settings

The following table shows **Font Attribute** settings for new and preset watermarks.

Table 4-2 Font Attribute settings for new and preset watermarks

Setting	New watermark	Preset watermark
Name	Arial	Varies by language
Color	Gray	Gray
Shading	Very Light	Very Light
Size	80	Varies by language
Style	Regular	Regular

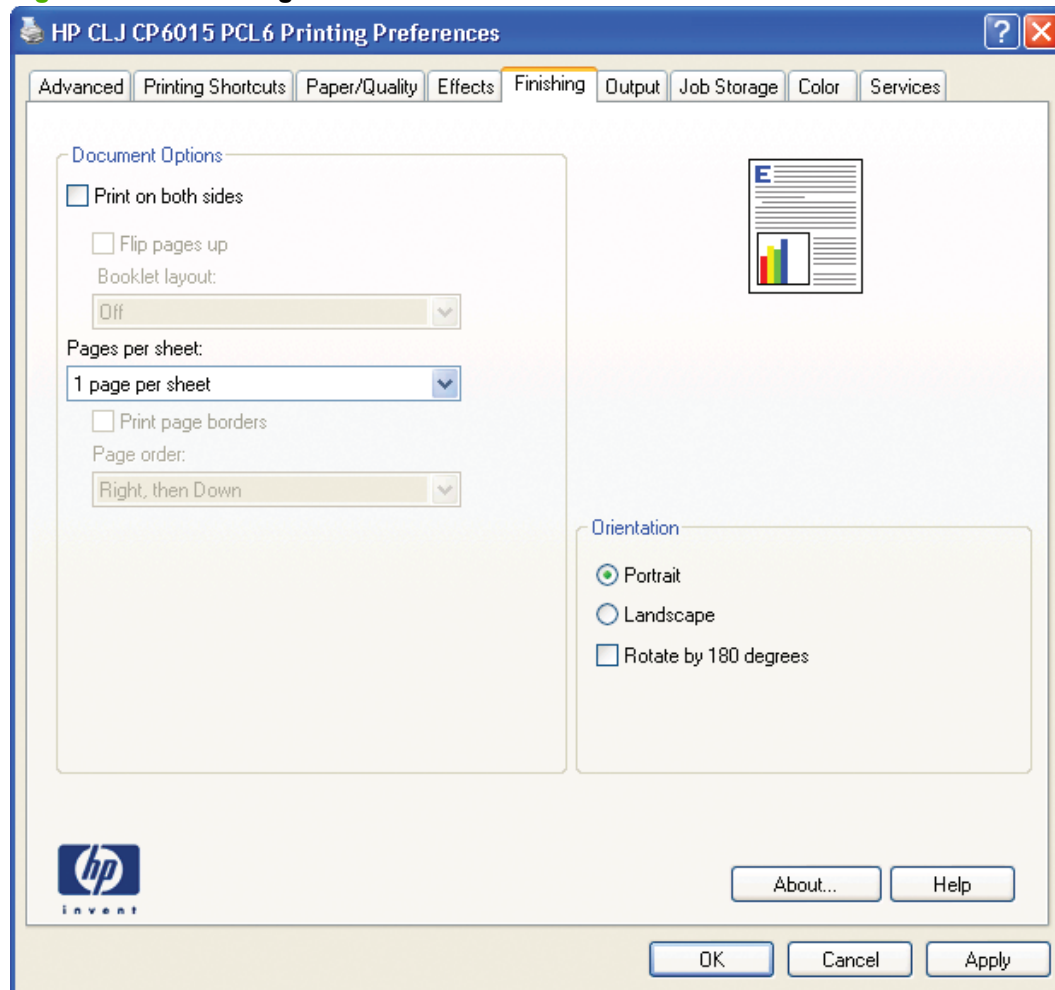
Click **OK** to accept all of the changes that have been made in the **Watermark Details** dialog box. Clicking **Cancel** does not cancel all of the changes. If you make changes to a watermark and then select a different watermark or click **New**, all of the changes are saved, and only the current, unsaved changes can be canceled.

Finishing tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Finishing** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 147](#).

Use the **Finishing** tab to print booklets and control the paper output. The following figure shows the **Finishing** tab.

Figure 4-14 Finishing tab



The **Finishing** tab contains the following controls:

- [Document Options](#)
- [Document preview image](#)
- [Orientation](#)

Document Options

The **Document Options** group box contains the following controls:

- [Print on Both Sides](#)
- [Flip Pages Up](#)

- [Booklet Layout](#)
- [Pages per Sheet](#)
- [Print Page Borders](#)
- [Page Order](#)

Print on Both Sides



NOTE: This feature is called **Print on Both Sides (manually)** for the HP Color LaserJet CP6015n because this model does not include an automatic duplex unit. For all other product models, this feature is called **Print on Both Sides**.

The default setting for the **Print on Both Sides** option is off (not selected). **Print on Both Sides** is available when the following conditions exist:

- **Paper type** on the **Paper** tab is set to any paper type *except for* the following types:
 - **Labels**
 - **Color Laser Transparency**
- **Paper sizes** is set to any paper size *except for* the following sizes:
 - **Envelope #10**
 - **Double Postcard (JIS)**
 - **Envelope #9**
 - **Envelope Monarch**
 - **Envelope B5**
 - **Envelope C5**
 - **Envelope C6**
 - **Envelope DL**

Print on both sides automatically

The duplexing unit in the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product prints on two sides of a sheet of paper when the **Print on Both Sides** option is specified in the print job. The HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product comes with a duplexing unit installed in the following models:

- HP Color LaserJet CP6015dn
- HP Color LaserJet CP6015de
- HP Color LaserJet CP6015n
- HP Color LaserJet CP6015xh

These product models support smart duplexing. The smart duplexing feature increases printing performance by preventing one-page print jobs or single-sided pages of a duplexed print job from going through the duplexing unit even when the duplexing feature has been selected in the driver.

All paper types support the smart duplexing feature, except for paper types that cannot be printed on both sides (such as labels, transparencies, and envelopes) and the following paper types:

- Prepunched
- Preprinted
- Letterhead
- Cardstock

When the paper type is set to **Unspecified**, the smart duplexing feature is disabled.

To achieve the best print quality when printing on the second side of the page, the product needs to make adjustments to its print modes. When you select a paper type, you are, in effect, instructing the product to use a group of settings (such as fuser temperature and print speed) to print the paper with the best possible quality. This group of settings is known as print mode. A different print mode is used with each paper type. Print-mode adjustments for the second side of a duplexed page are automatic.

Print on both sides manually


- **Manually Print on 2nd Side** is *not* selected by default.

Select the **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** check box to print on the second side of the paper for the HP Color LaserJet CP6015n product model, which does not have a duplexing unit installed. Also select **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** on the other HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product models for paper types that are not available when using the automatic duplexing unit, such as cardstock and thick paper.

Manually printing on the second side of a page is available when you are using the HP PCL 6 driver. If a duplexing unit is installed and manual duplexing is enabled in the driver, the product automatically prints on both sides of paper types that are supported for automatic duplexing (Letter, A4, Legal, and 8.5 x 11 only). For paper types that are *not* supported for automatic duplexing, a help message appears prompting you to configure the driver settings for manual printing on both sides. Manual printing on both sides does not occur automatically.

Select the paper type that corresponds to the paper that you are using for the print job. The following paper types have a different print modes when you manually print on the second side:

- Plain
- Preprinted
- Letterhead
- Prepunched
- Bond
- Recycled
- Colored
- Rough

 **NOTE:** To make the **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** check box available in the document options, select the **Allow Manual Duplexing** option on the **Device Settings** tab in the print-driver **Properties** tab set. See [Installable Options on page 209](#).

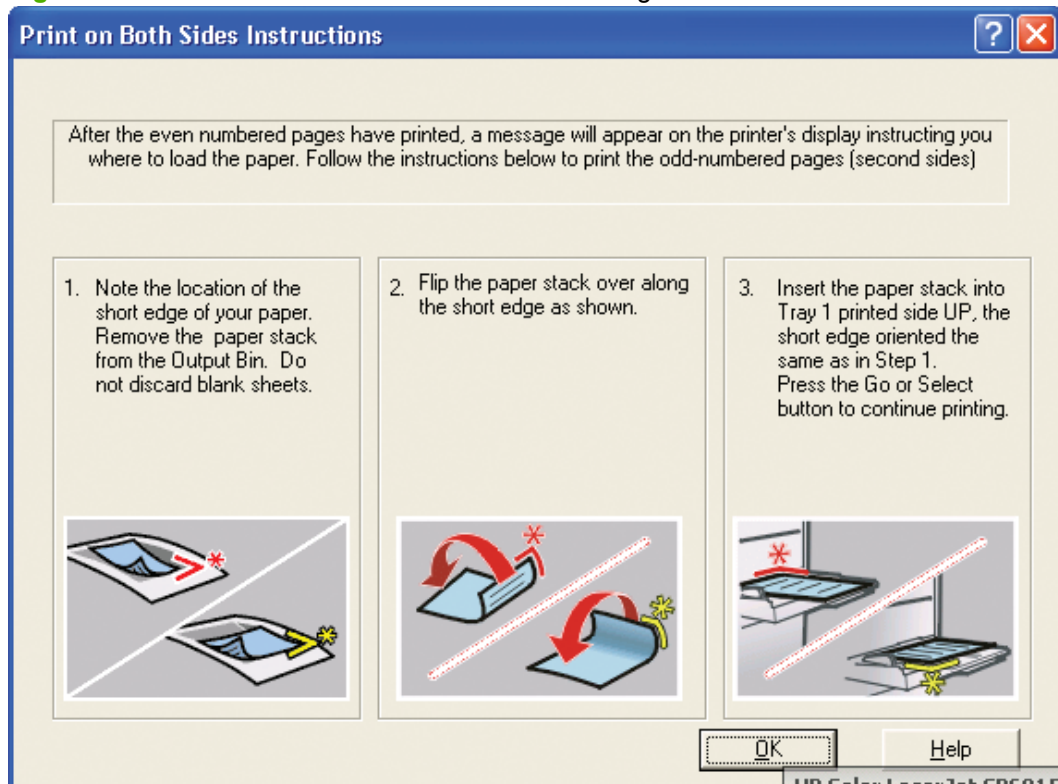
If you want to print on both sides manually while using paper that is supported for automatic duplexing, you must select and apply the **Not Installed** setting on the **Allow manual duplexing** option on the **Device Settings** tab.

Cardstock paper can be manually printed on the second side, but no change occurs to the print mode. Transparencies and labels should *never* be manually printed on the second side.

To print a multiple-page document, follow these steps:

1. Select the **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** check box.
2. Click **OK**. The even-number pages of the document print.
3. When the control panel shows the MANUALLY FEED message, insert the stack of paper (on which the even-number pages have been printed) as indicated in the following figure.

Figure 4-15 Print on Both Sides Instructions dialog box



When you have completed the steps that appear in the dialog box, the second half of the print job prints on the back side of the stack of paper. The driver does not require the program to specifically support odd- and even-page printing, because the driver coordinates this function.

Flip Pages Up

Use the **Flip Pages Up** check box to specify the duplex-binding option. By default, the **Flip Pages Up** check box is not available. It is available only when **Print on Both Sides** is selected. The following table demonstrates the results of selecting this check box, depending on the paper orientation selected on the **Finishing** tab.

Table 4-3 Page orientation

Orientation (Finishing tab)	Flip Pages Up selected	Flip Pages Up not selected
Portrait	Short-edge binding	Long-edge binding
Landscape	Long-edge binding	Short-edge binding

When **Print on Both Sides** is selected, the document preview image changes to show a spiral binding along either the left edge or the top edge of the page. In addition, a folded-over corner appears in the lower-right portion of the preview image, indicating that printing occurs on the back side. An arrow on the folded-over corner points in the direction that the pages would be flipped if they were bound together.

Short-side binding is for print jobs with pages that read by flipping over like the pages of a calendar. Long-side binding is for print jobs with pages that read by turning like the pages of a book.

Booklet Layout

The **Booklet Layout** drop-down menu, visible when **Print on Both Sides** is selected, offers choices that are based on the current paper size. The default setting for the **Booklet Printing** drop-down menu is **Off**. The other settings have the following format, where **[paper size]** depends on the paper size that is set on the **Paper/Quality** tab:

- **Left Edge Binding**
- **Right Edge Binding**

When you select **Left Edge Binding** or **Right Edge Binding**, the document preview image changes to show the location of the binding. If the **Pages per Sheet** setting is on the default setting of 1, it automatically changes to **2 pages per sheet**. If you change the **Pages per Sheet** setting manually to 4, 6, 9, or 16 pages per sheet, the booklet setting is disabled. See [Pages per Sheet on page 185](#) for more information.

Book and Booklet Printing

The HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series supports book and booklet printing.


A book is a print job consisting of at least two pages. It can have a different paper type for the front cover, first page, other pages, last page, or back cover. Use the **Covers** and **Print pages on different paper** settings on the **Paper/Quality** tab to select different paper for the front cover, first page, other pages, and back cover. For more information, see [Paper/Quality tab features on page 163](#).

A booklet is a print job that places two pages on each side of a sheet that can then be folded into a booklet that is half the size of the paper. Use the **Booklet Layout** drop-down menu on the **Finishing** tab to control booklet settings.

Print a booklet

1. Open the driver **Printing Preferences** tab set and click the **Printing Shortcuts** tab. For information about how to access the **Printing Preferences** tab set, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 147](#).

2. Click to select **Booklet Printing**.

 **NOTE:** Typically, you select the size of each page of the booklet in your software program by clicking **File**, clicking **Page**, and then clicking **Setup**. For example, if each page of the finished book is supposed to be Letter-sized in your 2-up booklet, select **Letter** in your software program, and then select **11x17** from the **Print document on** drop-down menu (physical size of the page) on the **Printing Shortcuts** tab. If your software program does not allow you to set the paper size, use the **Paper sizes** drop-down menu on the **Printing Shortcuts** tab.

3. Select the appropriate settings from the following drop-down menus on the **Printing Shortcuts** tab.


- **Paper source**
- **Paper type**
- **Booklet Layout**
- **Orientation**

4. Click **OK** to print.

Pages per Sheet

Use the **Pages per Sheet** option to select the number of pages that you want to print on a single sheet of paper. If you choose to print more than one page per sheet, the pages appear smaller and are arranged on the sheet in the order that they would otherwise be printed. The **Pages per Sheet** drop-down menu provides six settings:

- **1 page per sheet** (this is the default)
- **2 pages per sheet**
- **4 pages per sheet**
- **6 pages per sheet**
- **9 pages per sheet**
- **16 pages per sheet**

 **NOTE:** When you select an option other than **2 pages per sheet**, booklet printing is unavailable.

Print Page Borders

Related controls indented beneath **Pages per Sheet** are **Print Page Borders** and **Page Order**, which become active when **Pages per Sheet** is greater than 1.

Print Page Borders sets a line around each page image on a printed sheet to help visually define the borders of each logical page.

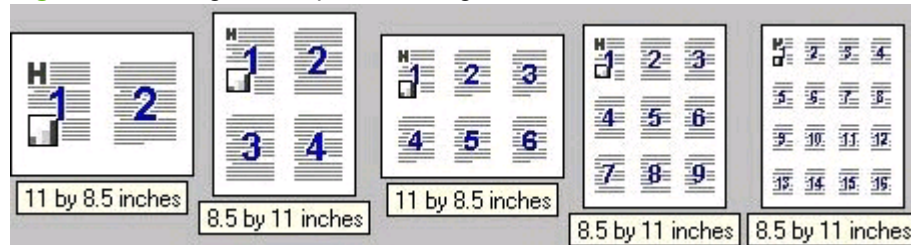
Page Order

The **Page Order** drop-down menu contains four selections:

- **Right, then Down**
- **Down, then Right**
- **Left, then Down**
- **Down, then Left**

The preview document image changes to reflect alterations in these settings, as shown by the examples in the following figure.

Figure 4-16 Page-order preview images



- **2 pages per sheet**
- **4 pages per sheet**
- **6 pages per sheet**
- **9 pages per sheet**
- **16 pages per sheet**

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of the following **Printing Preferences** driver tabs:

- **Printing Shortcuts**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Output**
- **Color**

Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When you move the mouse over the document preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Orientation

Orientation refers to the layout of the image on the page, and does not affect the way that paper feeds into the product. You can specify the orientation of the print job. The three available orientations are portrait, landscape, and rotated. The default orientation is **Portrait**.



NOTE: Nearly all software programs establish the orientation for the printed page, so the page orientation in the driver is useful only for the few software programs that do not set an orientation.

The **Orientation** group box contains the following options:

- **Portrait.** The top edge of the document is the shorter edge of the paper.
- **Landscape.** The top edge of the document is the longer edge of the paper.
- **Rotate by 180 degrees.** This creates a landscape or portrait orientation in which the image is rotated 180°. This setting is useful for printing prepunched paper.

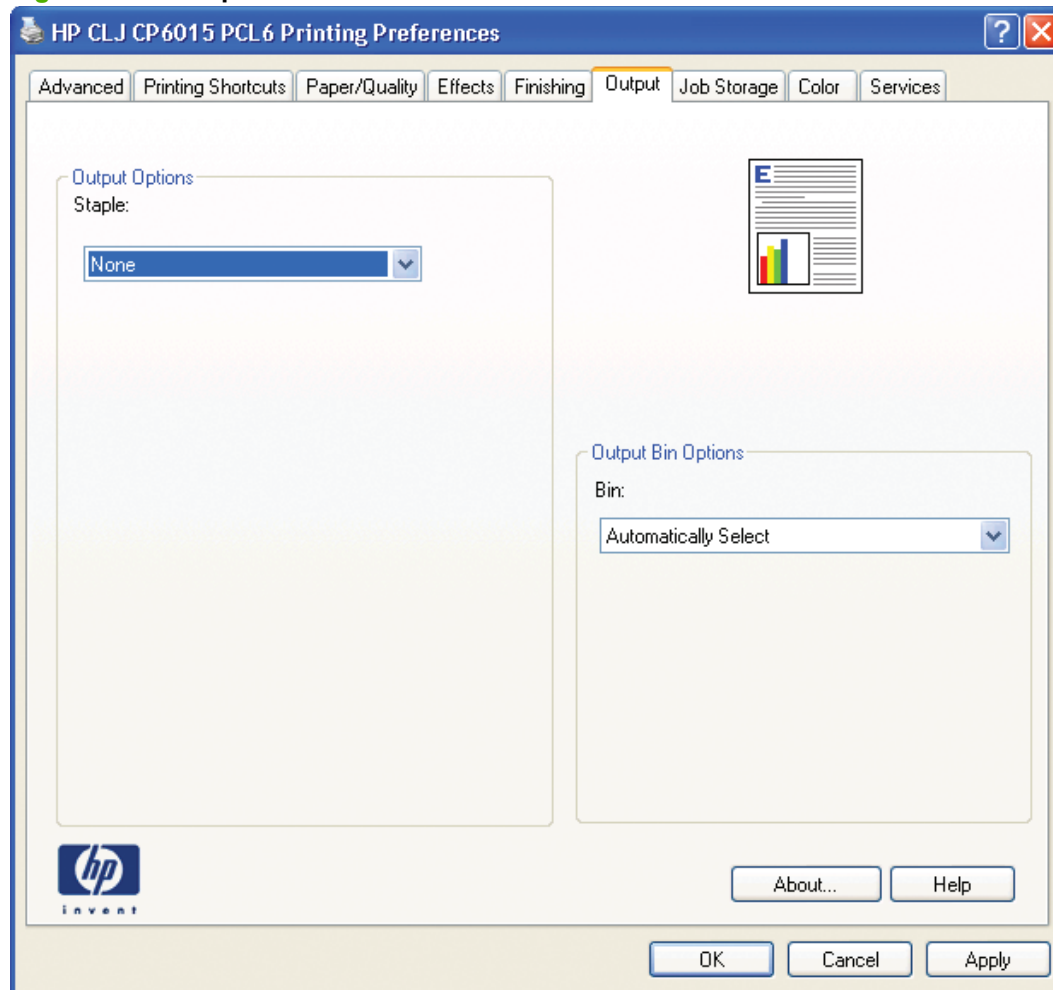
You can toggle orientation between portrait and landscape by clicking the document preview image. If you select the **Rotate by 180 degrees** check box, no change occurs in the document preview image.

Output tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Output** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set . For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 147](#),

Use the **Output** tab to select finishing and output options for a document. The following figure shows the **Output** tab.

Figure 4-17 Output tab



The **Output** tab contains the following controls:

- **Output Options** group box
- Document preview image
- **Output Bin Options**

Output Options

The **Output** tab appears only if the optional HP 3-bin Stapler/Stacker Accessory or the HP Booklet Maker/Finisher Accessory are installed on the product.

The available **Output Options** that are available depend on which output accessory is installed and configured on the product. The options for accessories, which must be configured on the **Device Settings** tab, are:

- **None**
- **One staple left**
- **One staple right**
- **Two staples left**
- **Two staples right**
- **Fold and Stitch (Max 15 sheets)**

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of the following **Printing Preferences** driver tabs:

- **Printing Shortcuts**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Output**
- **Color**

Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When you move the mouse over the document preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking on the image.

Output Bin options

The available settings depend on which accessory output bin is installed on your product, the HP 3-bin Stapler/Stacker Accessory or the HP Booklet Maker/Finisher Accessory. The following options are available.


- **Automatically Select:** Sends the pages to the product's default output bin.
- **Upper Left Bin:** Pages exit the product face down in the bin. Pages sent to this output bin stack in the order that they are printed (correct-ordered output).
- **Middle Left Bin:** Pages exit the product face down and in the correct order.
- **Lower Left Bin:** Pages exit the product face down and in the correct order. For the HP Booklet Maker/Finisher Accessory, the Lower Left Bin is used for booklet output only.

Job Storage tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Job Storage** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 147](#).

Use the job-storage feature to store print jobs in the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product memory or hard disk for printing at a later time.

The **Job Storage** tab appears among the driver tabs only if the job-storage feature is enabled on the **Device Settings** tab. To support job-storage features for complex jobs, or if you often print complex graphics, print postscript (.PS) documents, or use many downloaded fonts, HP recommends that you install additional memory, install a hard disk, or both. Added memory also gives you more flexibility in supporting job-storage features. A minimum total memory of 288 MB is required to use the **Proof and Hold** and **Personal Job** job-storage features. A hard disk is required to use the **Quick Copy** and **Stored Job** job-storage features.

 **NOTE:** The HP Color LaserJet CP6015xh product comes with a hard disk installed on the product. All other models of the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product do not have a standard hard disk installed.

After a hard disk is installed, the driver must be configured to reflect the changes in the product. If bidirectional communication is enabled in your environment, the Update Now feature can be used to update the drivers. For more information, see [Automatic Configuration on page 209](#).

To configure the drivers manually after installing a hard disk, follow these steps:

1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

In Windows XP and Windows Server 2003, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

2. Right-click the product name.
3. Click **Properties**.
4. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
5. Select **Installed** for the **Printer Hard Disk** under **Installable Options**, and then select **Installed** in the drop-down menu.
6. Click **OK** to make the printer hard disk and job-storage features available.

You can disable the job-storage feature while leaving the printer hard disk enabled. To disable the job-storage feature, follow these steps:

1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

In Windows XP and Windows Server 2003, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

2. Right-click the product name.
3. Click **Properties**.

4. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
5. Select **Job Storage**.
6. Select **Disabled** in the **Change 'Job Storage' Setting** dialog box that appears.

If the job-storage feature is enabled (without installing a hard disk but with at least 288 MB of total memory), two **Job Storage Mode** settings are available on the **Job Storage** tab:

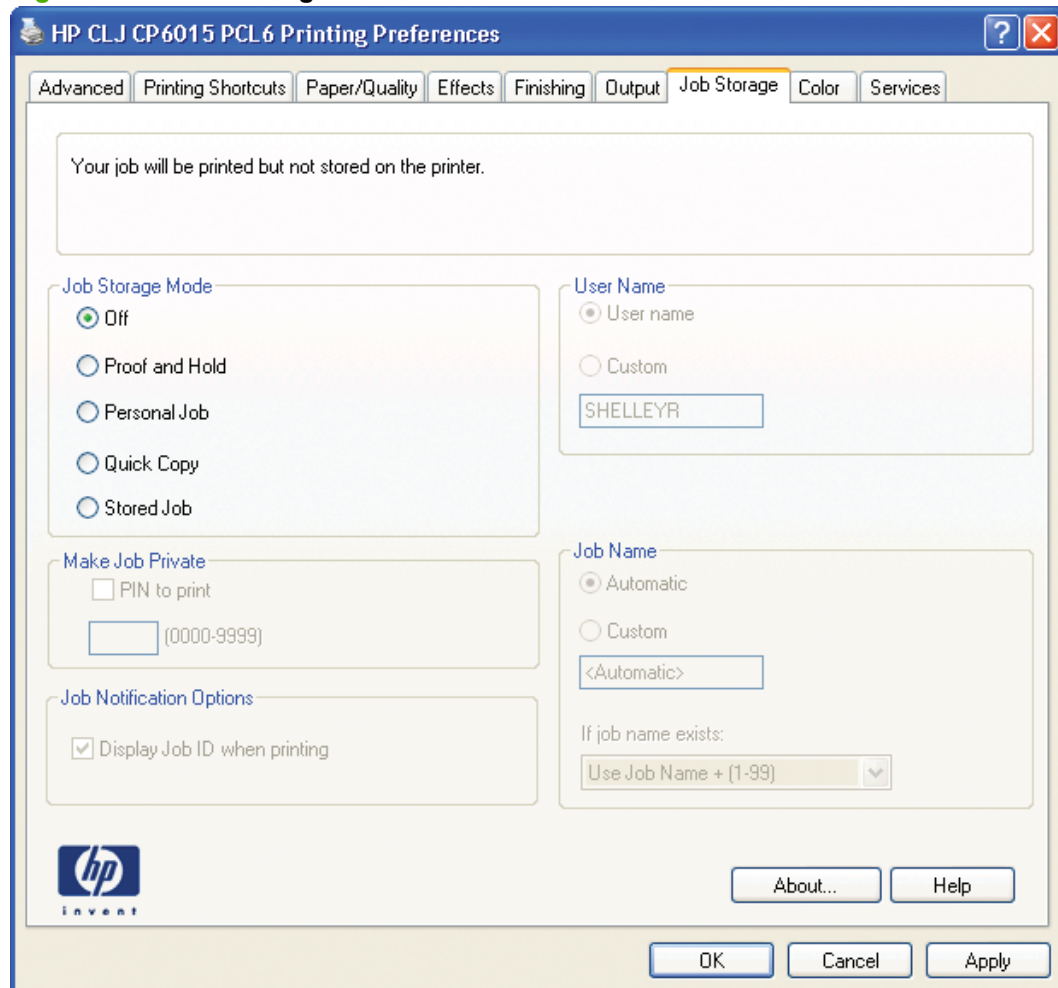
- **Proof and Hold**
- **Personal Job**

Two additional **Job Storage Mode** settings become available on the **Job Storage** tab if a hard disk is installed:

- **Quick Copy**
- **Stored Job**

The following figure shows the **Job Storage** tab.

Figure 4-18 Job Storage tab



The **Job Storage** tab contains the following controls:

 **NOTE:** Information about using the job-storage feature when printing is also provided here.

- [Status group box](#)
- [Job Storage Mode](#)
- [PIN to print](#)
- [Job Notification Options](#)
- [User Name](#)
- [Job Name](#)
- [Use job-storage features when printing](#)

Status group box

The unlabeled group box on the **Job Storage** tab contains a status message about the destination of a print job. The status information changes depending on the selections that are made on the **Job Storage** tab.

Job Storage Mode

Use the **Job Storage Mode** options on the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product to store documents at the product and then control their printing at the product control panel.

The HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product offers the following **Job Storage Mode** options:

- **Off**
- **Proof and Hold**
- **Personal Job**
- **Quick Copy**
- **Stored Job**

These options and the settings that control them are described below.

Off

When selected, this option turns the job-storage feature off (it is disabled), which means that the print job will not be stored in the product.


Proof and Hold

To use the **Proof and Hold** option, the job-storage feature must be enabled.

When selected, this option stores the print job in memory and prints only the first copy of the job, allowing you to check the first copy. If the document prints correctly, you can print the remaining copies of the print job at the control panel. You can set the number of proof-and-hold print jobs that can be stored in the product at the control panel.

After it is released for printing, the proof-and-hold job is imperceptibly deleted from the product. If more copies are needed, you must reprint the job from the software program. If you send a second proof-and-hold job to the product with the same user name and job name as an existing proof-and-hold job (and

you have not released the original job for printing), the job will overwrite the existing job. Proof-and-hold jobs are deleted if you turn off the product.

 **NOTE:** The product configuration can be set to hold a maximum of 50 quick-copy or proof-and-hold jobs. The number is set at the product control panel in the **CONFIGURATION** menu, and the default is 32. When this preset limit is reached, the new document overwrites the oldest held document. Also, a document that has the same user name and job name as one that is already stored on the printer hard disk will overwrite the existing document.

Personal Job

To use the **Personal Job** option, the job-storage feature must be enabled.

When you select **Personal Job**, the print job is sent to the product, but is not printed until you request the job at the product control panel. Selecting **Personal Job** activates the **PIN** group box. If **PIN to print** is selected, the print job can be printed only after you type the correct PIN at the control panel. After the job is printed, the job is impapertely deleted from the product. This feature is useful when you are printing sensitive or confidential documents that you do not want to leave in an output bin after printing.


The Private Job/PIN coupling has a PIN restriction of four ASCII numeric characters (0 though 9). If you type non-numeric characters, they are removed impapertely. If you type more than four characters, the characters past the fourth are truncated. The field temporarily accepts fewer than four digits in the string, but when the edit field loses focus, the zeroes pad the left end until the PIN contains exactly four digits. The default initialized value for the PIN is 0000 for **Personal Job**.

After it is released for printing, the private job is impapertely deleted from the product. If more copies are needed, you must reprint the job from the software program. If you send a second private job that has the same user name and job name as an existing private job (and you have not released the original job for printing), the job will overwrite the existing job, regardless of the PIN. Private jobs are deleted if you turn off the product.

Quick Copy

To use the **Quick Copy** option, a printer hard disk must be installed, and the job-storage feature must be enabled.

When you select **Quick Copy**, the entire print job prints and a copy of the print job is stored on the product, after which you can print additional copies of the print job at the product control panel. The number of quick-copy print jobs that can be stored in the product is set by using the product control panel.

 **NOTE:** The product configuration can be set to hold a maximum of 50 quick-copy or proof-and-hold jobs. The number is set at the product control panel in the **CONFIGURATION** menu, and the default is 32. When this preset limit is reached, the new document overwrites the oldest held document. Also, a document that has the same user name and job name as one that is already stored on the printer hard disk will overwrite the existing document. **Quick Copy** jobs are deleted if you turn off the product.

Stored Job

To use the **Stored Job** option, a hard disk must be installed on the product and the job-storage feature must be enabled.

Use the **Stored Job** option to send a print job directly to the printer hard disk without printing it. The print job is stored in the product as if it is an electronic file cabinet. After the print job is stored on the printer hard disk, you can print the job at the product control panel.


The job remains stored in the product until it is deleted or overwritten by a document that has the same user name and job name. Stored jobs remain on the printer hard disk when the product is turned off. Use this feature for forms and other common or shared documents.

A stored job can be managed in two ways: as either a private or a public job.

Select the **PIN to Print** check box to set the private mode. Use a private stored job to send a print job directly to the product, which can then be printed only after you type a PIN up to 4 digits long at the product control panel. (You can set the PIN in the **PIN** group box.)

After the job is printed, the job remains in the product and can be printed again at the product control panel.

The box labeled **PIN** is usually inactive. The **PIN to Print** option becomes available when you select **Stored Job**. If you select the **PIN to Print** box, you must type a PIN to make the stored job private.

 **NOTE:** A *private* stored job is not the same as a *personal* job. *Personal* jobs are deleted from the product after they are printed. *Private stored* jobs are retained in the product after printing, but require that a PIN be typed each time they are printed. A printer hard disk is required for *Private stored* jobs.

PIN to print

PIN to print is available when **Stored Job** is selected. Select the **PIN to Print** box, then type a 4-digit PIN number in the box provided. The stored job is sent to the product, where you must enter the 4-digit PIN on the control panel to retrieve the stored job.

The **PIN to Print** box is available when **Personal Job** is selected. Select the **PIN to Print** option, and then type a 4-digit PIN number in the box provided. The stored job is sent to the product, where you must type the 4-digit PIN on the control panel to retrieve the stored job.

Job Notification Options

Clicking a **Job Storage Mode** selection causes the **User Name** and **Job Name** options to become available. The **Display Job ID when printing** check box is selected by default. The **Display Job ID when printing** option causes a pop-up dialog box to appear when the job-storage print job is printed. The dialog box shows the user name and job name that are associated with the stored print job, as well as the printer name, port, and location.

User Name

Use the **User Name** settings to help identify the job at the product control panel. The following are the **User Name** settings:

- **Windows User Name.** This option associates your Windows user name with the stored print job. The Windows user name automatically appears in the text field below the **Windows User Name** options.
- **Custom.** Use this option to type a custom name for the stored print job. When you click **Custom**, the text field below the option becomes available. The **User Name** field can contain no more than 16 characters, and is limited to A through Z and 0 through 9 because the name appears on the product control-panel display. If you try to type a lowercase character, it automatically shifts to uppercase. If you try to type a character in an ASCII code of fewer than 32 or more than 126 characters, the character is removed from the edit field, along with all of the characters that follow it. If you try to type more than 16 characters, any character beyond 16 is truncated.

Job Name

Use the **Job Name** options to specify a name to identify the job at the product control panel. The following are the **Job Name** settings:

- **<Automatic>** This option, which is the default selection, automatically generates the job name that is associated with the stored print job. The file name of the print job is used if it is available to the print driver. Otherwise, the software program name or a time stamp is used for the job name.
- **Custom.** Use this to type a custom job name for the stored print job. When you click **Custom**, the text field below the option becomes available. In those languages for which **<Automatic>** cannot be translated without the use of invalid characters, the driver uses a string of three dashes. The acceptable characters for job name and user name vary for each operating system. The string must be of a length and type that can appear on the product control-panel display.

The **Job Name** field can contain no more than 16 characters, and is limited to A through Z (uppercase or lowercase) and 0 through 9 so that the name can appear on the product control-panel display. If you try to type a character in an ASCII code of fewer than 32 or more than 126 characters, the character is removed from the edit field, along with all of the characters that follow it. If you try to type more than 16 characters, any character beyond 16 is truncated.


When the dialog box is closed, or as soon as the focus is removed from the control (that is, when the Tab key is pressed or another control is selected), an empty string is replaced with **<Automatic>**. The acceptable characters for job name and user name vary for each operating system. The string must be of a length and type that can appear on the product control-panel display.

If Job Name Exists. When you store a print job, you can create a print-job name or the product software can assign one automatically. If a print job with the same name already exists, the new print job will overwrite the existing print job. To eliminate the chances of a new print job overwriting an old print job because both have the same name, select **Use Job Name + (1-999)**. After you create the print job name, or when one is created automatically, the product software assigns a number between 1 and 999 to the end of the print job name to make the name unique. Select **Replace Existing File** if you always want the product software to overwrite an existing print job with the same print job name.

Use job-storage features when printing

To use job-storage features when printing, follow these steps:

1. Click **File** and then click **Print** from the software program. The **Print** dialog box appears.

 **NOTE:** Clicking the print icon in the software program toolbar prints the job without using job-storage features.

2. Click **Properties**. The **Properties** dialog box appears.
3. Click the **Job Storage** tab.
4. Select the job-storage options by clicking the appropriate option button, and then complete any required fields.
5. Click **OK**.

Release a job-storage print job

After you send a print job that uses the job-storage feature, you can release the job to print from the product control panel.

1. Press the **select** button ✓ to open the menus.
2. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ until **RETRIEVE JOB** is highlighted on the product control panel, and then press **select** ✓.
3. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to your user name, and then press **select** ✓.
4. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to the job name, and then press **select** ✓.
5. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ until **PRINT** is highlighted on the product control panel, and then press **select** ✓.
6. Press **select** ✓.
7. If a PIN number is assigned to the job, press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to select the first digit of the PIN, and then press **select** ✓. The number in the product control-panel display changes to an asterisk. Repeat this step for each of the remaining three digits of the PIN number.

If no PIN number is assigned to the job, continue with the next step.

8. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to select the number of copies to print.
9. Press **select** ✓ to print the job.

Delete a job-storage print job

Sometimes it is necessary to delete a print job from the printer hard disk. You can do this from the product control panel.

1. Press the **select** button ✓ to open the menus.
2. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ until **RETRIEVE JOB** is highlighted on the product control panel, and then press **select** ✓.
3. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to your user name, and then press **select** ✓.
4. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to the job name, and then press **select** ✓.
5. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ until **DELETE** is highlighted on the product control panel, and then press **select** ✓.
6. Press **select** ✓.
7. If a PIN number is assigned to the job, press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to select the first digit of the PIN, and then press **select** ✓. The number in the product control-panel display changes to an asterisk. Repeat this step for each of the remaining three digits of the PIN number.

If no PIN number is assigned to the job, continue with the next step.

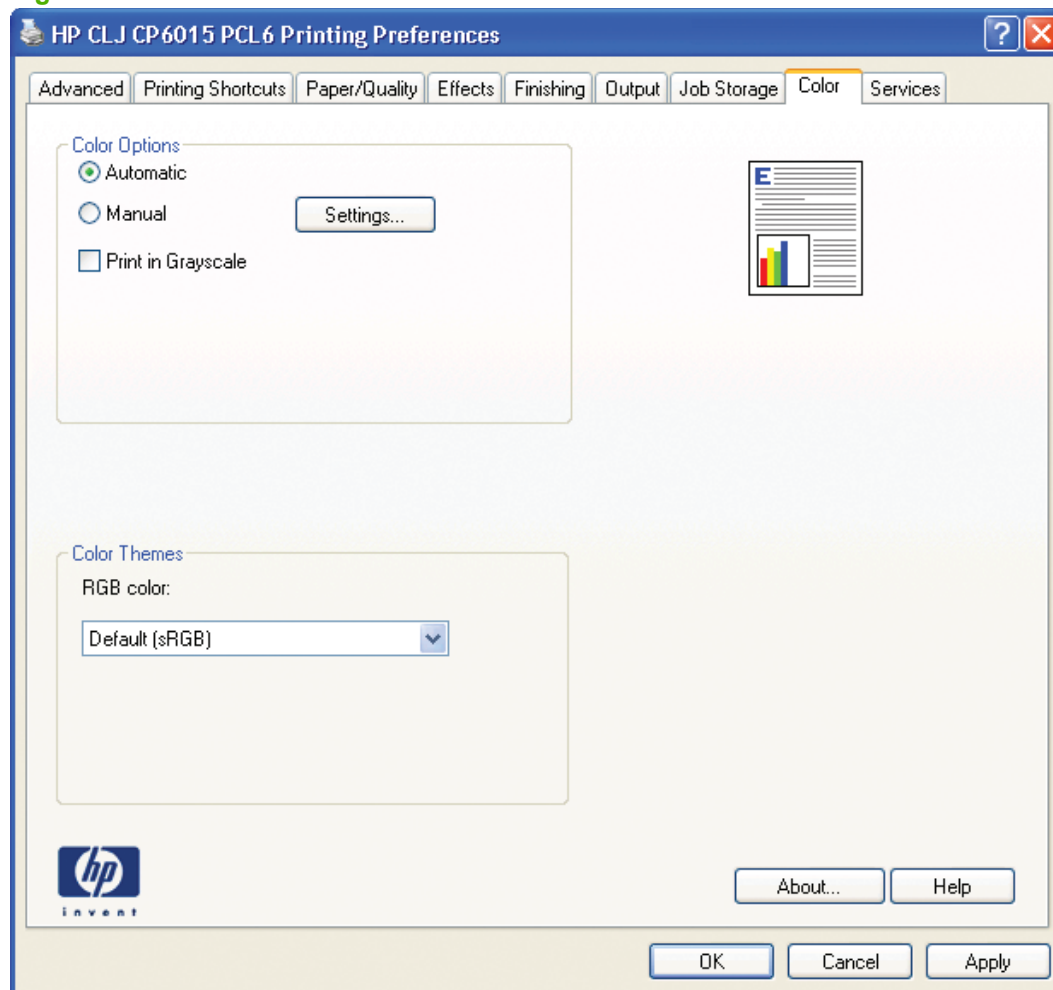
8. Press **select** ✓ to delete the job.

Color tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Color** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set . For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 147](#),

Use the **Color** tab to specify predefined color-option settings or to fine-tune the color treatments and halftoning. Color output can also be converted to grayscale. The **Color** tab is shown in the following figure.

Figure 4-19 Color tab



The **Color** tab contains the following sets of controls:

- [Color Options](#)
- [Color Themes](#)
- [Document preview image](#)

Color Options

Use the **Color Options** group box to adjust the independent color controls. The settings affect the print job color rendering and print quality. The **Color Options** group box contains the following controls:

- **Automatic** option (default)
- **Manual** option
- **Settings** button (Click this button to open the **Color Settings** dialog box.)
- **Print in Grayscale** check box

Automatic

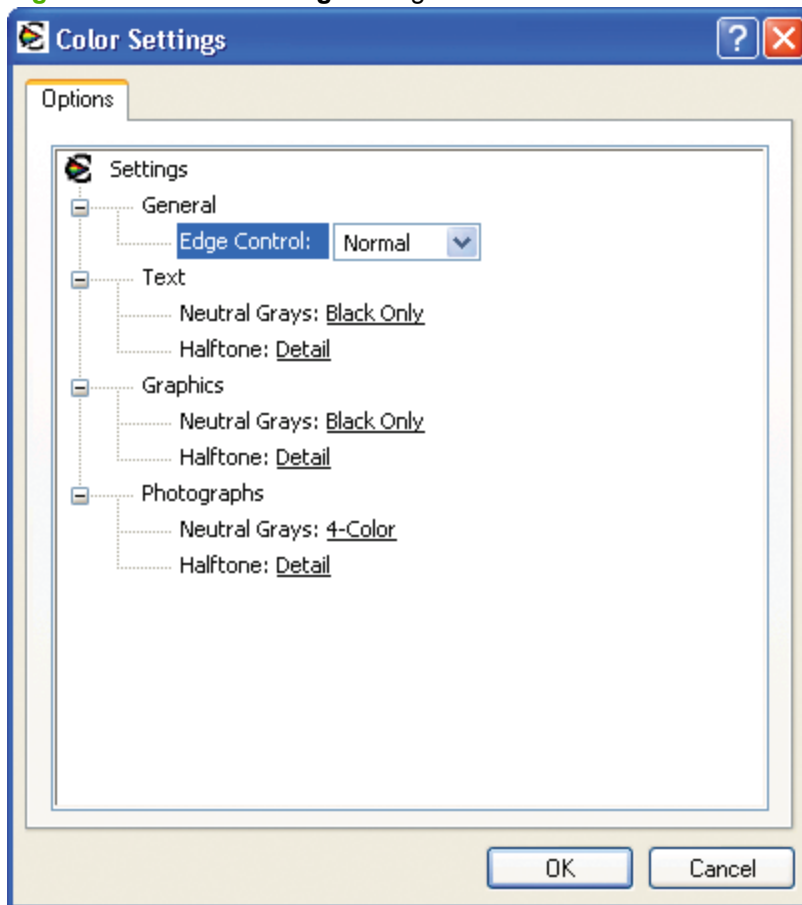
Use the **Automatic** option for color settings that automatically fine-tune the printed output. The **Automatic** color settings provide high-quality output while maintaining product performance for most color printing needs.

Manual

To change the color settings, select the **Manual** option, and then click **Settings**. The **Color Settings** dialog box appears.

To change the settings, make your selections by using the drop-down menus in the **Color Settings** dialog box, and then click **OK**. The following figure shows the **Color Settings** dialog box with "Custom" settings.

Figure 4-20 Color Settings dialog box



The **Color Settings** dialog box contains the following controls:

- **General**
 - **Edge Control**
- **Text**
 - **Neutral Grays**
 - **Halftone**
- **Graphics**
 - **Neutral Grays**
 - **Halftone**
- **Photographs**
 - **Neutral Grays**
 - **Halftone**

General

Use the **General** setting group to control **Edge Control** settings for all color printing.

Edge Control determines how edges are rendered. **Edge Control** consists of three components:

- Adaptive Halftoning, which increases edge sharpness
- Trapping, which reduces the effect of color plane misregistration by slightly overlapping the edges of adjacent objects
- Color Resolution Enhancement Technology (C-REt), which increases the apparent resolution by placing each dot for the smoothest edges

The **Edge Control** option offers four settings:

- **Off.** The **Off** setting turns Trapping, Adaptive Halftoning, and C-REt to **Off**.
- **Light.** The **Light** setting provides minimal trapping. Adaptive Halftoning is set to **On** and C-REt is set to **On**.
- **Normal.** The **Normal** setting provides the default trapping settings. Adaptive Halftoning is set to **On**, and C-REt is set to **On**.
- **Maximum.** The **Maximum** setting provides the most trapping. Adaptive Halftoning is set to **On**, and C-REt is set to **On**.

Neutral Grays

The **Neutral Grays** drop-down menu controls the selection of a device-dependent color table that is embedded in the product firmware. You can adjust the **Neutral Grays** setting independently for text, graphics, or photographs. The following options are available:

- **Black Only.** This option generates neutral colors (grays and black) by using only black toner. This option guarantees that neutral colors do not have a color cast. **Black Only** is the default setting for the **Text** and **Graphics** components.
- **4-Color.** This option generates neutral colors by combining all four colors of toner, which produces smoother gradients and transitions to non-neutral colors. It also produces the darkest possible black. **4-Color** is the default setting for **Photographs**.

Halftone

The **Halftone** setting controls the selection of a product-dependent halftone algorithm that is embedded in the product firmware. Halftoning is a method by which the product mixes the four primary colors (cyan, magenta, yellow, and black) in varying proportions to create millions of colors. The **Halftone** options affect the resolution and clarity of the color on the printed page. You can select **Halftone** settings for text, graphics, and photographs independently.

The following Halftone options are available:

- **Detail.** This is the default option; it is useful for text and graphics that require sharp distinctions among lines or colors, or for images that contain a pattern or a high level of detail. Select this option for sharp edges and detail.
- **Smooth.** This option provides better results for large, solid-filled print areas. It also enhances photographs by smoothing out fine color gradations. Select this option for uniform and smooth area fills.

Color Themes

The Color Themes group box contains the following **RGB color** options, which determines how colors are rendered:

- [Default \(sRGB\)](#)
- [Photo \(sRGB\)](#)
- [Photo \(Adobe RGB 1998\)](#)
- [Vivid \(sRGB\)](#)
- [Custom Profile](#)

Default (sRGB)

Select **Default (sRGB)** for most printing needs. This setting instructs the product to interpret RGB color as sRGB, which is the accepted standard of Microsoft and the World Wide Web Consortium (W3C). Colors are matched to optimize the RGB colors on the screen and to provide vivid images and graphics.

Photo (sRGB)

Select **Photo (sRGB)** to enhance documents in which the content is mainly bitmap images, such as .GIF or .eps files. This setting instructs the product to use the best color matching for rendering sRGB bitmap images. This setting affects only raster data; it has no effect on text or vector-based graphics. Using glossy paper in combination with this setting provides the maximum enhancement.

Photo (Adobe RGB 1998)

Select **Photo (AdobeRGB 1998)** for documents that use the AdobeRGB color space rather than sRGB. For example, some digital cameras capture images in Adobe RGB, and documents that are produced with Adobe PhotoShop use the Adobe RGB color space. When printing from a professional software program that uses Adobe RGB, it is important that you turn off the color management in the software program and allow the product software to manage the color space.

Vivid (sRGB)

The **Vivid (sRGB)** feature instructs the printer to increase the color saturation in the midtones. Less colorful objects are rendered more colorfully. This value is recommended for printing business graphics.

Custom Profile

Select **Custom Profile** when you want to duplicate the printed output from other products or for using special effects. This setting instructs the product to use a custom profile to emulate color output from another product by modifying how color is rendered.

The default custom profile is an emulation of the color table used on the HP Color LaserJet 9500 product. The product holds only one custom profile at a time, so when you download and install another color table, it erases the default color table and installs the new one.

You can download custom profiles from the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/cljcp6015_firmware

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of the following **Printing Preferences** driver tabs:

- **Printing Shortcuts**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Output**
- **Color**

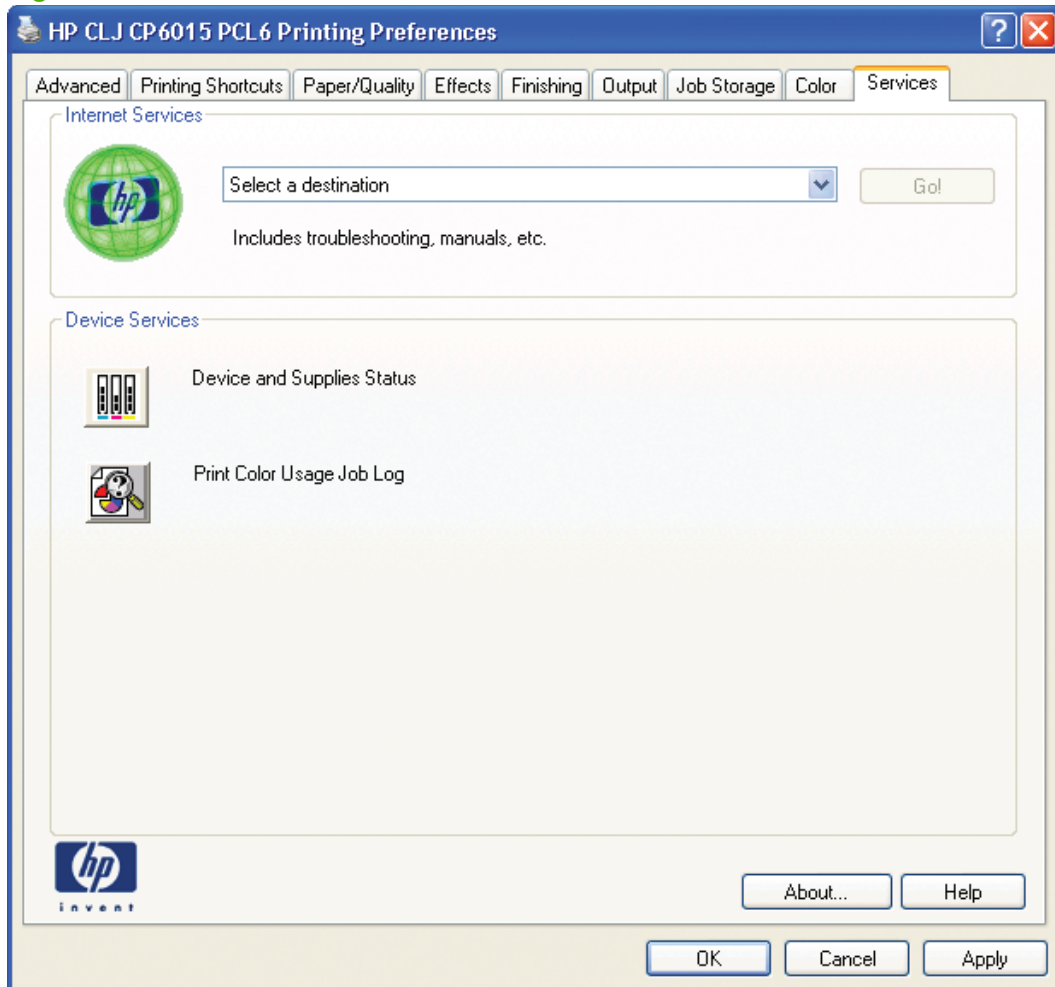
Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When you move the mouse over the document preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Services tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Services** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 147](#).

The **Services** tab is shown in the following figure.

Figure 4-21 Services tab



The **Services** tab contains the following group boxes:

- [Internet Services](#)
- [Device services](#)

Internet Services

The **Internet Services** group box contains the **Select a destination** drop-down menu with the following selections:

- **Online diagnostic tools.** This is the HP Instant Support Web site, where you can find interactive tools and contacts for troubleshooting.
- **Support and troubleshooting.** This is the main Web site for HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product support.
- **Product manuals.** View or download HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product manuals.
- **Check for driver updates.** Automatically check your print drivers to see whether the correct and most up-to-date print drivers are installed.
- **Color printing access/usage.** Find information about enabling and disabling color printing and tracking color print-job usage.
- **Shop for supplies.** Shop online for HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product supplies.
- **Show me how.** This link takes you to Web pages that provide step-by-step instructions for performing specific tasks, such as clearing paper jams or using special paper types.


If you have Internet access, select any of these items and click **Go!** to open the corresponding HP Web page.

Device services

Click the **Device and Supplies** status icon to open the **Device Status** screen of the HP EWS, which shows supply levels and control panel status. For more information, see [HP Embedded Web Server on page 52](#).

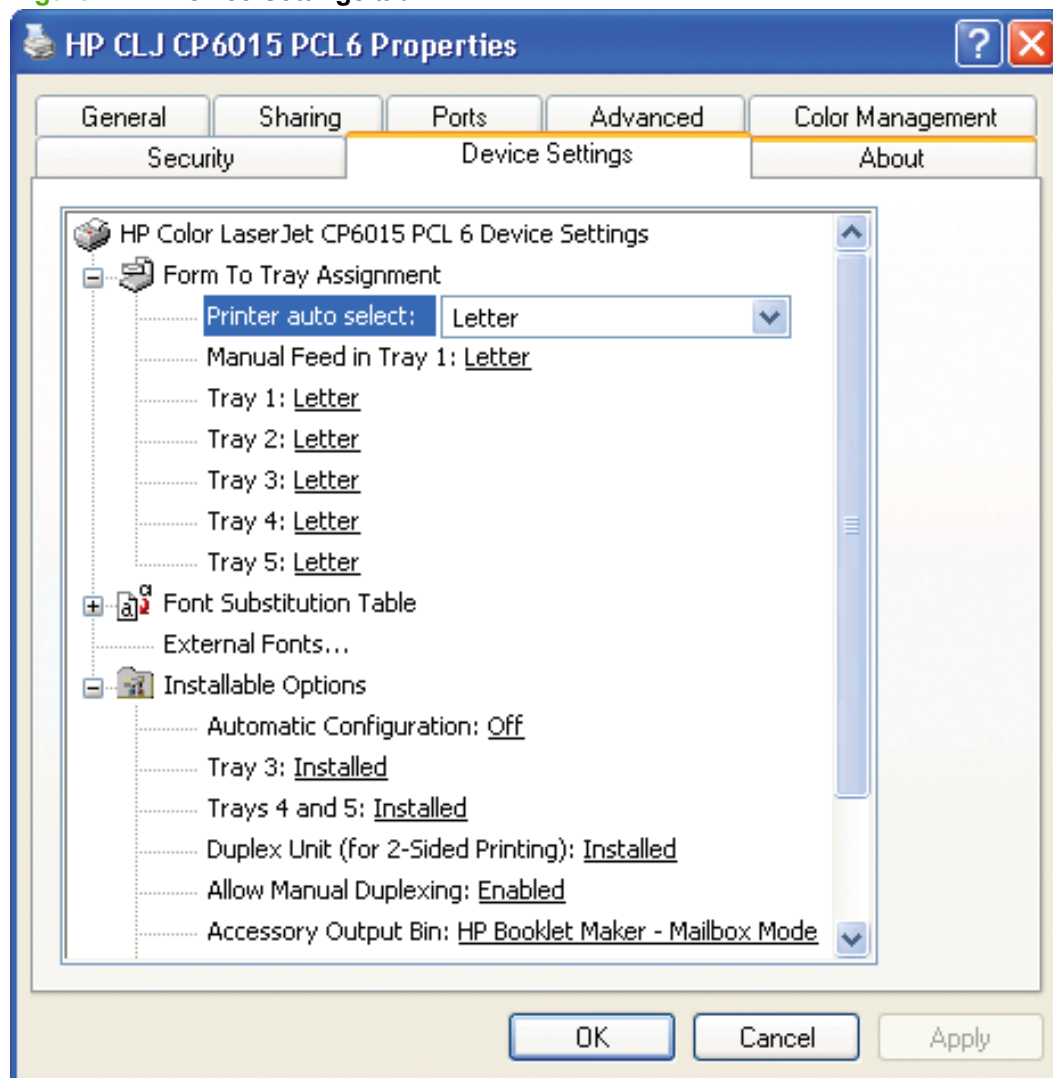
Click the **Print color usage job log** icon to print a page that shows information about users, print jobs, and applications that have printed to the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product.

Device Settings tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Device Settings** tab is located on the **Properties** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Properties driver tabs on page 148](#),

Available options depend on the feature. The following figure shows the **Device Settings** tab.

Figure 4-22 Device Settings tab



The **Device Settings** tab contains controls for paper-handling devices and controls for managing the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product.

The **Device Settings** tab contains the following controls:

- [Form to Tray Assignment](#)
- [Font Substitution Table](#)
- [Installable Options](#)

Form to Tray Assignment

A network administrator can use **Form to Tray Assignment** to specify the paper size in each input tray.

The HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product supports more than one source of paper. You can assign a form (which defines the paper size and margins) to each paper source. When a form is matched to a source, you can select the form when you print. The product prints from the tray to which that form is assigned.

Network administrators can use the **Form to Tray Assignment** setting to specify, in the driver, the paper size that is loaded into each available input tray. The use of forms constrains the choices that are available in the paper-size list on the **Paper/Quality** tab in the **Printing Preferences** driver tabs. This constraint prevents (or reduces the likelihood of) tying up the product with paper-mount messages that occur when users request sizes or types that are not available.

The trays listed in the **Form to Tray Assignment** setting include standard trays and optional accessory trays. Generally, items that are installed separately have a separate **Installable Options** setting.

The input trays listed here are also listed as paper sources on the **Paper/Quality** tab.

Configuring the trays

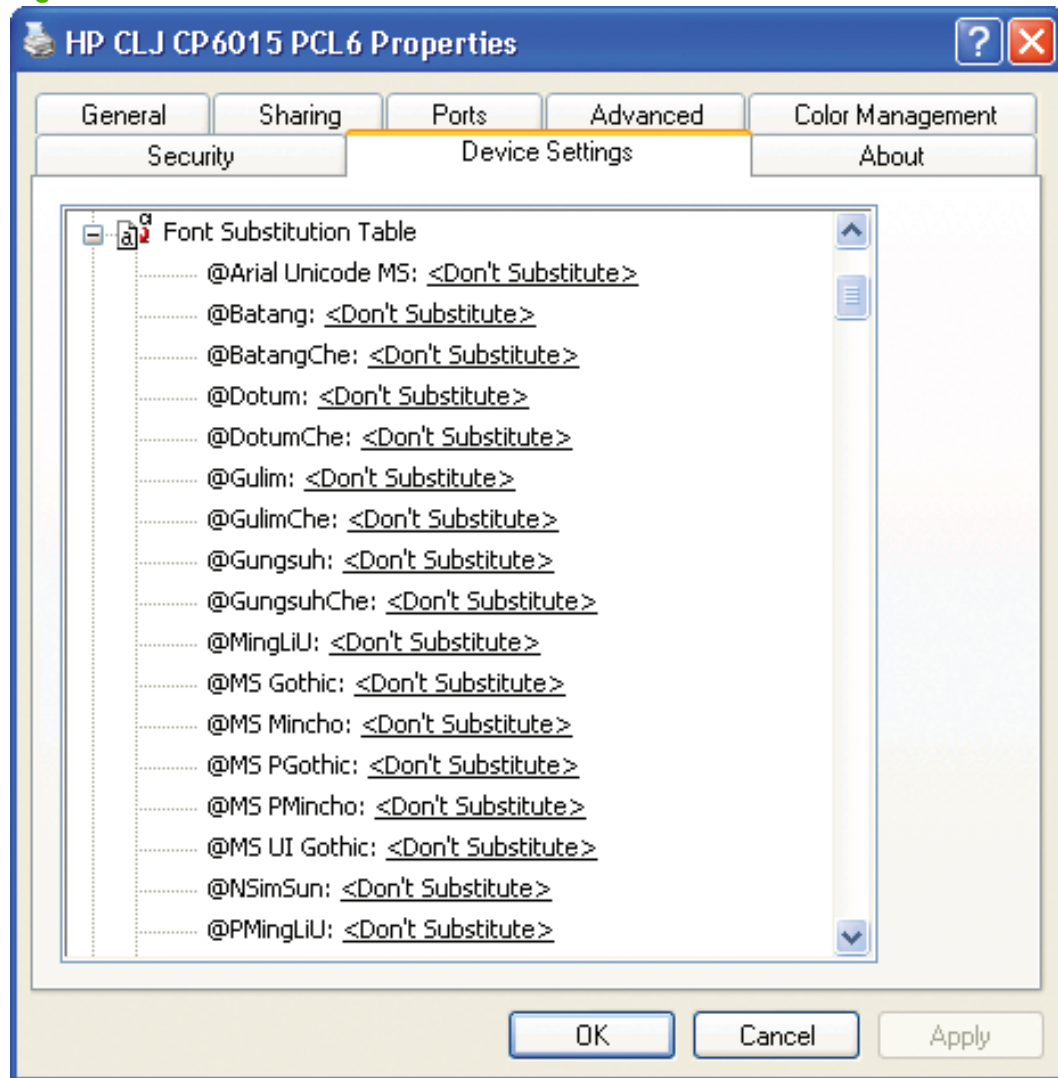
1. Select the appropriate tray in the **Form to Tray Assignment** list.
2. Use the drop-down menu to select the paper size (or form) that is loaded in that tray.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 for the remaining trays.
4. Click **OK** to enable your settings, or, if necessary, click **Cancel** to reconfigure all the trays, and remove the size and type constraints that have been imposed on the **Paper/Quality** tab.

Font Substitution Table

Use the **Font Substitution Table** settings to change the TrueType to printer font mapping and to install and remove external fonts for the product through the **External Fonts** option. External fonts can be soft fonts or DIMM fonts.

Click the **Font Substitution Table** option to open a list of fonts, as show in the following figure. Use the settings to change the TrueType-to-product font mappings.

Figure 4-23 Font Substitution Table

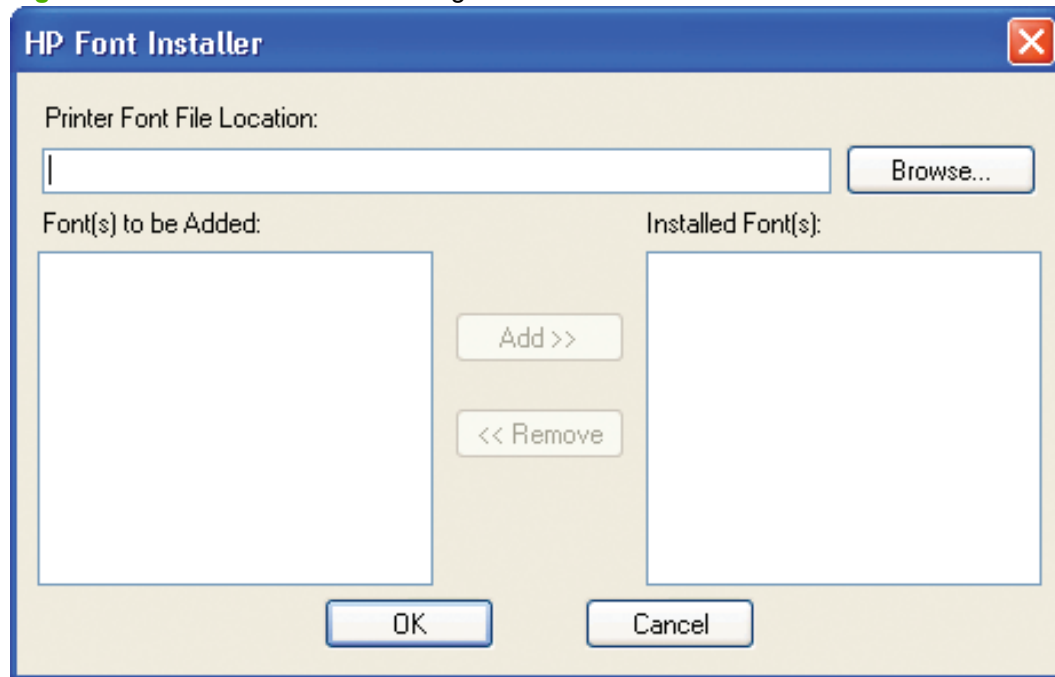


External Fonts

Use the **External Fonts** option to install and remove external fonts for the product. External fonts can be soft fonts or DIMM fonts.

Click the **External Fonts** option to make the **Properties** button available. Click **Properties** to open the **HP Font Installer** dialog box, which is shown in the following figure.

Figure 4-24 HP Font Installer dialog box



Installing external fonts

Follow these steps to install external fonts.

1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

In Windows XP and Windows Server 2003, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.
2. Right-click the name of the product.
3. Click **Properties**.
4. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
5. Click the **External Fonts** option. The **Properties** button appears.
6. Click **Properties**. The **HP Font Installer** dialog box appears.
7. Type the name and path of the font metric file in the **Printer Font File Location** text box, or click **Browse** to locate the file on the computer. The font file names appear in the **Font(s) to be Added** window.
8. Select the fonts that you want to add, and then click **Add**. The fonts are installed and the file names appear in the **Installed Font(s)** window.
9. Click **OK** to close the **HP Font Installer** dialog box.

Removing external fonts

1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

In Windows XP and Windows Server 2003, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.
2. Right-click the name of the product.
3. Click **Properties**.
4. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
5. Click the **External Fonts** option. The **Properties** button appears.
6. Click **Properties**. The **HP Font Installer** dialog box appears. The external fonts that are installed appear in the **Installed Fonts** window.
7. Select the fonts that you want to remove, and then click **Remove**. The fonts are removed.
8. Click **OK** to close the **HP Font Installer** dialog box.

Installable Options

Items under **Installable Options** are automatically populated and their defaults set when the driver is installed.

The HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product has printing options that you can install and configure in this section. The following controls are available:

- [Automatic Configuration](#)
- [Tray 3](#)
- [Trays 4 and 5](#)
- [Duplex Unit \(for 2-Sided Printing\)](#)
- [Allow Manual Duplexing](#)
- [Accessory Output Bin](#)
- [Printer Hard Disk](#)
- [Job storage](#)
- [Job Separator](#)
- [Mopier Mode](#)

Automatic Configuration

Use the **Device Settings** tab to tell the driver about the hardware configuration of the product. If bidirectional communication is enabled in a supported environment, update this tab by selecting the **Update Now** setting in the **Automatic Configuration** setting. The default setting is **Off**. After an automatic configuration, the setting returns to **Off** after the changes are made.

If your environment does not support bidirectional communication, the **Update Now** setting is unavailable, so you must manually configure the options on this tab.

If you have more than one driver installed for the product (for example, the default HP PCL 6 Print Driver and the HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver), the Update Now feature works automatically only on the driver on which it is activated. The other driver will not be updated, and might show the default setting for the specific product model.

Tray 3


This control specifies whether you have tray 3, an additional 500-sheet tray, installed on the product. Tray 3 comes standard on the HP Color LaserJet CP6015x and the HP Color LaserJet CP6015xh product models.

Trays 4 and 5

This control specifies whether you have trays 4 and 5, additional 500-sheet trays, installed on the product. Trays 4 and 5 come standard on the HP Color LaserJet CP6015xh product model.

Duplex Unit (for 2-Sided Printing)

All of the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product models come with a duplex unit installed, except for the HP Color LaserJet CP6015n.

 **NOTE:** The HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product supports smart duplexing. The product uses the smart duplexing feature to detect information on both sides of the print job pages and only runs the pages through the duplexing unit if printable information appears on the second side of the page.

Allow Manual Duplexing

Select **Allow Manual Duplexing** to print on both sides of any supported size and most types of paper (except transparencies, envelopes, and labels). To use this feature, you must reinsert the paper stack into the input tray to print the second side. The product pauses while you make this adjustment.

This setting is enabled by default.

Accessory Output Bin

This control specifies whether you have any accessory output devices installed on your product. The following are available accessory output devices:

- **HP 3-bin Stapler/Stacker Accessory**
- **HP Booklet Maker/Finisher Accessory**

Printer Hard Disk

When this option is installed, the **Job Storage** option and the **Mopier Mode** are enabled in the print driver. Use the **Job Storage** option to store print jobs and then print them later from the control panel. The multiple-original print (mopy) function is an HP-designed feature that produces multiple, collated copies from a single print job.

Job storage

When **Job Storage** is enabled, the product can store print jobs so that you can gain access to those print jobs later at the control panel.

Job Separator

Use this control to specify whether a print job identifier page should be printed between print jobs.

Mopier Mode

The multiple-original print (mopy) function is an HP-designed feature that produces multiple, collated copies from a single print job. Multiple-original printing (mopying) increases performance and reduces network traffic by transmitting the job to the product once, and then storing it in memory or on the hard disk. The remainder of the copies are printed at the fastest speed. All documents that are printed in mopier mode can be created, controlled, managed, and finished from the computer, which eliminates the extra step of using a photocopier.

The HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series supports the transmit-once mopying feature when the **Mopier Mode** setting on the **Device Settings** tab is **Enabled**.

When you use the HP PCL 6 Print Driver, mopying is performed in one of two ways: either through the software or through the product hardware. When mopier mode is enabled, mopying takes place through the product hardware. One copy of a multiple-page print job is transmitted once through the network to the product, together with a printer job language (PJL) command directing the product to make the specified number of copies.

When you disable mopier mode, you are not necessarily disabling multiple collated copies, which the driver can still perform through the software rather than the product hardware (the mopying path that is disabled when you change the **Mopier Mode** setting to **Disabled**). However, a multiple-copy print job that is sent when the mopier is disabled loses the advantage of transmitting the print job once, because the job is sent through the network for each collated copy.

Mopier mode and collation

Mopying and collating print jobs are independent but closely related functions. Mopying, the ability to send original print jobs to the product, is performed by the print driver. Collating can be controlled by either the print driver or the document software program. The mopying mode is selected by default in the driver, and can be disabled by changing the **Mopier Mode** setting on the **Device Settings** tab to **Disabled**.

Control collation through the print driver by selecting or clearing the **Collated** check box on the **Advanced** tab. Click **Copy Count** under the **Paper Output** setting. You can clear the check box, which is available only when the **Copy Count** option is set to more than 1 copy, to allow the software program to control collation.

To receive uncollated multiple copies of a print job, you must clear the **Collated** check box *and* make sure that the software program collation feature is not selected.

The following table shows the relation between mopier mode settings and collation settings in the software program and the driver. The first three columns show the settings; the last column, "Expected result", shows how a 3-page print job would appear.

Table 4-4 Driver mopier mode and collation settings

Mopier mode	Application collation	Driver collation	Expected result
Disabled	Not selected	Not selected	3 copies uncollated
Disabled	Not selected	Selected	3 copies uncollated
Disabled	Selected	Not selected	3 copies collated
Disabled	Selected	Selected	3 copies collated

Table 4-4 Driver mopier mode and collation settings (continued)

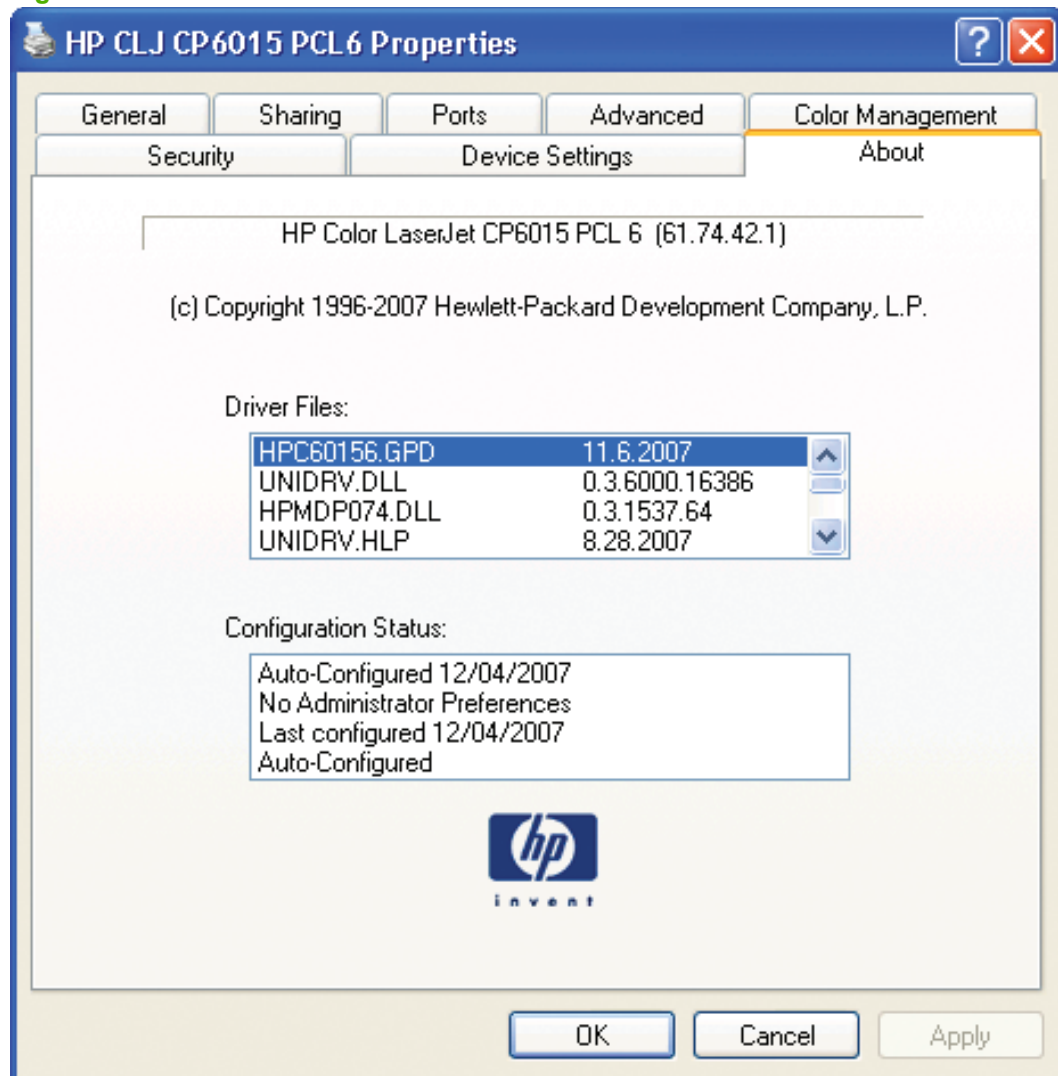
Mopier mode	Application collation	Driver collation	Expected result
Enabled	Not selected	Not selected	3 copies uncollated
Enabled	Not selected	Selected	3 copies uncollated
Enabled	Selected	Not selected	3 copies collated
Enabled	Selected	Selected	3 copies collated

About tab features

 **NOTE:** The **About** tab is located on the **Properties** tab set . For information about how to access these tabs, see [Properties driver tabs on page 148](#).

The **About** tab provides detailed information about driver component versions. It contains an overall build version number (in parentheses after the model name) together with specific information about each of the components. The information varies according to the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series model number, driver, date, and versions. The **About** tab is shown in the following figure.

Figure 4-25 About tab




The **About** tab lists driver installation file names and their version numbers. The **About** tab also indicates whether the driver was autoconfigured, whether administrator preferences were set, the date the driver was last configured, and whether the configuration is auto-configured or user-configured.

The **About** button is also available on most driver screens. The **About** button provides a driver version number and creation date.

5 HP Universal Print Drivers for Windows — PS and PCL 5

Introduction

 **NOTE:** For more information about installation and usage of the HP Universal Print Drivers, go to the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/upd

This chapter describes the features of the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series PostScript (PS) Emulation and PCL 5 Universal Print Drivers for Windows 2000, Windows XP (32-bit and 64-bit), Windows Server 2003 (32-bit and 64-bit), and Windows Vista (32-bit and 64-bit).

You can control print jobs from several places:

- the product control panel
- the software program print dialog box
- the driver user interface

Generally, for features that are duplicated in more than one location (for instance, you can select the paper input tray from any of them), settings that are established in the software program take precedence over print-driver settings. Print-driver settings, in turn, override product control-panel settings.

When you install the printing-system software in Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Vista, the HP PCL 6 Print Driver is installed by default. The HP PS Universal Print Driver can be installed by performing an Advanced Installation, and the HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver can be installed using the Microsoft Add Printer Wizard.

The following sections describe the options that are available on each tab of the HP PS Universal Print Driver and the PCL 5 Universal Print Driver and describes any differences between them. Unless otherwise noted, features described here apply to both drivers.

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Access to print drivers](#)
- [Help system](#)
- [Advanced tab features](#)
- [Printing Shortcuts tab features](#)
- [Paper/Quality tab features](#)

- [Effects tab features](#)
- [Finishing tab features](#)
- [Output tab features](#)
- [Job Storage tab features](#)
- [Color tab features](#)
- [Services tab features](#)
- [Device Settings tab features](#)
- [About tab features](#)

Access to print drivers

Depending on the operating system on which you are installing the print drivers, you can gain access to the print drivers and different print-driver interfaces in several ways.

To gain access to the print-driver settings from within most software programs, follow these steps:

1. Click **File**.
2. Click **Print**.
3. Click **Properties**.

The appearance and names of the driver tabs can vary, depending on the operating system. These driver settings apply only while that software program is open.

You can control the drivers directly from the Printers folder. Here you have access to two sets of driver tabs: the **Printing Preferences** tabs and the **Properties** tabs. The settings that you make on the **Printing Preferences** driver tabs control the driver default settings for each user's profile. Installable options can be configured in **Properties** driver tabs.

Printing Preferences driver tabs

The **Printing Preferences** driver tabs change the default settings that are used across all software programs. To gain access to these tabs, follow these steps:

1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

In Windows XP and Windows Server 2003, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

2. Right-click the product name.
3. Click **Printing Preferences**.

The following **Printing Preferences** print-driver tabs are available:

- **Advanced**
- **Printing Shortcuts**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Output**
- **Job Storage**
- **Color**
- **Services**

Properties driver tabs

This set of tabs controls the driver behavior and driver connections. To gain access to the **Properties** tabs, follow these steps:

1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

In Windows XP and Windows Server 2003, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

2. Right-click the product name.
3. Click **Properties**.

The following **Properties** print-driver tabs are available:

- **General**
- **Sharing**
- **Ports**
- **Advanced**
- **Color Management**
- **Security**
- **Device Settings**
- **About**

Help system

The HP PS Universal Print Driver and the PCL 5 Universal Print Driver include a full-featured Help system to provide assistance with printing and configuration options.


What's this? Help

Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Vista support **What's this?** Help. You can gain access to What's this? Help messages in any of the following ways:

- Right-click a feature or control. A pop-up Help window appears.
- Click the ? button in the upper-right corner of the frame, next to the X, to change the cursor to an arrow with a question mark. When you use this special cursor to select a control, the pop-up Help window for that feature appears.
- Click a feature or control, and then press the **F1** key. The Help window for the currently selected control appears.

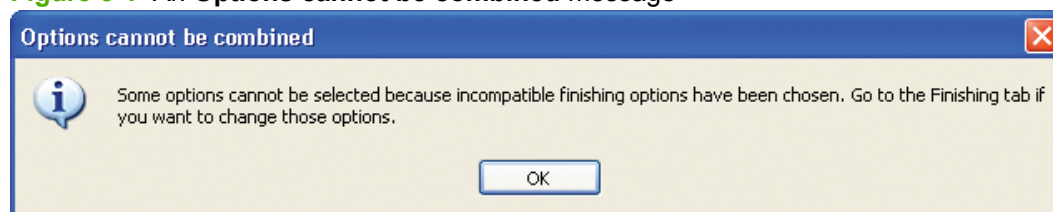
Options Cannot be Combined messages

Options Cannot be Combined (constraint) messages are unsolicited messages that appear in response to specific print-driver selections. These messages alert you to selections that are illogical or impossible given the product capabilities or the current settings of other controls.

 **NOTE:** Constraint messages are limited, and the underlying software architecture might accept some settings that are illogical or impossible for the product to perform. Sending a job with incompatible settings can lead to unexpected results. If print jobs do not print as expected, check the product documentation for the product capabilities.

In Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Vista operating environments, some technically invalid print-driver configurations result in warning messages. Duplexing, for example, is not possible when the Transparency paper type is selected. The following figure shows an **Options cannot be combined** message.

Figure 5-1 An **Options cannot be combined** message



Click **OK**, then go to the **Finishing** tab to resolve the conflicting settings.

Advanced tab features

NOTE: The **Advanced** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 147](#),

Use the **Advanced** tab to change the layout of printed pages. Use this tab to configure special controls that are not commonly used, as well as to control features such as paper size and copies in the driver (although most current software programs support these features in the print dialog box or through the page settings in the software program). The following figure shows the **Advanced** tab.

Figure 5-2 The default appearance of the **Advanced** tab – PS Universal Print Driver

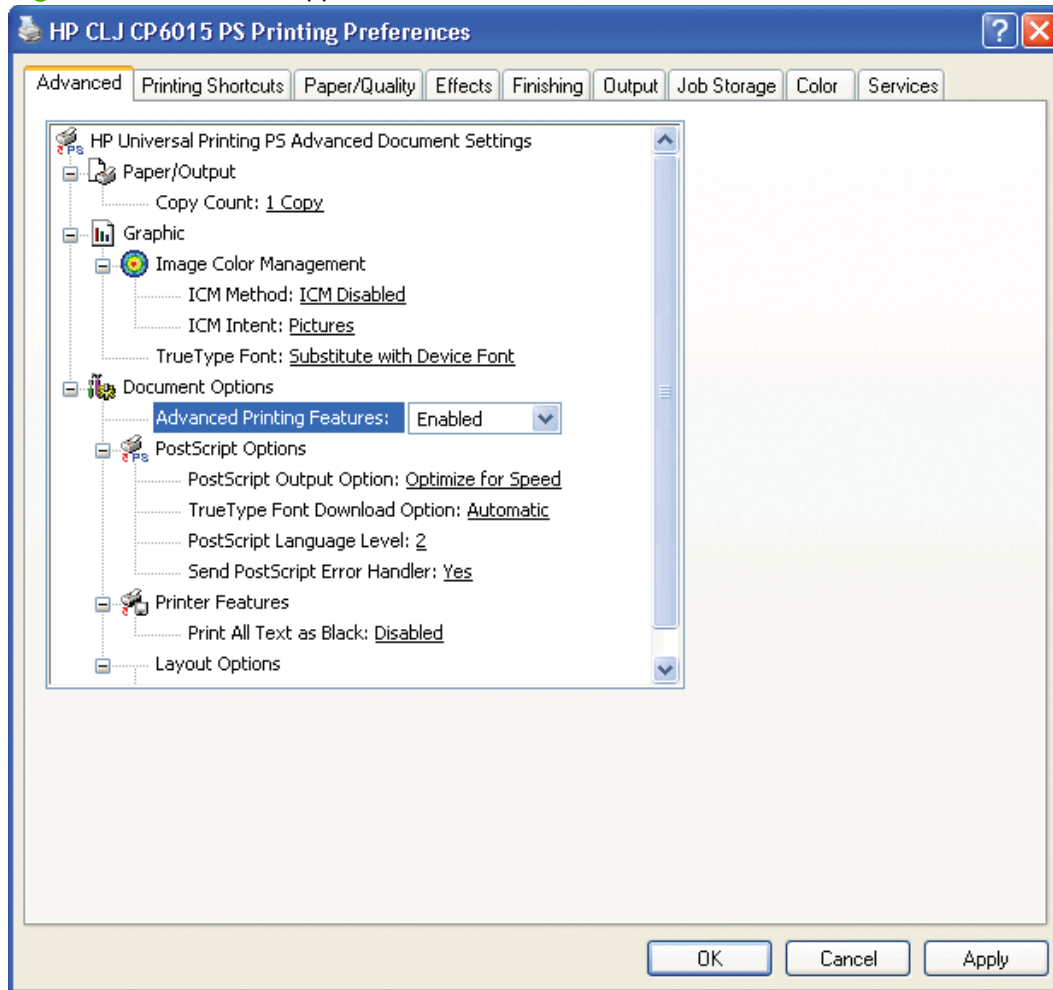
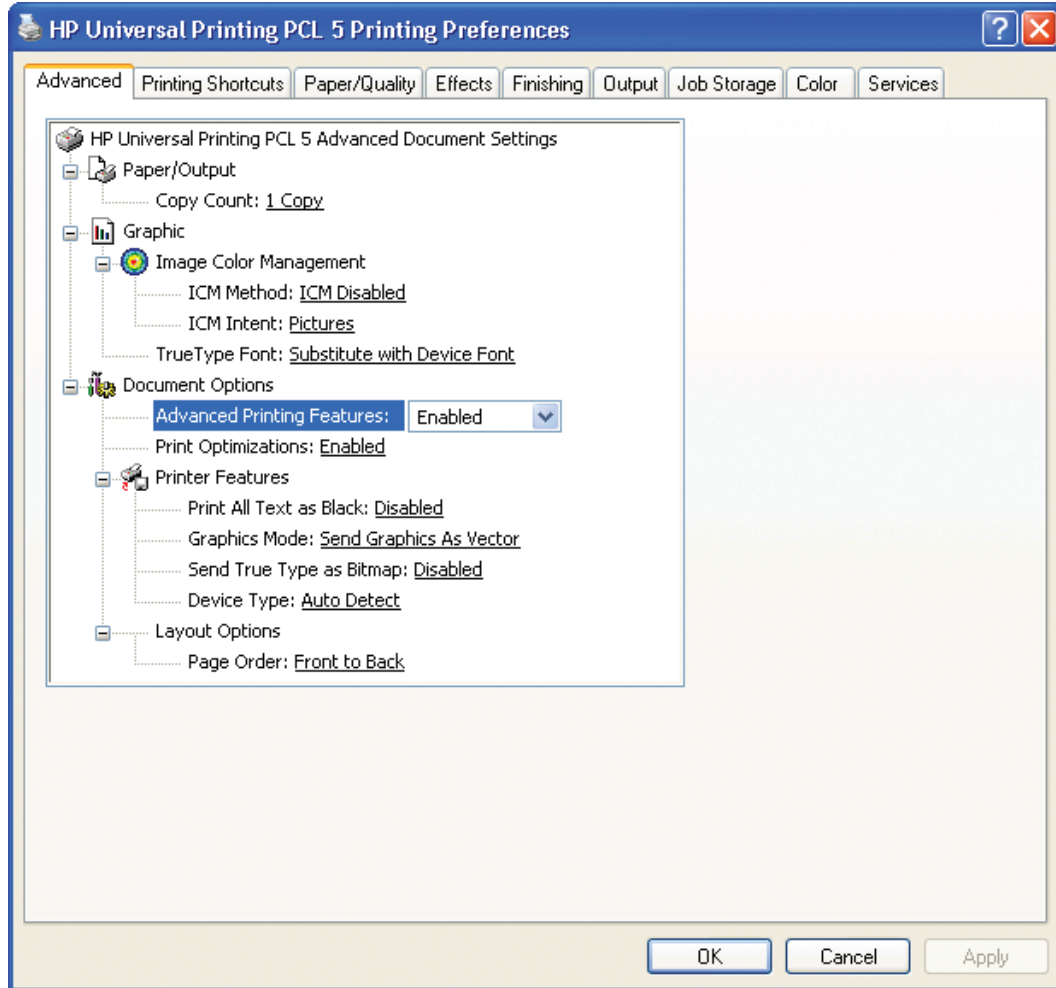


Figure 5-3 The default appearance of the **Advanced** tab – PCL 5 Universal Print Driver



The **Advanced** tab contains the following controls:

- [Paper/Output](#)
- [Graphic](#)
- [Document Options](#)

Paper/Output

The **Paper/Output** setting contains the **Copy Count** setting.

Copy Count

Copy Count specifies the number of copies to print. This driver setting is useful for software programs that do not provide a copy count. If a copy count is available in the software program, set the copy count in the software program.

The number of copies that you request appears in the **Copy Count** option. You can select the number by typing in the text box or by using the up and down arrows to the right of the text box. Valid entries are numbers from 1 to 9999. The copies value will not advance from the maximum number (9999) to 1 when the up arrow is used, or change from 1 to the maximum number (9999) when the down arrow is

used. When you click another group box or leave the **Advanced** tab, invalid entries into the text box (such as non-numerical input, numbers less than 1, or numbers greater than the maximum allowed) are changed to the last valid value that appeared in the text box. The default number of copies is 1.

Because you can set the number of copies that you want from some software programs, conflicts between the software program you are using and the driver can arise. In most cases, the software program and the driver communicate, so that the number of copies set in one location (such as the program) will appear in the other (such as the driver). For some programs, this communication does not take place, and the copies values are treated independently. For these programs, setting 10 copies in the program and then setting 10 copies in the driver will result in 100 copies (10 x 10) being printed. It is recommended that you set the number of copies in the program, whenever possible.

Graphic

The **Graphic** setting contains the following controls:

- **Image Color Management** settings
- **True Type Font** settings

Image Color Management

This control lists the available Image Color Management (ICM) options used for printing color graphics. ICM, a set of calculations for color matching, makes it possible for programs to adjust colors before printing so that the color of images on the screen more closely match the color of those images when they are printed. The following options are available:

- **ICM Method.** The ICM Method setting specifies how to print color graphics.
 - To enable Image Color Management, click the option and then select **ICM Enabled**.
 - If you want the host computer to perform calculations for color matching before it sends the document to the product, click **ICM Handled by Host System**.
 - If you want the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product to perform calculations for color matching, click **ICM Handled by Printer**. In this case, a set of rules for mapping the colors is created and downloaded to the product. The product uses these rules to adjust colors in the document.
 - If you want the product to perform calculations for color matching, click **ICM Handled by Printer by using printer calibration**. Because the set of rules for mapping the colors has already been downloaded to the product (which must be postscript language level 2 or higher), they will not be created or downloaded again. This option is available in the HP PS Universal Print Driver only.
- **ICM Intent.** The ICM Intent setting specifies how color images are created to produce the image that looks best on the printed page.
 - If you are printing a chart or using fully saturated, bright colors, click **Graphics**.
 - For photographs or pictures where the colors blend together, click **Pictures** to maximize the contrast.
 - If your document uses a color that you need to match exactly, and you are sending the document to a product that has that specific color of ink, click **Proof**.
 - If you want to preview the color settings from another product, click **Match**.

True Type Font

Use **Substitute with Device Font** (the default setting) to print documents that contain TrueType fonts by using equivalent printer fonts. This permits faster printing; however, you might lose special characters that the equivalent printer font does not support. Select **Download as Softfont** to download TrueType fonts for printing instead of using printer fonts.

Document Options


The **Document Options** setting contains the following controls:

- [Advanced Printing Features](#)
- [Print Optimizations – PCL 5 Universal Print Driver only](#)
- [PostScript Output Options – PS Universal Print Driver only](#)
- [Printer Features](#)
- [Layout Options](#)

Advanced Printing Features


When the **Advanced Printing Features** setting is **Enabled**, metafile spooling is turned on and **Finishing** tab options such as **Page Order**, **Booklet Layout**, and **Pages per Sheet** are available, depending on your product. For normal printing, leave the **Advanced Printing Features** setting at the default (**Enabled**). If compatibility problems occur, you can disable the feature. However, some advanced printing features might still be available in the print driver, even though they have been disabled. If you select an advanced printing feature in the print driver that has been disabled on the **Advanced** tab, the feature is automatically re-enabled.

Print Optimizations – PCL 5 Universal Print Driver only

 **NOTE:** The **Print Optimizations** setting is available only in the PCL 5 Universal Print Driver. It is not available in the PS Universal Print Driver.

The default setting for **Print Optimizations** is **Enabled**. When this feature is enabled and your document contains overlapping text and graphics, the text that is placed on top of a graphic might not print correctly. If the printed output is not correct, you can disable this feature. When this feature is disabled, print optimization-features, such as substituting device fonts for TrueType fonts and scanning for horizontal and vertical rules, are turned off.

PostScript Output Options – PS Universal Print Driver only

 **NOTE:** **PostScript Output Options** are available only in the PS Universal Print Driver. They are not available in the HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver.

Select one of the following settings in the **PostScript Output Options** drop-down menu:

- **Optimize for Speed.** This is the default setting.
- **Optimize for Portability.** Use this setting to create a file that conforms to the Adobe Document Structuring Conventions (ADSC). Each page of the document is a self-contained object. This option is useful if you want to create a postscript file and print it on a different product.

- **Encapsulated PostScript (EPS).** Use this setting to include the file as an image in another document that is to be printed from another program.
- **Archive format.** Use this option to create a postscript file that you can use later.

Select one of the following settings in the **TrueType Font Download** drop-down menu:

- **Automatic.** This is the default setting. The HP PS Universal Print Driver determines which format is best.
- **Outline.** Select this option if you want to download the TrueType font as a scalable outline font.
- **Bitmap.** Select this option to download the TrueType font as a bitmap font.
- **Native TrueType** If the product is a TrueType rasterizer printer; select this option to download the TrueType font as an outline font.

Select one of the following settings in the **PostScript Language Level** drop-down menu:

- 3
- 2
- 1

The default setting is **2**. It is usually better to select the highest number available, because it provides more features. In some instances, lower numbers might be necessary. For example, if you are printing a file to disk and that file is to be printed by someone with a level-1 product, select **1**.

Select one of the following settings in the **Send PostScript Error Handler** drop-down menu:

- **Yes.** This is the default setting. When an error occurs in the print job, an error page is sent to the product.
- **No.** Select this setting if you do not want an error page to be printed when an error occurs.

Printer Features

The **Printer Features** setting contains the following controls:

- **Print All Text as Black**

The feature is **Disabled** by default. When **Enabled** is selected, the driver prints all text as black regardless of the original document text color. Color text is printed as black, except for white text, which remains white. (White text is a reliable method of printing reverse typeface against a dark background.) This setting does not affect graphic images on the page, nor does it affect any text that is part of a graphic.

- **Graphics Mode – PCL 5 Universal Print Driver only**




NOTE: The **Graphics Mode** settings are available only in the PCL 5 Universal Print Driver. They are not available in the PS Universal Print Driver.

Use the **Graphics Mode** feature to select the graphics-compression method:


- **Send Graphics as Vector.** Sends graphics to the product as a combination of HP-GL/2 and raster images. This setting may produce higher quality graphics output.
- **Send Graphics as Raster.** Sends all graphics to the product as images composed of individual dots. If your file isn't printing correctly, try printing it in this mode.

- **Send TrueType as Bitmap – PCL 5 Universal Print Driver only**

 **NOTE:** The **Send TrueType as Bitmap** settings are available only in the PCL 5 Universal Print Driver. They are not available in the PS Universal Print Driver.

Send TrueType as Bitmap provides an alternative for software programs that have trouble using TrueType fonts for special graphic aspects such as shading, rotation, or slanting. The setting is **Disabled** (off) by default. The TrueType fonts are converted to bitmap soft fonts before downloading. The **Enabled** setting causes the driver to send TrueType fonts to the product as outlines, which retains the standard format (outline) of the fonts.

- **Device Type – PCL 5 Universal Print Driver only**


 **NOTE:** The **Device Type** settings are available only in the PCL 5 Universal Print Driver. They are not available in the PS Universal Print Driver.

The **Device Type** setting lists product-specific printing options. The available options for the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product are **Auto Detect**, **Color**, and **Monochrome**.

Layout Options

The **Layout Options** setting contains the **Page Order** setting.

Page Order specifies the order in which the pages of your document are printed. **Front to Back** prints the document so that page 1 prints first. **Back to Front** prints the document so that page 1 prints last.

 **NOTE:** The page-ordering operation works on whole sheets of paper rather than on individual logical pages. Accordingly, if you set **Pages per Sheet** (on the **Finishing** tab) to be greater than one, the ordering of logical pages on a physical sheet of paper does not change.

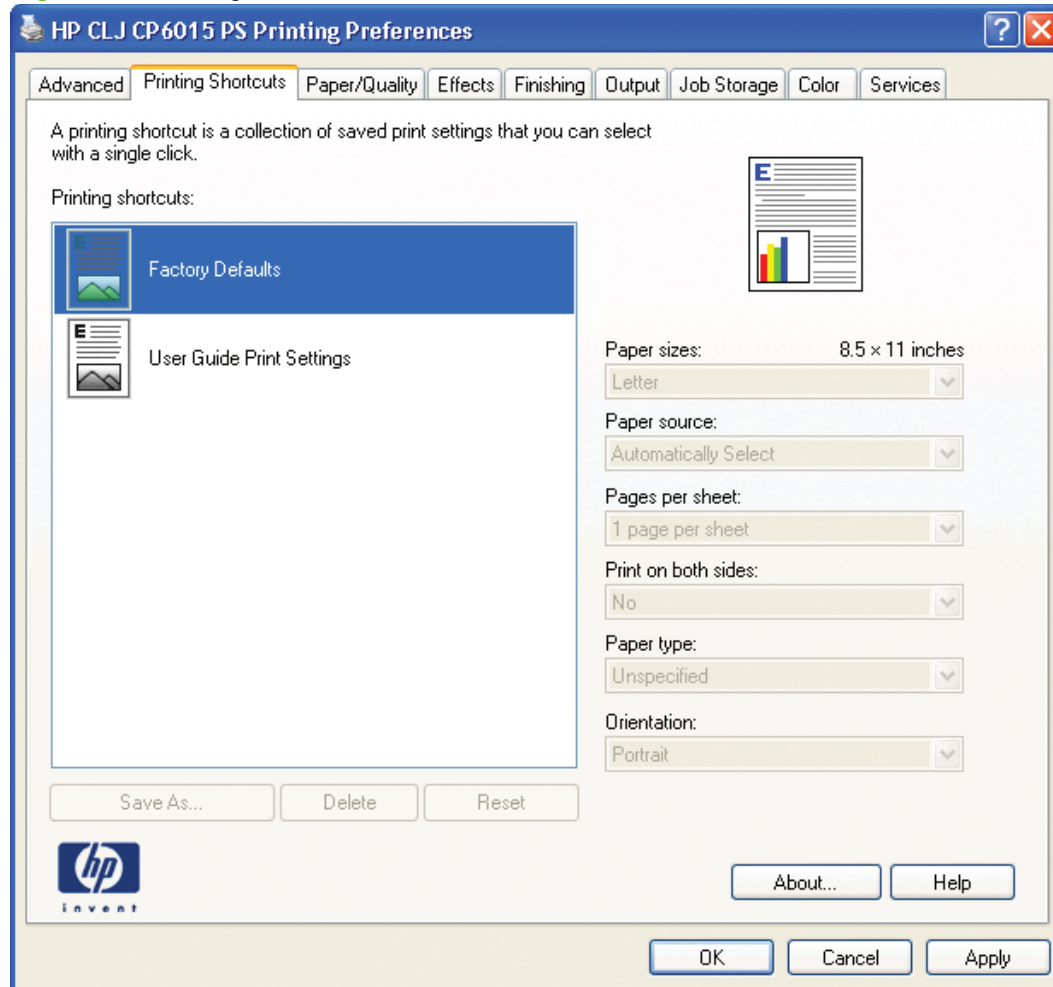
Printing Shortcuts tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Printing Shortcuts** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 147](#).

Use the **Printing Shortcuts** tab to store specific combinations of driver settings for easy use.

The following figure shows the **Printing Shortcuts** tab.

Figure 5-4 Printing Shortcuts tab



The **Printing Shortcuts** tab is a new tab that appears on the HP PS Universal Print Driver and the PCL 5 Universal Print Driver beginning with the HP Color LaserJet CM4730 MFP. In previous drivers, the Print Task Quick Sets appeared in most of the driver tabs, and was used to capture commonly used driver settings. Like Quick Sets, the **Printing Shortcuts** tab saves commonly used driver settings under a shortcut name.

The **Printing Shortcuts** tab contains the following control sets:

- [Factory Defaults](#)
- [User Guide Print Settings](#)
- [Document preview image](#)

Factory Defaults

When **Factory Defaults** is selected, the customizable options are grayed out, locking in those default options.

The **Factory Defaults** are as follows:

- **Paper sizes:** Letter
- **Paper source:** Automatically select
- **Pages per sheet:** 1 page per sheet
- **Print on both sides:** No
- **Paper type:** Unspecified
- **Orientation:** Portrait

User Guide Print Settings

The **User Guide Print Settings** are as follows:

- **Paper sizes:** Legal
- **Paper Source:** Automatically Select
- **Pages per sheet:** 1 page per sheet
- **Print on both sides:** No
- **Paper type:** Plain
- **Orientation:** Portrait

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up.

Move the cursor over the document preview image to change the cursor from an arrow to a gloved hand. Toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Figure 5-5 Document preview image

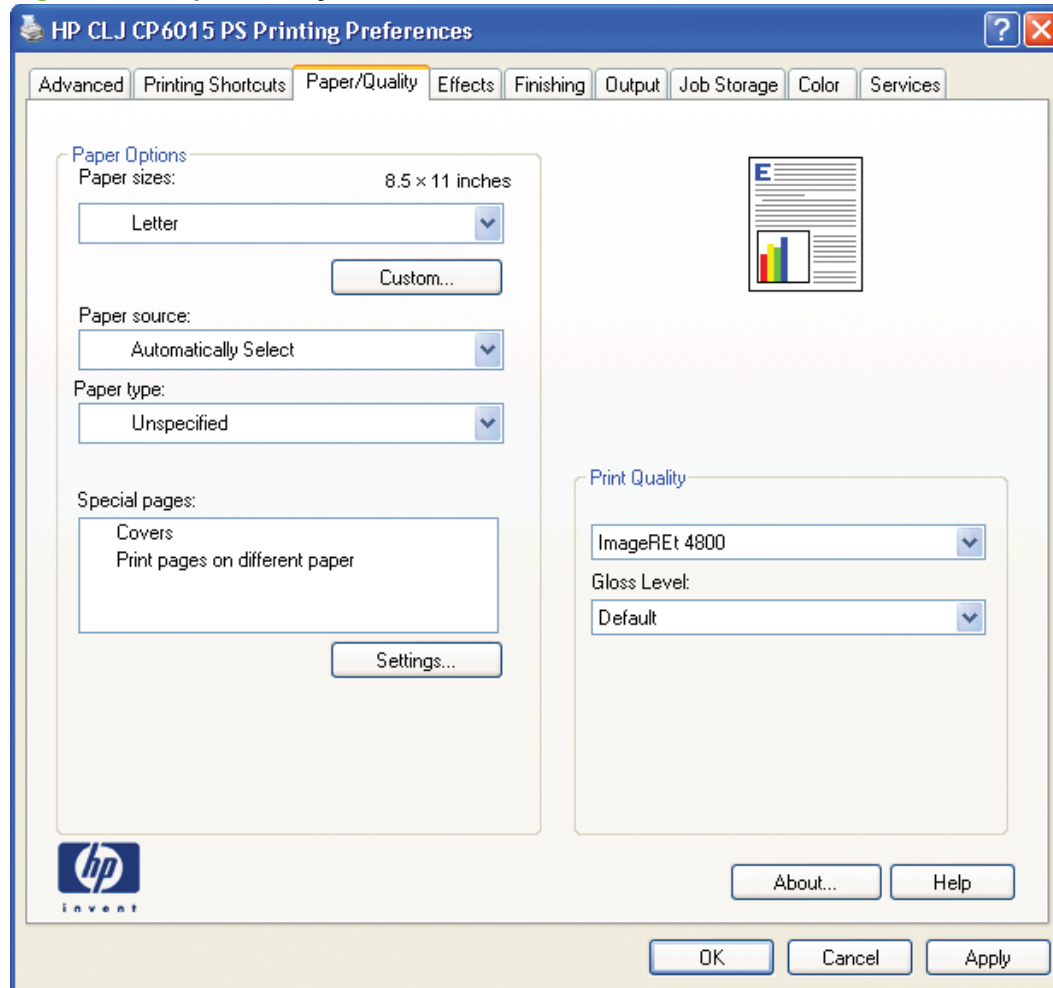


Paper/Quality tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Paper/Quality** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 147](#).

Use the **Paper/Quality** tab to specify the size, type, and source of the paper. You can also use this tab to specify different paper selections for the front cover, first page, other pages, last page, and back cover of the document. The following figure shows the **Paper/Quality** tab.

Figure 5-6 Paper/Quality tab



The **Paper/Quality** tab contains the following control sets:

- [Paper Options](#)
- [Document preview image](#)
- [Print Quality](#)

Paper Options

The settings specified in the **Paper Options** group box on the **Paper/Quality** tab apply to all of the pages of the document. The following figure shows the **Paper Options** group box and the selections that are available by default.

Figure 5-7 Paper Options group box

Paper Options

Paper sizes: 8.5 x 11 inches

Letter

Custom...

Paper source:

Automatically Select

Paper type:

Unspecified

Special pages:

Covers

Print pages on different paper

Settings...

The settings in the **Paper Options** group box are described in the following order:


- [Paper sizes](#)
- [Custom Paper Size](#)
- [Paper source](#)
- [Paper type](#)
- [Special pages](#)

Paper sizes

The **Paper sizes** setting is a drop-down menu that lists all of the supported paper sizes.

When you move the mouse over the dimensions label, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. Click the dimensions label to toggle between English and metric units.

Because paper-size settings in most software programs override driver settings, it is generally best to use the driver to set paper size only when you are printing from software programs that do not include a paper-size setting, such as NotePad, or when you are producing a book or a booklet that does not require different paper sizes.

 **NOTE:** Certain software programs can override the size command and specify different paper sizes within a single document.

When you change the print-driver setting to a paper size that is not currently loaded in the product, a control-panel message appears that prompts you to load the paper size or select another tray.

For information about paper sizes, see [Media attributes on page 336](#).

When the **Settings** under the **Special Pages** section have been changed, the **Paper sizes**, **Paper source**, and **Paper type** menus change also, offering a variety of options. For more information, see [Special pages on page 169](#).

Custom Paper Size

The **Custom Paper Size** dialog box appears when you click **Custom...** on the **Paper/Quality** tab. The **Custom Paper Size** dialog box contains the following options.

Name

Use the **Name** text box to type a new name for a custom paper size.

The name that appears in the **Name** text box depends on the following conditions:

- If a saved custom paper size has been selected from the drop-down menu on the **Paper/Quality** tab, then the **Name** text box shows the name of the selected custom paper size.
- If a standard paper size has been selected on the **Paper/Quality** tab, then the **Name** text box shows the default name of "Custom."
- If a new name has been typed into the **Name** text box for the purpose of saving a new size or renaming an existing size, then that new name will remain in the text box until the new size is saved or the dialog box is closed.

If you type a new name into the **Name** text box, but then do not click **Save**, you can change the width and height values without losing the name. However, if you close the dialog box without clicking **Save**, any unsaved name or size values are lost without warning.

Paper size

The width and height values can be changed by typing numeric strings into the edit boxes in the **Paper Size** group box.

Any entry that is greater than the maximum limits of the width and height control is rounded down to the maximum valid entry, while any entry that is smaller than the minimum limits of the width and height control is rounded up to the minimum valid entry.

If units are in millimeters, the custom paper-size range minimum is the limit rounded up to the nearest whole millimeter. The custom paper-size range maximum is the limit rounded down to the nearest whole millimeter. Any non-numerical entry reverts to the last valid entry. Width and height entries are validated when the focus has changed.

The resolution of each control is 1 millimeter or 1/10 of an inch, depending on the current measurement units.

Units

To change measurement units, click one of the options in the **Units** group box (either **Inches** or **Millimeters**).

Custom width and height control limits

The minimum paper size for the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product is 98.6 x 139.7 mm (3.9 x 5.5 in) and the maximum is 320 x 457.2 mm. The following table summarizes paper size limits for each paper-handling device.

Table 5-1 HP PS Universal Print Driver and HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver custom paper sizes

Tray	Dimensions	Minimum	Maximum
Tray 1 (100-sheet multipurpose)	Width	98.6 mm (3.9 in)	320 mm (12.6 in)
	Length	139.7 mm (5.5 in)	457.2 mm (18.0 in)
Tray 2 (500-sheet)	Width	148.0 mm (5.83 in)	297 mm (11.7 in)
	Length	210.0 mm (8.26 in)	432 mm (17.0 in)
Trays 3-5 (500-sheet)	Width	148 mm (5.8 in)	297 mm (11.7 in)
	Length	210 mm (8.3 in)	432 mm (17.0 in)
Duplexing unit	Width	174.0 mm (6.9 in)	320.0 mm (12.6 in)
	Length	210.0 mm (8.3 in)	457 mm (18.0 in)

Paper source

The **Paper source** setting specifies the source tray to use for printing a document. The list of source trays depends on the product accessories that are installed. Any optional source trays that are installed through the **Device Settings** tab also appear here.

The **Paper source** drop-down menu can contain the following options, depending on what has been installed on the product:

- **Automatically select**
- **Printer Auto Select**
- **Manual Feed in Tray 1**
- **Tray 1** (100-sheet multipurpose tray)
- **Tray 2** (500-sheet tray)
- **Tray 3** (500-sheet tray, HP Color LaserJet CP6015x and HP Color LaserJet CP6015xh only)
- **Tray 4** (500-sheet tray, HP Color LaserJet CP6015xh only)
- **Tray 5** (500-sheet tray, HP Color LaserJet CP6015xh only)

The default setting is **Automatically Select**. When this setting is selected, the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series uses the source tray that supports the paper size that you have selected. If you select a source tray other than **Automatically select**, make sure that the correct paper size is loaded in the source tray. For information about paper sources, see the [Media attributes on page 336](#).

Paper type

The **Paper type** drop-down menu shows the first few paper types that the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series supports and an entry for **More**. Clicking **More** opens the **Type Is** dialog box, which shows all of the paper types that the product supports, listed in the following categories.

- **Unspecified**
- **Everyday <96g**
 - **Plain**
 - **HP Matte 90 g/m2**
 - **Light 60-74 g/m2**
 - **Bond**
 - **Recycled**
- **Presentation 96-130g**
 - **HP Matte 105 g/m2**
 - **HP Matte 120 g/m2**
 - **HP Soft Gloss 120 g/m2**
 - **HP Glossy 130 g/m2**
 - **Mid-Weight 96-110 g/m2**
 - **Heavy 111-130 g/m2**
 - **Mid-Weight Glossy 96-110 g/m2**
 - **Heavy Glossy 111-130 g/m2**
- **Brochure 131-175g**
 - **HP Matte 160 g/m2**
 - **HP Glossy 160 g/m2**
 - **Extra Heavy 131-175 g/m2**
 - **Extra Heavy Glossy 131-175 g/m2**
- **Photo/Cover 176-220g**
 - **HP Matte 200 g/m2**
 - **HP Glossy 220 g/m2**

- **Cardstock 176-220 g/m2**
- **Card Glossy 176-220 g/m2**
- **Other**
 - **Transparency**
 - **Labels**
 - **Letterhead**
 - **Envelope**
 - **Preprinted**
 - **Prepunched**
 - **Color**
 - **Tough Paper**

When you use the default setting, **Unspecified**, the product uses the default paper type, which is usually **Plain**.

No mechanism exists for manually adding custom paper types through the driver. Custom types can be added only by using the bidirectional communication mechanism, so they must already exist in the product when the bidirectional query occurs. If bidirectional communication is enabled, then the information an updated list of paper types is returned. If bidirectional communication is not enabled, then the driver looks for custom paper types that have been saved from a previous bidirectional communication query, and uses those. Otherwise, no custom paper types are available through the driver.

The default setting is **Unspecified**, and the program selects the paper type. If you select a different setting, make sure that the correct paper type is loaded in the tray that you selected in the **Paper source** setting. For more information about paper types, see [Media attributes on page 336](#).

When you change the print-driver setting to a paper type that is not currently loaded in the product, a control-panel message appears that prompts you to load the paper type or select another tray.

Special pages

To specify special pages to be used, click the **Settings** button under **Special Pages**.


Covers

To use specify cover settings, click **Covers** on the **Special Pages** window.

Use the **Covers** options to include a blank or preprinted cover on a document, or to include a front/back cover from a source tray that is different from the one used for the remainder of the document.

The following are the **Covers** options:

- **Add a blank or preprinted cover:** Select which cover is customized: **Front**, **Back**, or **Both**.
- **Paper source:** The **Paper source** setting specifies the source tray to use for adding a front and/or back cover to the document. The list of source trays depends on the accessories that are installed. Any optional trays that are installed through the **Device Settings** tab also appear here.
- **Paper type:** The **Paper type** setting specifies the paper size to use for front and/or back covers. Changes made to the **Paper type** setting here override any previous **Paper type** settings using the same paper source.

 **NOTE:** The **Back Cover** options are not available when the **Booklet Printing Layout** setting is enabled on the **Finishing** tab. The back cover setting is unavailable, because this page would be printed in the middle of a booklet.

NOTE: The same size of paper will be used for the entire print job.

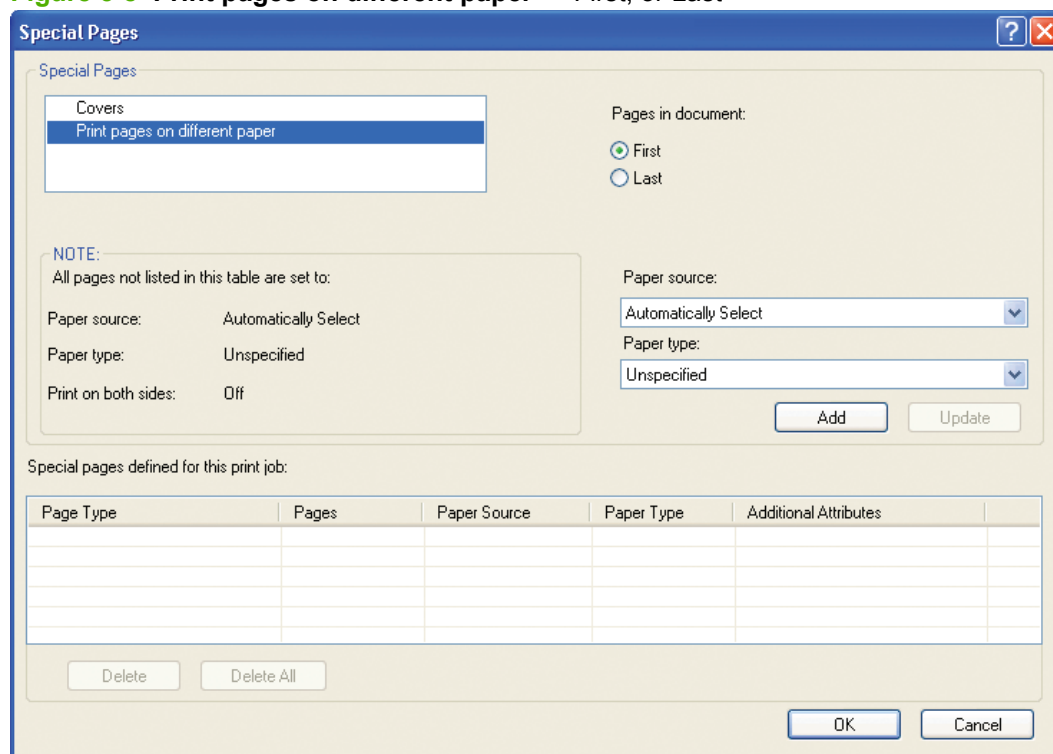
When you change the type and source of the paper and covers, the settings remain configured until you close the software program.

Print pages on different paper

Use the **Print pages on different paper** options to select an alternative paper type or source for the first or last page of a document.

The following figure shows the **Print pages on different paper** settings and options.

Figure 5-8 Print pages on different paper — First, or Last



Special Pages

Special Pages

Covers

Print pages on different paper

Pages in document:

☒ First

☐ Last

NOTE:
All pages not listed in this table are set to:

Paper source: Automatically Select

Paper type: Unspecified

Print on both sides: Off

Paper source: Automatically Select

Paper type: Unspecified

Add Update

Special pages defined for this print job:

Page Type	Pages	Paper Source	Paper Type	Additional Attributes

Delete Delete All

OK Cancel

The following are the **Print pages on different paper** options:

- **Pages in document.** Select which pages are customized: the **First** page, or the **Last** page.
- **Paper source:** The **Paper source** setting specifies the source tray to use for printing a document. The list of source trays depends on the accessories that are installed. Any optional trays that are installed through the **Device Settings** tab also appear here.
- **Paper type:** The **Paper type** drop-down menu shows all of the paper types that the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series supports.



NOTE: The same type of paper is used for the entire print job.

When you change the type and source of the paper and covers, the settings remain configured until you close the software program.

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of the following **Printing Preferences** driver tabs:

- **Printing Shortcuts**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Output**
- **Color**

Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When you move the mouse over the document preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Print Quality

The **Print Quality** group box contains the following controls:

- [Print Quality drop-down menu](#)
- [Gloss Level](#)

Print Quality drop-down menu

Use this control to select a print quality. Numeric values are in dots per inch (dpi). ImageREt settings precisely control colors by combining up to 4 colors within a single dot and varying the amount of toner in a given area to create millions of smooth colors, sharp images, and crisp text.

The **Print Quality** drop-down menu contains the following resolution options.

- **ImageREt 4800.** This setting produces 4800 dpi color laser-class print quality. This setting is selected by default.
- **1200 x 600.** This setting is the best option for printing line images and fine text. It provides laser-class print quality, but is slower than ImageREt 3600.

Gloss Level

The HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series is capable of printing exceptionally high gloss levels on a wide range of paper types. However, on some paper types, the gloss level might noticeably decrease from page to page for a particular print job.

The following adjustments can be set by the user in order to maintain exceptionally high gloss level on all printed pages.

Gloss Level driver settings

For users who normally print general office documents where high gloss levels are not critical but need high gloss for particular print jobs. Users can select the appropriate gloss option for their document through the driver

On the **Paper/Quality** tab, the following **Gloss Level** settings are available:

- **Default.** Uses printer settings for gloss.
- **Best.** High gloss on all pages.
- **Standard.** Uses the standard gloss setting. This setting provides the fastest print performance, but also produces some gloss variation over time.

Select **Best** for glossy print jobs such as photos or brochures if the gloss finish decreases after the first page is printed. The **Best** setting reduces printing performance on the print job for which it was selected, but it does not impact product performance for other users.

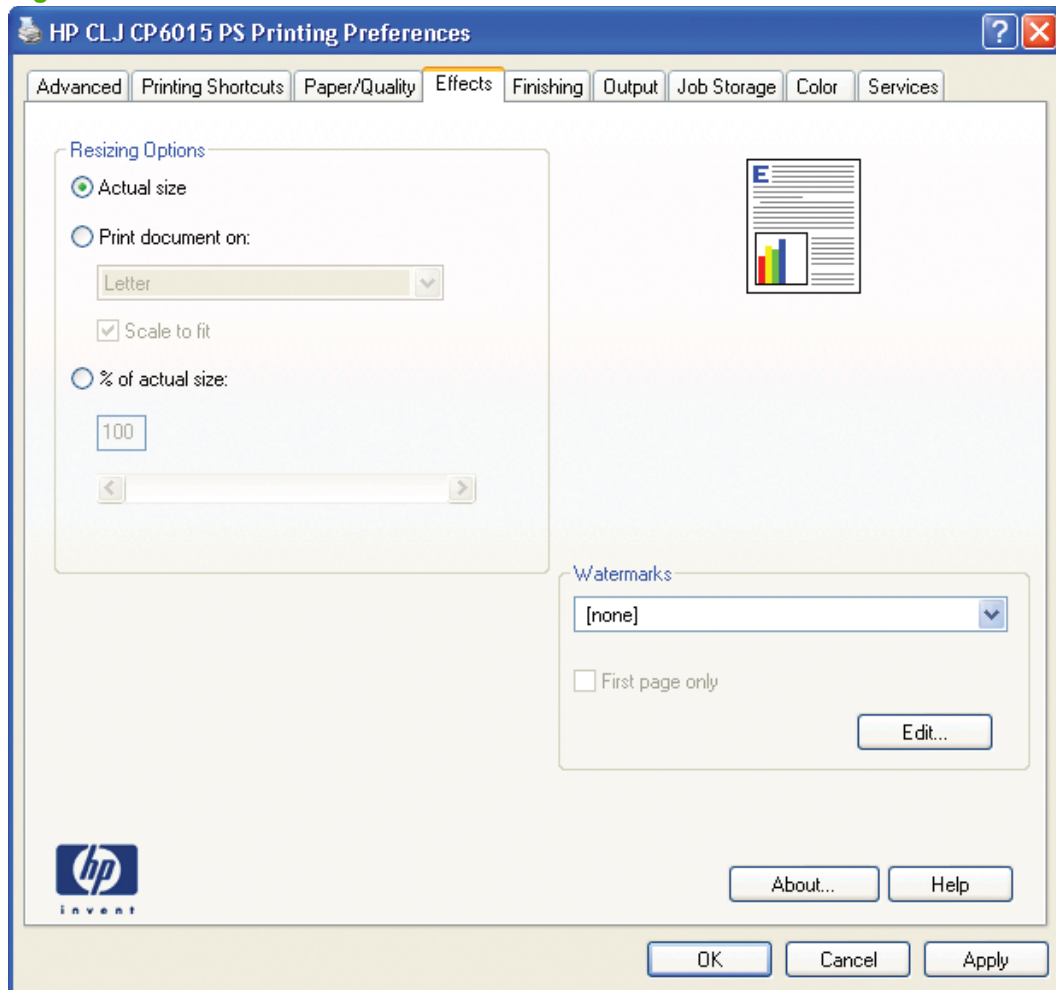
See the *HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series User Guide* for control panel options and further information about maintaining high gloss levels.

Effects tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Effects** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set . For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 147](#).

Use the **Effects** tab to create unique paper effects such as scaling and watermarks. The following figure shows the **Effects** tab.

Figure 5-9 Effects tab



The **Effects** tab contains the following controls:

- [Resizing Options](#)
- [Document preview image](#)
- [Watermarks](#)

Resizing Options

The **Resizing Options** group box consists of the following controls:

- **Actual Size** (default)
- **Print Document On** setting

- **Scale to Fit** option
- **% of Actual Size** setting

Actual Size

Actual Size is the default setting. It prints the document without changing the document size.

Print Document On

Click the **Print Document On** option to format the document for one paper size and then print the document on a different paper size, with or without scaling the image to fit the new paper size.

The **Print Document On** control is disabled by either of the following conditions:

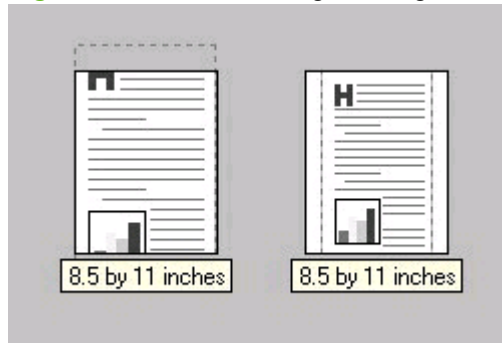
- The **% of Actual Size** value is not 100.
- The **Pages per Sheet** value (on the **Finishing** tab) is not 1.

When **Print Document On** is selected, the drop-down menu shows the paper sizes on which you can print. The list contains all of the standard paper sizes that the selected paper source supports and any custom sizes that you have created. When **Print Document On** is selected, **Scale to Fit** is automatically selected. Clear this check box if you do not want your document reduced or enlarged to fit on the selected paper.

Scale to Fit

The **Scale to Fit** option box specifies whether each formatted document page image is scaled to fit the target paper size. By default, **Scale to Fit** is selected when **Print Document On** is selected. If the setting is turned off, then the document page images will not be scaled, and are instead centered at full size on the target paper. If the document size is larger than the target paper size, then the document image is clipped. If it is smaller, then it is centered within the target paper. The following figure shows preview images for a document formatted for Legal-size paper with the **Print Document On** check box selected, and the target size specified as **Letter**.

Figure 5-10 Preview images – Legal on Letter; **Scale to Fit** off (left) and on (right)



When the size for which the document is formatted (that is, the logical size) differs from the target size, the preview image uses a dashed gray line to show the boundaries of the logical page in relation to the target paper size.

% of Actual Size

The **% of Actual Size** option provides a slider bar to use for scaling the percentage setting. The default setting in the entry box is 100% of actual size. Actual size is defined as the paper size that is selected

within the driver or what the driver receives from the software program (if the software program does not negotiate the paper size with the driver). The driver scales the page by the appropriate factor and sends it to the product.

The limits of the range are from 25% to 400%, and any values outside the range are adjusted to those limits as soon as the focus is removed from the control (that is, when the **Tab** key is pressed or another control is selected).

Any change to the scale also changes the page preview, which increases or decreases from the upper-left corner of the preview.

The slider bar controls the scale directly. The value in the edit box changes as the slider-bar indicator is dragged, and the document preview image is updated to the new image scale. Each click on the arrows increases or decreases the scale by 1%. Each click on the slider bar affects the scale by 10%.

You cannot achieve an exact value by dragging the slider-bar indicator. Instead, either use the slider-bar indicator to approximate the value that you want and then use the arrows to refine the value, or type the value into the entry box.

The following settings disable **% of Actual Size**:

- **Print Document On** (on the **Effects** tab) is selected
- **Pages per Sheet** (on the **Finishing** tab) is not 1

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of the following Printing Preferences driver tabs:

- **Printing Shortcuts**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Output**
- **Color**

Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When you move the mouse over the document preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Watermarks

Use the **Watermarks** feature to select a watermark, create your own custom watermarks (text only), or edit an existing watermark. The following watermarks are preset in the driver:

- **(none)**
- **Confidential**

- **Draft**
- **SAMPLE**

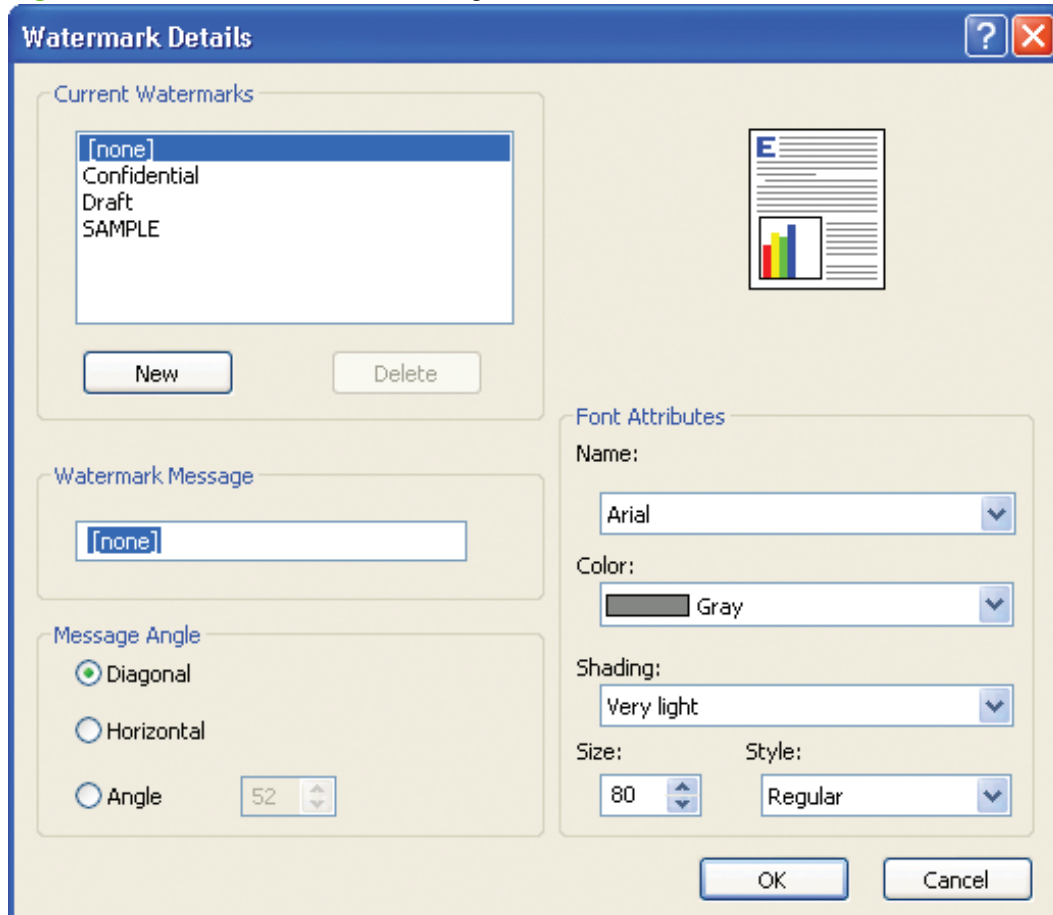
The drop-down menu shows alphabetically sorted watermarks that are currently available on the system, plus the string "(none)," which indicates that no watermark is selected. This is the default setting. Any watermark that is selected from this list appears in the preview image.

When the **First Page Only** check box is selected, the watermark is printed only on the first page of the document. The **First Page Only** check box is disabled when the current watermark selection is "(none)."

Watermarks are applied to logical pages. For example, when **Pages per Sheet** is set to "4" and **First Page Only** is turned off, four watermarks appear on the physical page (one on each logical page).

Click **Edit**, and the **Watermark Details** dialog box appears.

Figure 5-11 Watermark Details dialog box



The dialog box shows a preview image and provides options for creating a new watermark and controlling the message angle and font attributes.

Click **OK** to accept all of the changes that are made in the **Watermark Details** dialog box. However, clicking **Cancel** does not cancel all of the changes. If you make changes to a watermark and then select a different watermark or click **New**, all of the changes are saved, and only the current, unsaved changes can be canceled.

Current watermarks

The **Current Watermarks** group box contains a list of available watermarks, both predefined watermarks that are available in the driver and any new watermarks that you have created.

To create a new watermark, click **New**. The new watermark appears in the **Current Watermarks** list and in the **Watermark Message** text box as "Untitled" until you name it. The name that you type in the **Watermark Message** field appears in the **Current Watermarks** group box in the **Watermark Details** dialog box and in the **Watermarks** group box on the **Effects** tab.

To name the new watermark, type the selected watermark text in the **Watermark Message** text box.

To delete a watermark, select the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list and click **Delete**. A warning appears asking whether you are sure you want to delete the selected item. Click **Cancel** if you want to keep the watermark. Click **OK** to delete the selected watermark.



NOTE: You can have no more than 30 watermarks in the **Current Watermarks** list at one time. When you reach the limit of 30 watermarks, the **New** button is disabled.

To edit an existing watermark, select the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list. If you change the **Watermark Message** for that watermark, you are, in effect, creating a new watermark.

Watermark Message

The **Watermark Message** is also the name that identifies the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list, except when more than one watermark has the same message. For example, you might want several different watermarks with the message DRAFT, each with a different typeface or font size. When this occurs, the string is appended with a space, a pound sign, and a number (for example, **Draft #2**). When a number is added, the number two is used first, but if the resulting name is also in the list, then the number increases until the name is unique (**Draft #3**, **Draft #4**, and so on).

Message Angle

Use the controls in the **Message Angle** group box to print the watermark in different orientations on the page. All settings center the watermark string within the page; the selection of a particular setting affects only the angle of the string placement. The following settings are available:

- **Diagonal**. This is the default setting. Select this setting to place the text along a line that spans the lower-left to upper-right corners of the page.
- **Horizontal**. Select this setting to place the text along a line that spans the mid-left and mid-right edges of the page.
- **Custom**. Select this setting to place the text at the specified angle across the page. Use the numeric spin box to select the angle.

Font Attributes

Use the controls in the **Font Attributes** group box to change the font and the shading, size, and style of the font.

The **Font Attributes** group box contains the following controls:

- **Name**

The **Name** drop-down menu lists fonts that are currently installed on the system. The default is language-dependent.

- **Color**

The **Color** drop-down menu contains the following selections:

- **Gray**
- **Red**
- **Yellow**
- **Green**
- **Cyan**
- **Blue**
- **Magenta**

- **Shading**

The default **Shading** setting for new and preset watermarks is **Very Light**. The following range of shades is available from the **Shading** drop-down menu:

- **Lightest**
- **Very Light** (default)
- **Light**
- **Medium Light**
- **Medium**
- **Medium Dark**
- **Dark**
- **Very Dark**
- **Darkest**

These values represent the intensity of the gray that is used. Select **Light** to produce a lightly saturated gray watermark. Select **Lightest** to produce the lightest shade of watermark. Select **Darkest** to produce a black watermark.

- **Size**

Font sizes from 1 to 999 points are available from the **Size** menu. The default point size is language-dependent.

- **Style**

The following settings are available:

- **Regular**
- **Bold**
- **Italic**
- **Bold Italic**

The default **Style** setting for new and preset watermarks is **Regular**.

Default watermark settings

The following table shows **Font Attribute** settings for new and preset watermarks.

Table 5-2 Font Attribute settings for new and preset watermarks

Setting	New watermark	Preset watermark
Name	Arial	Varies by language
Color	Gray	Gray
Shading	Very Light	Very Light
Size	80	Varies by language
Style	Regular	Regular

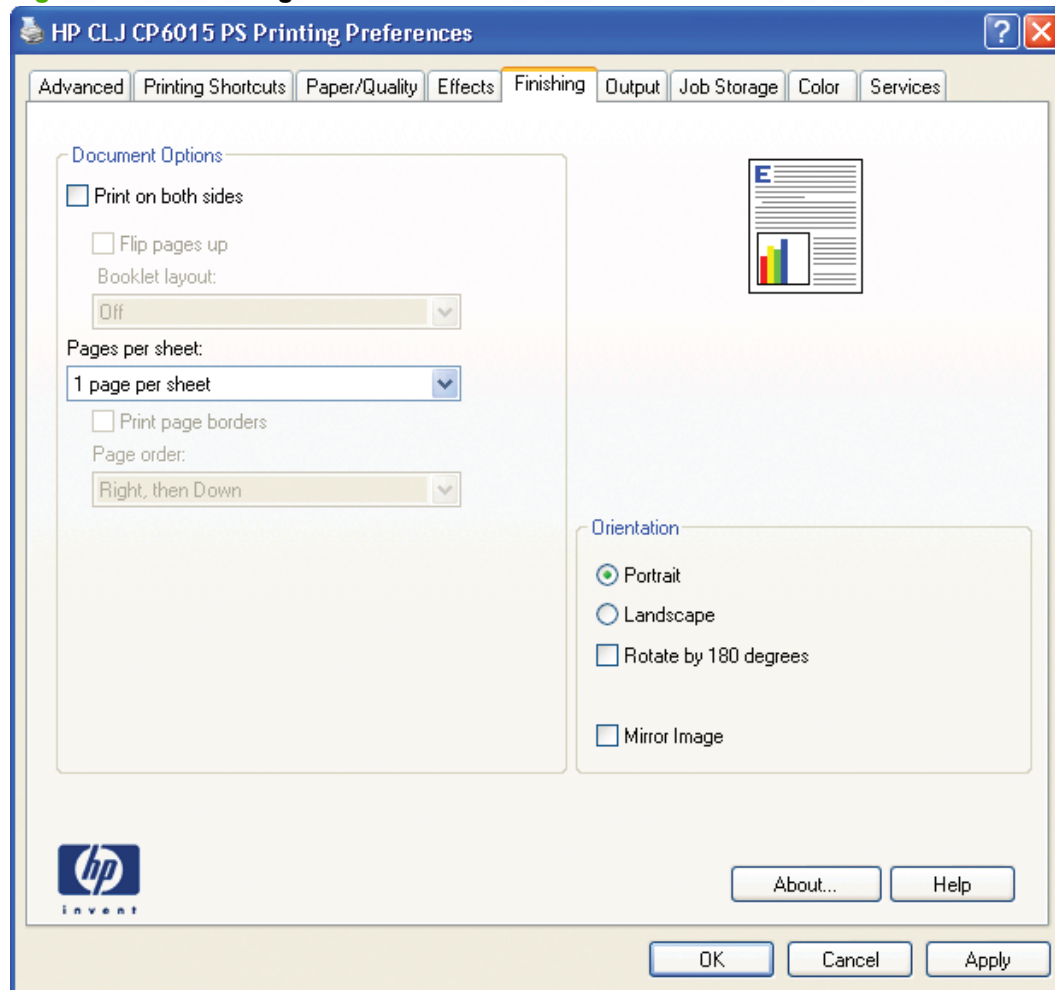
Click **OK** to accept all of the changes that have been made in the **Watermark Details** dialog box. Clicking **Cancel** does not cancel all of the changes. If you make changes to a watermark and then select a different watermark or click **New**, all of the changes are saved, and only the current, unsaved changes can be canceled.

Finishing tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Finishing** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 147](#).

Use the **Finishing** tab to print booklets and control the paper output. The following figure shows the **Finishing** tab.

Figure 5-12 Finishing tab



The **Finishing** tab contains the following controls:

- [Document Options](#)
- [Document preview image](#)
- [Orientation](#)

Document Options

The **Document Options** group box contains the following controls:

- [Print on Both Sides](#)
- [Flip Pages Up](#)

- [Booklet layout](#)
- [Pages per Sheet](#)
- [Print Page Borders](#)
- [Page Order](#)

Print on Both Sides



NOTE: This feature is called **Print on Both Sides (manually)** for the HP Color LaserJet CP6015n because this model does not include an automatic duplex unit. For all other product models, this feature is called **Print on Both Sides**.

The default setting for the **Print on Both Sides** option is off (not selected). **Print on Both Sides** is available when the following conditions exist:

- **Paper type** on the **Paper** tab is set to any paper type *except for* the following types:
 - **Labels**
 - **Color Laser Transparency**
- **Paper sizes** is set to any paper size *except for* the following sizes:
 - **Envelope #10**
 - **Double Postcard (JIS)**
 - **Envelope #9**
 - **Envelope Monarch**
 - **Envelope B5**
 - **Envelope C5**
 - **Envelope C6**
 - **Envelope DL**

Print on both sides automatically

The duplexing unit in the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product prints on two sides of a sheet of paper when the **Print on Both Sides** option is specified in the print job. The HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product comes with a duplexing unit installed in the following models:

- HP Color LaserJet CP6015dn
- HP Color LaserJet CP6015de
- HP Color LaserJet CP6015x
- HP Color LaserJet CP6015xh

These product models support smart duplexing. The smart duplexing feature increases printing performance by preventing one-page print jobs or single-sided pages of a duplexed print job from going through the duplexing unit even when the duplexing feature has been selected in the driver.

All paper types support the smart duplexing feature, except for paper types that cannot be printed on both sides (such as labels, transparencies, and envelopes) and the following paper types:

- Prepunched
- Preprinted
- Letterhead

When the paper type is set to **Unspecified**, the smart duplexing feature is disabled.

To achieve the best print quality when printing on the second side of the page, the product needs to make adjustments to its print modes. When you select a paper type, you are, in effect, instructing the product to use a group of settings (such as fuser temperature and print speed) to print the paper with the best possible quality. This group of settings is known as print mode. A different print mode is used with each paper type. Print-mode adjustments for the second side of a duplexed page are automatic.

Print on both sides manually

- **Manually Print on 2nd Side** is *not* selected

Select the **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** check box to print on the second side of the paper for the HP Color LaserJet CP6015n product model, which does not have a duplexing unit installed. Also select Print on Both Sides (Manually) on the other HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product models for paper types that are not available when using the automatic duplexing unit, such as cardstock and thick paper.

Manually printing on the second side of a page is available when you are using the HP PCL 6 driver. If a duplexing unit is installed and manual duplexing is enabled in the driver, the product automatically prints on both sides of paper types that are supported for automatic duplexing (Letter, A4, Legal, and 8.5 x 11 only), and forces manual printing on both sides for paper types that are not supported.

Select the paper type that corresponds to the paper that you are using for the print job. The following paper types have a different print modes when you manually print on the second side:

- Plain
- Preprinted
- Letterhead
- Prepunched
- Bond
- Recycled
- Colored
- Rough



NOTE: To make the **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** check box available in the document options, select the **Allow Manual Duplexing** option on the **Device Settings** tab in the print-driver **Properties** tab set. See [Installable Options on page 209](#).

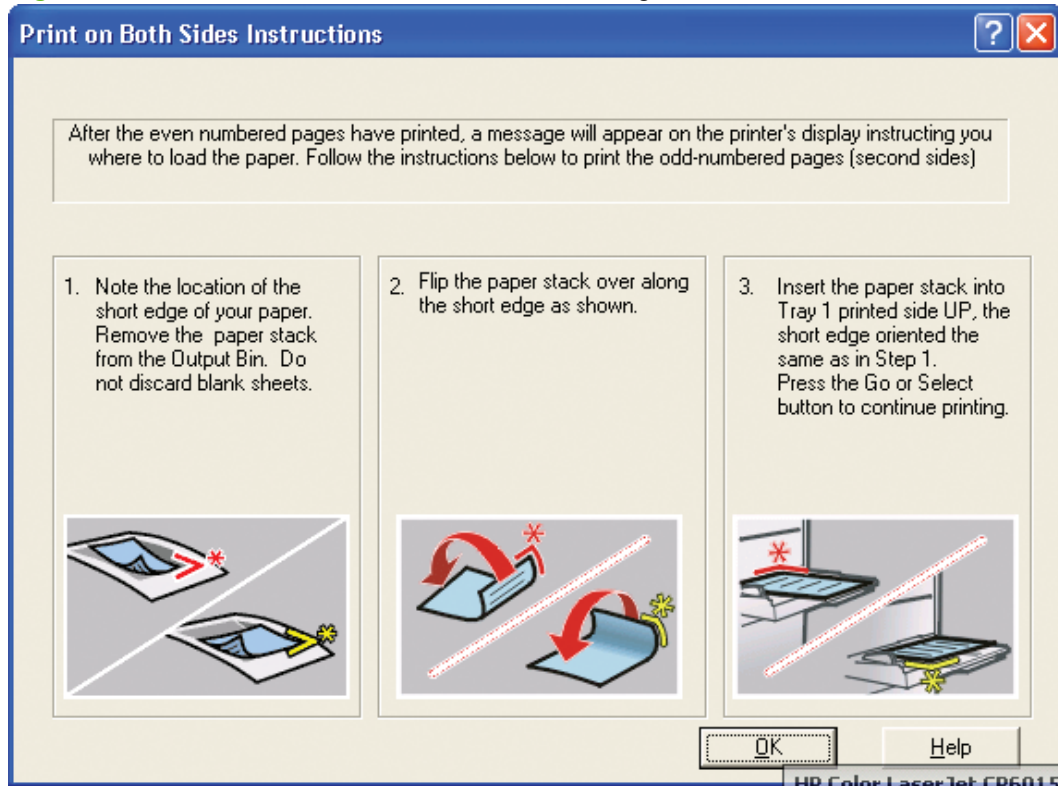
If you want to print on both sides manually while using paper that is supported for automatic duplexing, you must select and apply the **Not Installed** setting on the **Duplex Unit (for 2-Sided Printing)** option on the **Device Settings** tab.

Cardstock paper can be manually printed on the second side, but no change occurs to the print mode. Transparencies and labels should not be manually printed on the second side.

To print a multiple-page document, follow these steps:

1. Select the **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** check box.
2. Click **OK**. The even-number pages of the document print.
3. When the control panel shows the MANUALLY FEED message, insert the stack of paper (on which the even-number pages have been printed) as indicated in the following figure.

Figure 5-13 Print on Both Sides Instructions dialog box



When you have completed the steps that appear in the dialog box, the second half of the print job prints on the back side of the stack of paper. The driver does not require the program to specifically support odd- and even-page printing, because the driver coordinates this function.

Flip Pages Up

Use the **Flip Pages Up** check box to specify the duplex-binding option. By default, the **Flip Pages Up** check box is not available. It is available only when **Print on Both Sides** is selected. The following table demonstrates the results of selecting this check box, depending on the paper orientation selected on the **Finishing** tab.

Table 5-3 Page orientation

Orientation (Finishing tab)	Flip Pages Up selected	Flip Pages Up not selected
Portrait	Short-edge binding	Long-edge binding
Landscape	Long-edge binding	Short-edge binding

When **Print on Both Sides** is selected, the document preview image changes to show a spiral binding along either the left edge or the top edge of the page. In addition, a folded-over corner appears in the lower-right portion of the preview image, indicating that printing occurs on the back side. An arrow on the folded-over corner points in the direction that the pages would be flipped if they were bound together.

Short-side binding is for print jobs with pages that read by flipping over like the pages of a calendar. Long-side binding is for print jobs with pages that read by turning like the pages of a book.

Booklet layout

The **Booklet Layout** drop-down menu, visible when **Print on Both Sides** is selected, offers choices that are based on the current paper size. The default setting for the **Booklet Printing** drop-down menu is **Off**. The other settings have the following format, where **[paper size]** depends on the paper size that is set on the **Paper/Quality** tab:

- **Left Edge Binding**
- **Right Edge Binding**

When you select **Left Edge Binding** or **Right Edge Binding**, the document preview image changes to show the location of the binding. If the **Pages per Sheet** setting is on the default setting of 1, it automatically changes to **2 pages per sheet**. If you change the **Pages per Sheet** setting manually to 4, 6, 9, or 16 pages per sheet, the booklet setting is disabled. See [Pages per Sheet on page 185](#) for more information.

Book and Booklet Printing


The HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series supports book and booklet printing.

A book is a print job consisting of at least two pages. It can have a different paper type for the front cover, first page, other pages, last page, or back cover. Use the **Covers** and **Print pages on different paper** settings on the **Paper/Quality** tab to select different paper for the front cover, first page, other pages, and back cover. For more information, see [Paper/Quality tab features on page 163](#).

A booklet is a print job that places two pages on each side of a sheet that can then be folded into a booklet that is half the size of the paper. Use the **Booklet Layout** drop-down menu on the **Finishing** tab to control booklet settings.

Print a booklet

1. Open the driver **Printing Preferences** tab set and click the **Paper/Quality** tab. For information about how to access the **Printing Preferences** tab set, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 147](#).
2. Select the booklet settings in the **Paper Type** and **Paper Source** drop-down menus.
3. Click the **Effects** tab, and then select the physical paper size to be used in the booklet from the **Print document on** drop-down menu.

 **NOTE:** Typically, you select the size of each page of the booklet in your software program by clicking **File**, clicking **Page**, and then clicking **Setup**. For example, if each page of the finished book is supposed to be Letter-sized in your 2-up booklet, select **Letter** in your software program, and then select **11x17** from the **Print document on** drop-down menu (physical size of the page). If your software program does not allow you to set the paper size, use the **Paper sizes** drop-down menu on the **Paper/Quality** tab.

4. Click the **Finishing** tab, and select the following settings from the drop-down menus:
 - **Print on both sides**. Click to select the check box.
 - **Booklet layout**. Click to select **Left Binding** edge for booklets.
 - **Pages per sheet**. Click to select **2**.
 - **Orientation**. Click to select the preferred setting.
5. Click the **Output** tab, and then select **Fold and Stitch** from the **Staple output options** drop-down menu.
6. Click **OK** in the print driver.
7. Click **OK** in the print dialog box to print.

Pages per Sheet

Use the **Pages per Sheet** option to select the number of pages that you want to print on a single sheet of paper. If you choose to print more than one page per sheet, the pages appear smaller and are arranged on the sheet in the order that they would otherwise be printed. The **Pages per Sheet** drop-down menu provides six settings:

- **1 page per sheet** (this is the default)
- **2 pages per sheet**
- **4 pages per sheet**
- **6 pages per sheet**
- **9 pages per sheet**
- **16 pages per sheet**



NOTE: When you select an option other than **2 pages per sheet**, booklet printing is unavailable.

Print Page Borders

Related controls indented beneath **Pages per Sheet** are **Print Page Borders** and **Page Order**, which become active when **Pages per Sheet** is greater than 1.

Print Page Borders sets a line around each page image on a printed sheet to help visually define the borders of each logical page.

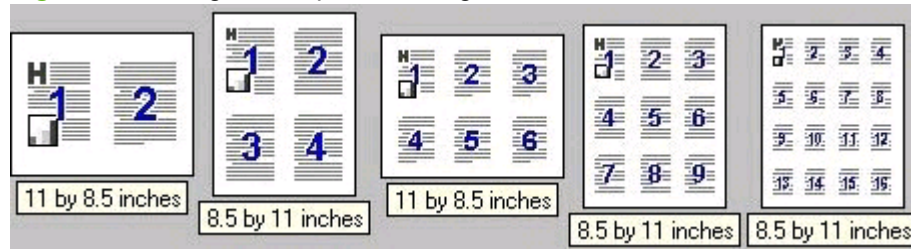
Page Order

The **Page Order** drop-down menu contains four selections:

- **Right, then Down**
- **Down, then Right**
- **Left, then Down**
- **Down, then Left**

The preview document image changes to reflect alterations in these settings, as shown by the examples in the following figure.

Figure 5-14 Page-order preview images



- 2 pages per sheet
- 4 pages per sheet
- 6 pages per sheet
- 9 pages per sheet
- 16 pages per sheet

Document preview image


The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of the following **Printing Preferences** driver tabs:

- **Printing Shortcuts**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Output**
- **Color**

Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When you move the mouse over the document preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Orientation

Orientation refers to the layout of the image on the page, and does not affect the way that paper feeds into the product. You can specify the orientation of the print job. The three available orientations are portrait, landscape, and rotated. The default orientation is **Portrait**.

 **NOTE:** Nearly all software programs establish the orientation for the printed page, so the page orientation in the driver is useful only for the few software programs that do not set an orientation.

The **Orientation** group box contains the following options:

- **Portrait.** The top edge of the document is the shorter edge of the paper.
- **Landscape.** The top edge of the document is the longer edge of the paper.
- **Rotate by 180 degrees.** This creates a landscape or portrait orientation in which the image is rotated 180°. This setting is useful for printing prepunched paper.
- **Mirror image — PS Universal Print Driver only.** Click to reverse your document or image from left to right.

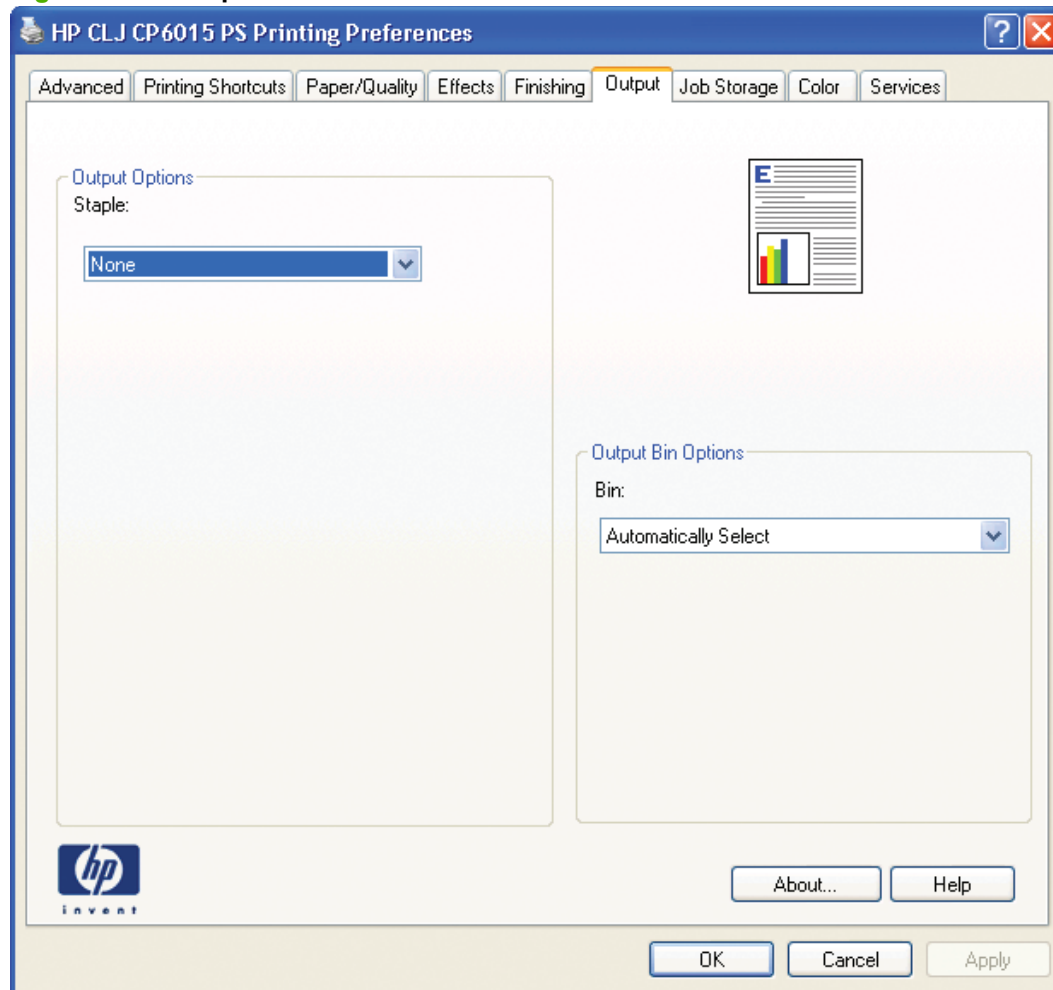
You can toggle orientation between portrait and landscape by clicking the document preview image. If you select the **Rotate by 180 degrees** check box, no change occurs in the document preview image.

Output tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Output** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set . For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 147](#),

Use the **Output** tab to select finishing and output options for a document. The following figure shows the **Output** tab.

Figure 5-15 Output tab



The **Output** tab contains the following controls:

- **Output Options** group box
- Document preview image
- **Output Bin Options**

Output Options

The **Output** tab appears only if the optional HP 3-bin Stapler/Stacker Accessory or the HP Booklet Maker/Finisher Accessory are installed on the product.

The available **Output Options** that are available depend on which output accessory is installed and configured on the product. The options for accessories, which must be configured on the **Device Settings** tab, are:

- **None**
- **One staple left**
- **One staple right**
- **Two staples left**
- **Two staples right**
- **Two staples top**
- **Fold and Stitch (Max 15 sheets)**

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of the following **Printing Preferences** driver tabs:

- **Printing Shortcuts**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Output**
- **Color**

Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When you move the mouse over the document preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking on the image.

Output Bin options

The available settings depend on which accessory output bin is installed on your product, the HP 3-bin Stapler/Stacker Accessory or the HP Booklet Maker/Finisher Accessory. The following options are available.


- **Automatically Select:** Sends the pages to the product's default output bin.
- **Upper Left Bin:** Pages exit the product face down in the bin. Pages sent to this output bin stack in the order that they are printed (correct-ordered output).
- **Middle Left Bin:** Pages exit the product face down and in the correct order.
- **Lower Left Bin:** Pages exit the product face down and in the correct order. For the HP Booklet Maker/Finisher Accessory, the Lower Left Bin is used for booklet output only.

Job Storage tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Job Storage** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 147](#).

Use the job-storage feature to store print jobs in the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product memory or hard disk for printing at a later time. These job-storage features are described here.

The **Job Storage** tab appears among the driver tabs only if the job-storage feature is enabled on the **Device Settings** tab. To support job-storage features for complex jobs, or if you often print complex graphics, print postscript (.PS) documents, or use many downloaded fonts, HP recommends that you install additional memory, install a hard disk, or both. Added memory also gives you more flexibility in supporting job-storage features. A minimum total memory of 288 MB is required to use the **Proof and Hold** and **Personal Job** job-storage features. A hard disk is required to use the **Quick Copy** and **Stored Job** job-storage features.

 **NOTE:** The HP Color LaserJet CP6015xh product comes with a hard disk installed on the product. All other models of the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product do not have a standard hard disk installed.

After a hard disk is installed, the driver must be configured to reflect the changes in the product. If bidirectional communication is enabled in your environment, the Update Now feature can be used to update the drivers. For more information, see [Automatic Configuration on page 209](#).

To configure the drivers manually after installing a hard disk, follow these steps:

1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

In Windows XP and Windows Server 2003, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.
2. Right-click the product name.
3. Click **Properties**.
4. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
5. Select **Installed** for the **Printer Hard Disk** under **Installable Options**, and then select **Installed** in the drop-down menu.
6. Click **OK** to make the printer hard disk and job-storage features available.

You can disable the job-storage feature while leaving the printer hard disk enabled. To disable the job-storage feature, follow these steps:

1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

In Windows XP and Windows Server 2003, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.
2. Right-click the product name.
3. Click **Properties**.

4. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
5. Select **Job Storage**.
6. Select **Disabled** in the **Change 'Job Storage' Setting** dialog box that appears.

If the job-storage feature is enabled (without installing a hard disk but with at least 288 MB of total memory), two **Job Storage Mode** settings are available on the **Job Storage** tab:

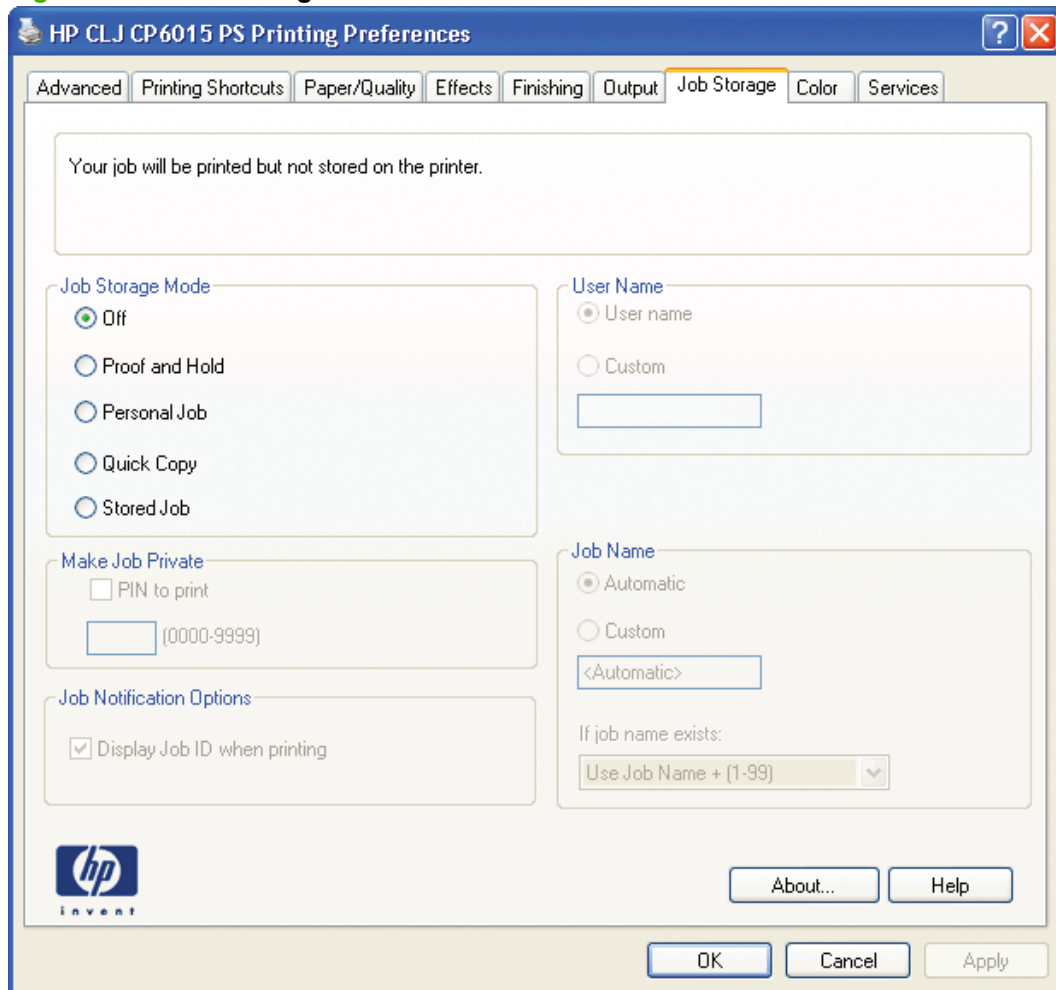
- **Proof and Hold**
- **Personal Job**

Two additional **Job Storage Mode** settings become available on the **Job Storage** tab if a hard disk is installed:

- **Quick Copy**
- **Stored Job**

The following figure shows the **Job Storage** tab.

Figure 5-16 Job Storage tab



The **Job Storage** tab contains the following controls:

 **NOTE:** Information about using the job-storage feature when printing is also described here.

- [Status group box](#)
- [Job Storage Mode](#)
- [PIN to print](#)
- [Job Notification Options](#)
- [User Name](#)
- [Job Name](#)
- [Use job-storage features when printing](#)

Status group box

The unlabeled group box on the **Job Storage** tab contains a status message about the destination of a print job. The status information changes depending on the selections that are made on the **Job Storage** tab.

Job Storage Mode

Use the **Job Storage Mode** options on the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product to store documents at the product and then control their printing at the product control panel.

The HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product offers the following **Job Storage Mode** options:

- **Off**
- **Proof and Hold**
- **Personal Job**
- **Quick Copy**
- **Stored Job**

These options and the settings that control them are described below.

Off

When selected, this option turns the job-storage feature off (it is disabled), which means that the print job will not be stored in the product.


Proof and Hold

To use the **Proof and Hold** option, the job-storage feature must be enabled.

When selected, this option stores the print job in memory and prints only the first copy of the job, allowing you to check the first copy. If the document prints correctly, you can print the remaining copies of the print job at the control panel. You can set the number of proof-and-hold print jobs that can be stored in the product at the control panel.

After it is released for printing, the proof-and-hold job is imperceptibly deleted from the product. If more copies are needed, you must reprint the job from the software program. If you send a second proof-and-hold job to the product with the same user name and job name as an existing proof-and-hold job (and

you have not released the original job for printing), the job will overwrite the existing job. Proof-and-hold jobs are deleted if you turn off the product.

 **NOTE:** The product configuration can be set to hold a maximum of 50 quick-copy or proof-and-hold jobs. The number is set at the product control panel in the **CONFIGURATION** menu, and the default is 32. When this preset limit is reached, the new document overwrites the oldest held document. Also, a document that has the same user name and job name as one that is already stored on the printer hard disk will overwrite the existing document.

Personal Job

To use the **Personal Job** option, the job-storage feature must be enabled.

When you select **Personal Job**, the print job is sent to the product, but is not printed until you request the job at the product control panel. Selecting **Personal Job** activates the **PIN** group box. If **PIN to print** is selected, the print job can be printed only after you type the correct PIN at the control panel. After the job is printed, the job is impapertely deleted from the product. This feature is useful when you are printing sensitive or confidential documents that you do not want to leave in an output bin after printing.


The Private Job/PIN coupling has a PIN restriction of four ASCII numeric characters (0 though 9). If you type non-numeric characters, they are removed impapertely. If you type more than four characters, the characters past the fourth are truncated. The field temporarily accepts fewer than four digits in the string, but when the text field loses focus, the zeroes pad the left end until the PIN contains exactly four digits. The default initialized value for the PIN is 0000 for **Personal Job**.

After it is released for printing, the private job is impapertely deleted from the product. If more copies are needed, you must reprint the job from the software program. If you send a second private job that has the same user name and job name as an existing private job (and you have not released the original job for printing), the job will overwrite the existing job, regardless of the PIN. Private jobs are deleted if you turn off the product.

Quick Copy

To use the **Quick Copy** option, a printer hard disk must be installed, and the job-storage feature must be enabled.

When you select **Quick Copy**, the entire print job prints and a copy of the print job is stored on the product, after which you can print additional copies of the print job at the product control panel. The number of quick-copy print jobs that can be stored in the product is set by using the product control panel.

 **NOTE:** The product configuration can be set to hold a maximum of 50 quick-copy or proof-and-hold jobs. The number is set at the product control panel in the **CONFIGURATION** menu, and the default is 32. When this preset limit is reached, the new document overwrites the oldest held document. Also, a document that has the same user name and job name as one that is already stored on the printer hard disk will overwrite the existing document. **Quick Copy** jobs are deleted if you turn off the product.

Stored Job

To use the **Stored Job** option, a hard disk must be installed on the product and the job-storage feature must be enabled.

Use the **Stored Job** option to send a print job directly to the printer hard disk without printing it. The print job is stored in the product as if it is an electronic file cabinet. After the print job is stored on the printer hard disk, you can print the job at the product control panel.


The job remains stored in the product until it is deleted or overwritten by a document that has the same user name and job name. Stored jobs remain on the printer hard disk when the product is turned off. Use this feature for forms and other common or shared documents.

A stored job can be managed in two ways: as either a private or a public job.

Select the **PIN to Print** check box to set the private mode. Use a private stored job to send a print job directly to the product, which can then be printed only after you type a PIN up to 4 digits long at the product control panel. (You can set the PIN in the **PIN** group box.)

After the job is printed, the job remains in the product and can be printed again at the product control panel.

The box labeled **PIN** is usually inactive. The **PIN to Print** option becomes available when you select **Stored Job**. If you select the **PIN to Print** box, you must type a PIN to make the stored job private.

 **NOTE:** A *private stored* job is not the same as a *personal* job. *Personal* jobs are deleted from the product after they are printed. *Private stored* jobs are retained in the product after printing, but require that a PIN be typed each time they are printed. A printer hard disk is required for *Private stored* jobs.

PIN to print

PIN to print is available when **Stored Job** is selected. Select the **PIN to Print** box, then type a 4-digit PIN number in the box provided. The stored job is sent to the product, where you must enter the 4-digit PIN on the control panel to retrieve the stored job.

The **PIN to Print** box is available when **Personal Job** is selected. Select the **PIN to Print** option, and then type a 4-digit PIN number in the box provided. The stored job is sent to the product, where you must type the 4-digit PIN on the control panel to retrieve the stored job.

Job Notification Options

Clicking a **Job Storage Mode** selection causes the **User Name** and **Job Name** options to become available. The **Display Job ID when printing** check box is selected by default. The **Display Job ID when printing** option causes a pop-up dialog box to appear when the job-storage print job is printed. The dialog box shows the user name and job name that are associated with the stored print job, as well as the printer name, port, and location.

User Name

Use the **User Name** settings to help identify the job at the product control panel. The following are the **User Name** settings:

- **Windows User Name.** This option associates your Windows user name with the stored print job. The Windows user name automatically appears in the text field below the **Windows User Name** options.
- **Custom.** Use this option to type a custom name for the stored print job. When you click **Custom**, the text field below the option becomes available. The **User Name** field can contain no more than 16 characters, and is limited to A through Z and 0 through 9 because the name appears on the product control-panel display. If you try to type a lowercase character, it automatically shifts to uppercase. If you try to type a character in an ASCII code of fewer than 32 or more than 126 characters, the character is removed from the text field, along with all of the characters that follow it. If you try to type more than 16 characters, any character beyond 16 is truncated.

Job Name

Use the **Job Name** options to specify a name to identify the job at the product control panel. The following are the **Job Name** settings:

- **<Automatic>** This option, which is the default selection, automatically generates the job name that is associated with the stored print job. The file name of the print job is used if it is available to the print driver. Otherwise, the software program name or a time stamp is used for the job name.
- **Custom.** Use this to type a custom job name for the stored print job. When you click **Custom**, the text field below the option becomes available. In those languages for which **<Automatic>** cannot be translated without the use of invalid characters, the driver uses a string of three dashes. The acceptable characters for job name and user name vary for each operating system. The string must be of a length and type that can appear on the product control-panel display.

The **Job Name** field can contain no more than 16 characters, and is limited to A through Z (uppercase or lowercase) and 0 through 9 so that the name can appear on the product control-panel display. If you try to type a character in an ASCII code of fewer than 32 or more than 126 characters, the character is removed from the text field, along with all of the characters that follow it. If you try to type more than 16 characters, any character beyond 16 is truncated.


When the dialog box is closed, or as soon as the focus is removed from the control (that is, when the **Tab** key is pressed or another control is selected), an empty string is replaced with **<Automatic>**. The acceptable characters for job name and user name vary for each operating system. The string must be of a length and type that can appear on the product control-panel display.

If Job Name Exists. When you store a print job, you can create a print-job name or the product software can assign one automatically. If a print job with the same name already exists, the new print job will overwrite the existing print job. To eliminate the chances of a new print job overwriting an old print job because both have the same name, select **Use Job Name + (1-999)**. After you create the print job name, or when one is created automatically, the product software assigns a number between 1 and 999 to the end of the print job name to make the name unique. Select **Replace Existing File** if you always want the product software to overwrite an existing print job with the same print job name.

Use job-storage features when printing

To use job-storage features when printing, follow these steps:

1. Click **File** and then click **Print** from the software program. The **Print** dialog box appears.

 **NOTE:** Clicking the print icon in the software program toolbar prints the job without using job-storage features.

2. Click **Properties**. The **Properties** dialog box appears.
3. Click the **Job Storage** tab.
4. Select the job-storage options by clicking the appropriate option button, and then complete any required fields.
5. Click **OK**.

Release a job-storage print job

After you send a print job that uses the job-storage feature, you can release the job to print from the product control panel.

1. Press the **select** button ✓ to open the menus.
2. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ until **RETRIEVE JOB** is highlighted on the product control panel, and then press **select** ✓.
3. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to your user name, and then press **select** ✓.
4. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to the job name, and then press **select** ✓.
5. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ until **PRINT** is highlighted on the product control panel, and then press **select** ✓.
6. Press **select** ✓.
7. If a PIN number is assigned to the job, press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to select the first digit of the PIN, and then press **select** ✓. The number in the product control-panel display changes to an asterisk. Repeat this step for each of the remaining three digits of the PIN number.

If no PIN number is assigned to the job, continue with the next step.

8. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to select the number of copies to print.
9. Press **select** ✓ to print the job.

Deleting a job-storage print job

Sometimes it is necessary to delete a print job from the printer hard disk. You can do this from the product control panel.

1. Press the **select** button ✓ to open the menus.
2. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ until **RETRIEVE JOB** is highlighted on the product control panel, and then press **select** ✓.
3. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to your user name, and then press **select** ✓.
4. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to the job name, and then press **select** ✓.
5. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ until **DELETE** is highlighted on the product control panel, and then press **select** ✓.
6. Press **select** ✓.
7. If a PIN number is assigned to the job, press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to select the first digit of the PIN, and then press **select** ✓. The number in the product control-panel display changes to an asterisk. Repeat this step for each of the remaining three digits of the PIN number.

If no PIN number is assigned to the job, continue with the next step.

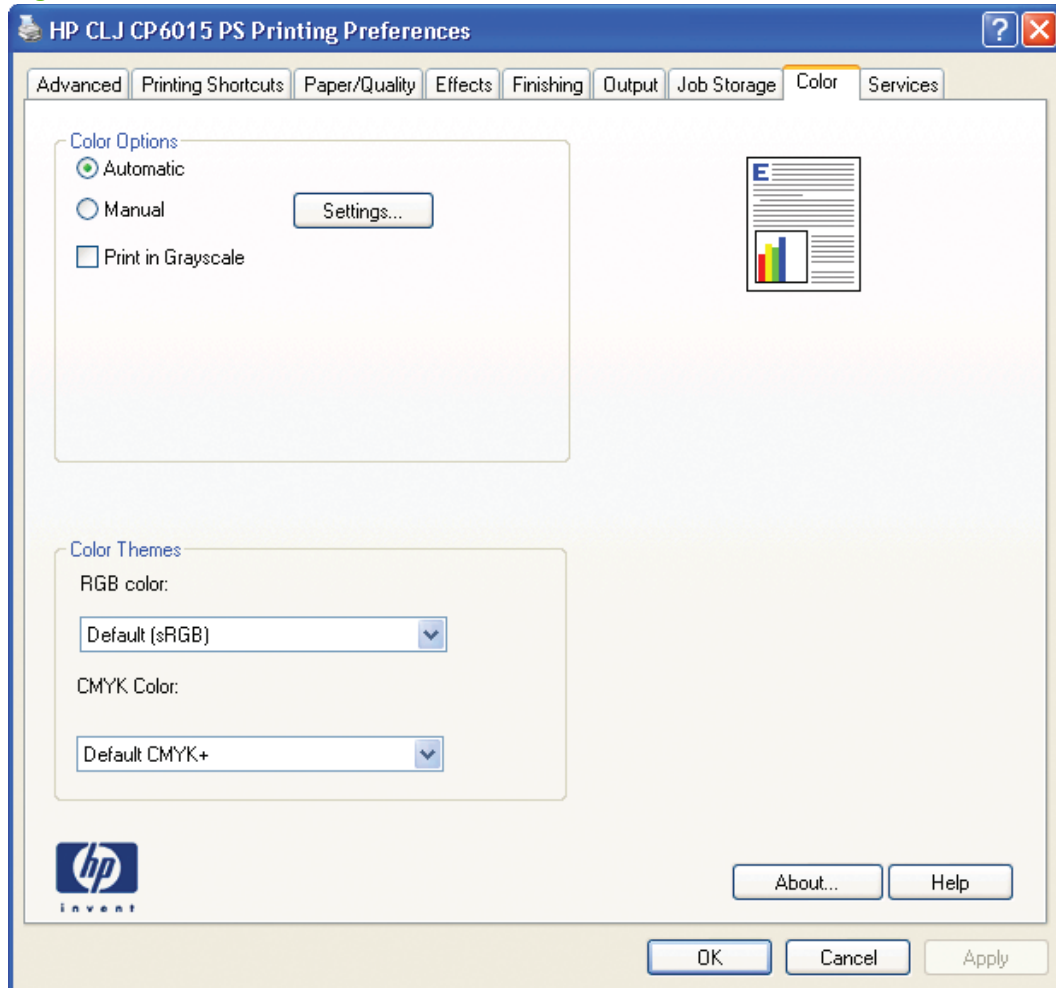
8. Press **select** ✓ to delete the job.

Color tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Color** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set . For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 147](#).

Use the **Color** tab to specify predefined color-option settings or to fine-tune the color treatments and halftoning. Color output can also be converted to grayscale. The **Color** tab is shown in the following figure.

Figure 5-17 Color tab



The **Color** tab contains the following sets of controls:

- [Color Options](#)
- [Color Themes](#)
- [Document preview image](#)

Color Options

Use the **Color Options** group box to adjust the independent color controls. The settings affect the print job color rendering and print quality. The **Color Options** group box contains the following controls:

- **Automatic** option (default)
- **Manual** option
- **Settings** button (Click this button to open the **Color Settings** dialog box.)
- **Print in Grayscale** check box

Automatic

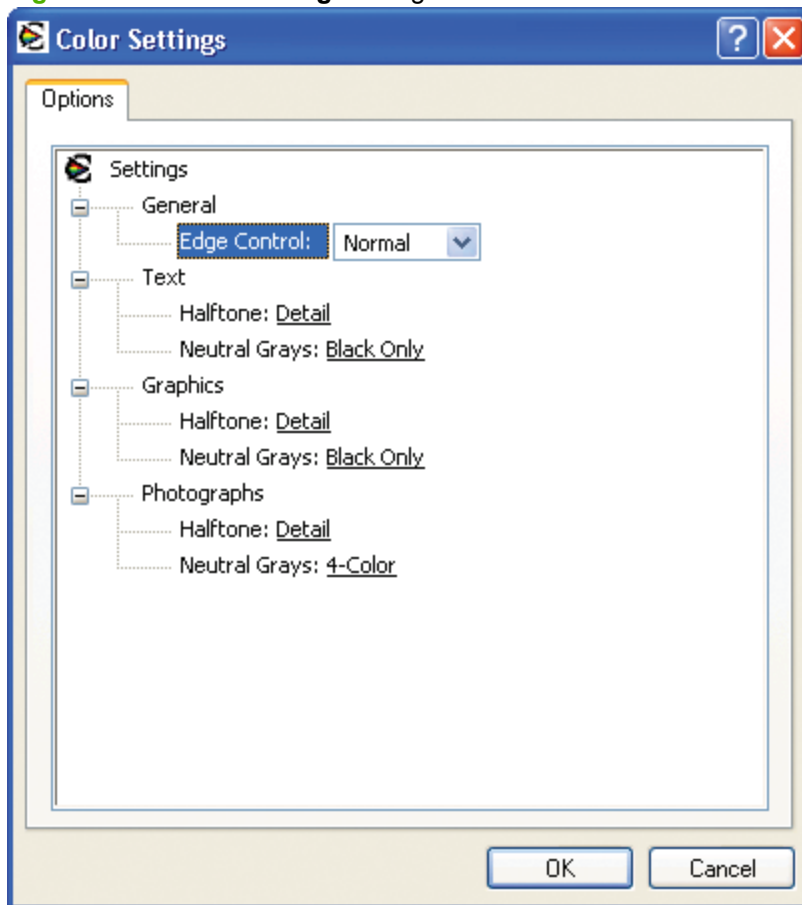
Use the **Automatic** option for color settings that automatically fine-tune the printed output. The **Automatic** color settings provide high-quality output while maintaining product performance for most color printing needs.

Manual

To change the color settings, select the **Manual** option, and then click **Settings**. The **Color Settings** dialog box appears.

To change the settings, make your selections by using the drop-down menus in the **Color Settings** dialog box, and then click **OK**. The following figure shows the **Color Settings** dialog box with "Custom" settings.

Figure 5-18 Color Settings dialog box



The **Color Settings** dialog box contains the following controls:

- **General**
 - **Edge Control**
- **Text**
 - **Neutral Grays**
 - **Halftone**
- **Graphics**
 - **Neutral Grays**
 - **Halftone**
- **Photographs**
 - **Neutral Grays**
 - **Halftone**

General

Use the **General** setting group to control **Edge Control** settings for all color printing.

Edge Control determines how edges are rendered. **Edge Control** consists of three components:

- Adaptive Halftoning, which increases edge sharpness
- Trapping, which reduces the effect of color plane misregistration by slightly overlapping the edges of adjacent objects
- Color Resolution Enhancement Technology (C-REt), which increases the apparent resolution by placing each dot for the smoothest edges

The **Edge Control** option offers four settings:

- **Off.** The **Off** setting turns Trapping, Adaptive Halftoning, and C-REt to **Off**.
- **Light.** The **Light** setting provides minimal trapping. Adaptive Halftoning is set to **On** and C-REt is set to **On**.
- **Normal.** The **Normal** setting provides the default trapping settings. Adaptive Halftoning is set to **On**, and C-REt is set to **On**.
- **Maximum.** The **Maximum** setting provides the most trapping. Adaptive Halftoning is set to **On**, and C-REt is set to **On**.

Neutral Grays

The **Neutral Grays** drop-down menu controls the selection of a device-dependent color table that is embedded in the product firmware. You can adjust the **Neutral Grays** setting independently for text, graphics, or photographs. The following options are available:

- **Black Only.** This option generates neutral colors (grays and black) by using only black toner. This option guarantees that neutral colors do not have a color cast. **Black Only** is the default setting for the **Text** and **Graphics** components.
- **4-Color.** This option generates neutral colors by combining all four colors of toner, which produces smoother gradients and transitions to non-neutral colors. It also produces the darkest possible black. **4-Color** is the default setting for **Photographs**.

Halftone

The **Halftone** setting controls the selection of a product-dependent halftone algorithm that is embedded in the product firmware. Halftoning is a method by which the product mixes the four primary colors (cyan, magenta, yellow, and black) in varying proportions to create millions of colors. The **Halftone** options affect the resolution and clarity of the color on the printed page. You can select **Halftone** settings for text, graphics, and photographs independently.

The following Halftone options are available:

- **Detail.** This is the default option; it is useful for text and graphics that require sharp distinctions among lines or colors, or for images that contain a pattern or a high level of detail. Select this option for sharp edges and detail.
- **Smooth.** This option provides better results for large, solid-filled print areas. It also enhances photographs by smoothing out fine color gradations. Select this option for uniform and smooth area fills.

Color Themes

The Color Themes group box contains the following options:

- [RGB Color](#)
- [CMYK Color – PS Universal Print Driver only](#)

RGB Color

This option determines how colors are rendered. The following settings are available.

- [Default \(sRGB\)](#)
- [Photo \(sRGB\)](#)
- [Photo \(Adobe RGB 1998\)](#)
- [None](#)
- [Custom Profile](#)

Default (sRGB)

Select **Default (sRGB)** for most printing needs. This setting instructs the product to interpret RGB color as sRGB, which is the accepted standard of Microsoft and the World Wide Web Consortium (W3C). Colors are matched to optimize the RGB colors on the screen and to provide vivid images and graphics.

Photo (sRGB)

Select **Photo (sRGB)** to enhance documents in which the content is mainly bitmap images, such as .GIF or .eps files. This setting instructs the product to use the best color matching for rendering sRGB bitmap images. This setting affects only raster data; it has no effect on text or vector-based graphics. Using glossy paper in combination with this setting provides the maximum enhancement.

Photo (Adobe RGB 1998)

Select **Photo (Adobe RGB 1998)** for documents that use the AdobeRGB color space rather than sRGB. For example, some digital cameras capture images in Adobe RGB, and documents that are produced with Adobe PhotoShop® use the Adobe RGB color space. When printing from a professional software program that uses Adobe RGB, it is important that you turn off the color management in the software program and allow the product software to manage the color space.

None

Select **None** to instruct the printer to print RGB data in raw device mode. To render documents properly when this option is selected, you must manage color in the program in which you are working or in the operating system.

△ **CAUTION:** Use this option only if you are familiar with the procedures for managing color in the software program or in the operating system.

Custom Profile

Select **Custom Profile** when you want to duplicate the printed output from other products or for using special effects. This setting instructs the product to use a custom profile to emulate color output from another product by modifying how color is rendered.

The default custom profile is an emulation of the color table used on the HP Color LaserJet 9500 product. The product holds only one custom profile at a time, so when you download and install another color table, it erases the default color table and installs the new one.

You can download custom profiles from the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/cljcp6015_firmware

CMYK Color – PS Universal Print Driver only

The following CMYK Color Themes are available.

- [Default CMYK+](#)
- [SWOP](#)
- [Euroscale](#)
- [DIC \(Dainippon\)](#)
- [Custom Profile](#)

Default CMYK+

HP CMYK+ technology enables a high-quality default CMYK print path. Select this option for most digital commercial print jobs to produce optimal prints.

SWOP

This option is a common ink standard in the U.S. and other countries/regions.

Euroscale

This option is a common ink standard in Europe and other countries/regions (also known as Euro Standard).

DIC (Dainippon)

DIC stands for Dainippon Ink and Chemical, a common ink standard in Japan and other countries/regions.

Custom Profile

Select this option to use a custom input profile to accurately control color output (for example, to emulate a specific HP Color LaserJet product). Download color profiles from the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/cljcp6015_firmware

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of the following **Printing Preferences** driver tabs:

- **Printing Shortcuts**
- **Paper/Quality**

- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Output**
- **Color**

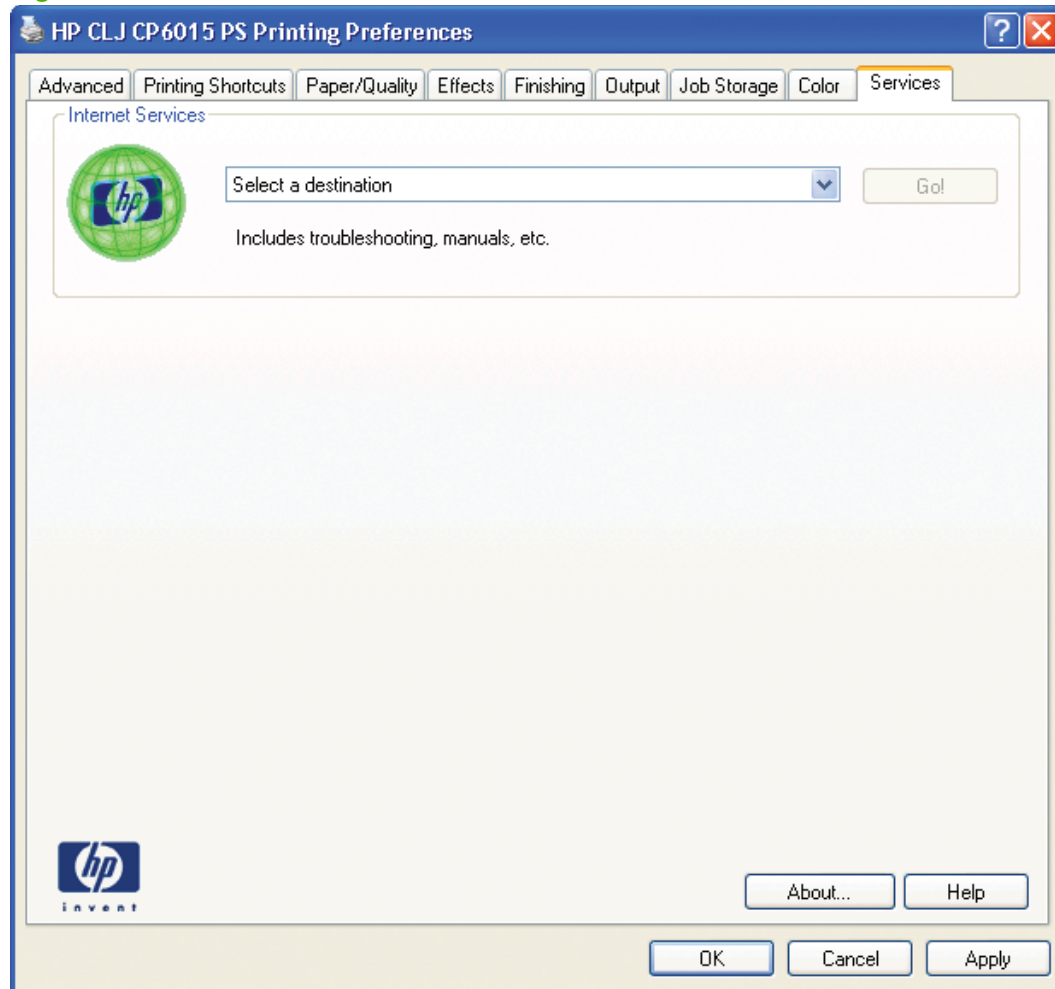
Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When you move the mouse over the document preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Services tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Services** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 147](#),

The **Services** tab is shown in the following figure.

Figure 5-19 Services tab



The **Services** tab contains the following group boxes:

- [Internet Services](#)

Internet Services

The **Internet Services** group box contains the **Select a destination** drop-down menu with the following selections:

- **Online diagnostic tools.** This is the HP Instant Support Web site, where you can find interactive tools and contacts for troubleshooting.
- **Support and troubleshooting.** This is the main Web site for HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product support.

- **Product manuals.** View or download HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product manuals.
- **Check for driver updates.** Automatically check your print drivers to see whether the correct and most up-to-date print drivers are installed.
- **Shop for supplies.** Shop online for HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product supplies.

If you have Internet access, select any of these items and click **Go!** to open the corresponding HP Web page.

Device Settings tab features

NOTE: The **Device Settings** tab is located on the **Properties** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Properties driver tabs on page 148](#),

Available options depend on the feature. The following figure shows the tab.

Figure 5-20 Device Settings tab – PS Universal Print Driver

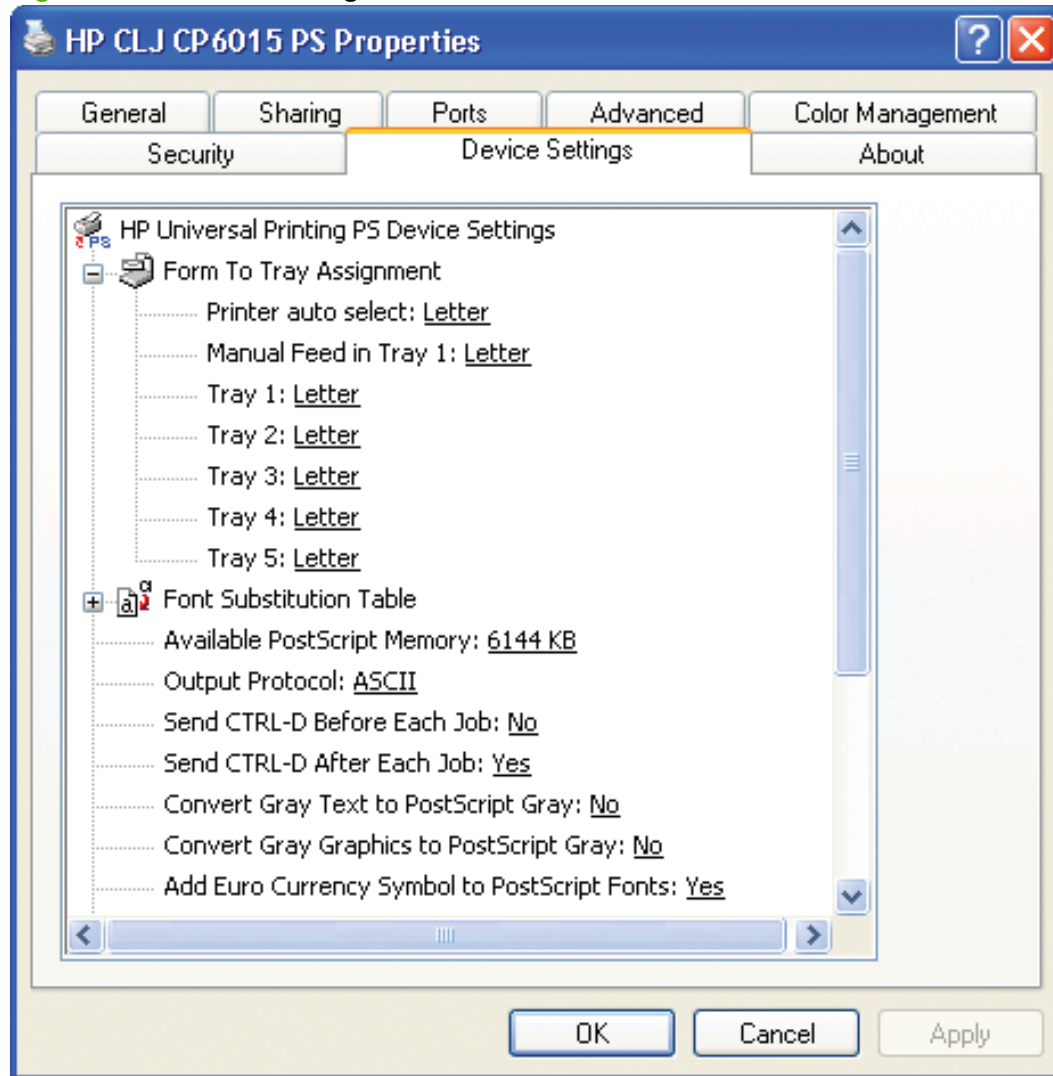
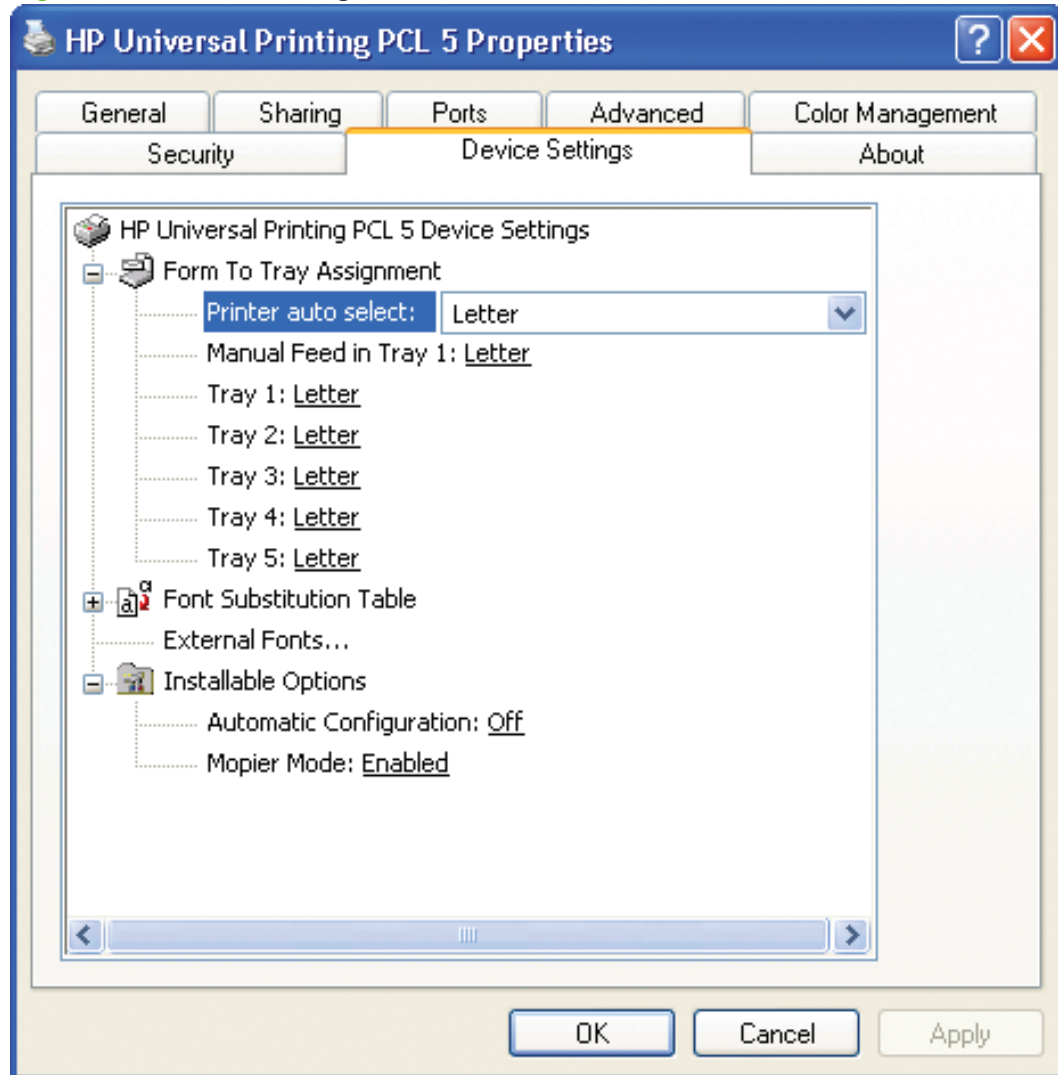


Figure 5-21 Device Settings tab – PCL 5 Universal Print Driver



The **Device Settings** tab contains controls for paper-handling devices and controls for managing the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product.

The **Device Settings** tab contains the following controls:

- [Form to Tray Assignment](#)
- [Font Substitution Table](#)
- [PS Universal Print Driver Device Settings](#)
- [Installable Options](#)

Form to Tray Assignment

A network administrator can use **Form to Tray Assignment** to specify the paper size in each input tray.

The HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product supports more than one source of paper. You can assign a form (which defines the paper size and margins) to each paper source. When a form is matched to a

source, you can select the form when you print. The product prints from the tray to which that form is assigned.

Network administrators can use the **Form to Tray Assignment** setting to specify, in the driver, the paper size that is loaded into each available input tray. The use of forms constrains the choices that are available in the paper-size list on the **Paper/Quality** tab in the **Printing Preferences** driver tabs. This constraint prevents (or reduces the likelihood of) tying up the product with paper-mount messages that occur when users request sizes or types that are not available.

The trays listed in the **Form to Tray Assignment** setting include standard trays and optional accessory trays. Generally, items that are installed separately have a separate **Installable Options** setting.

The input trays listed here are also listed as paper sources on the **Paper/Quality** tab.

Configuring the trays

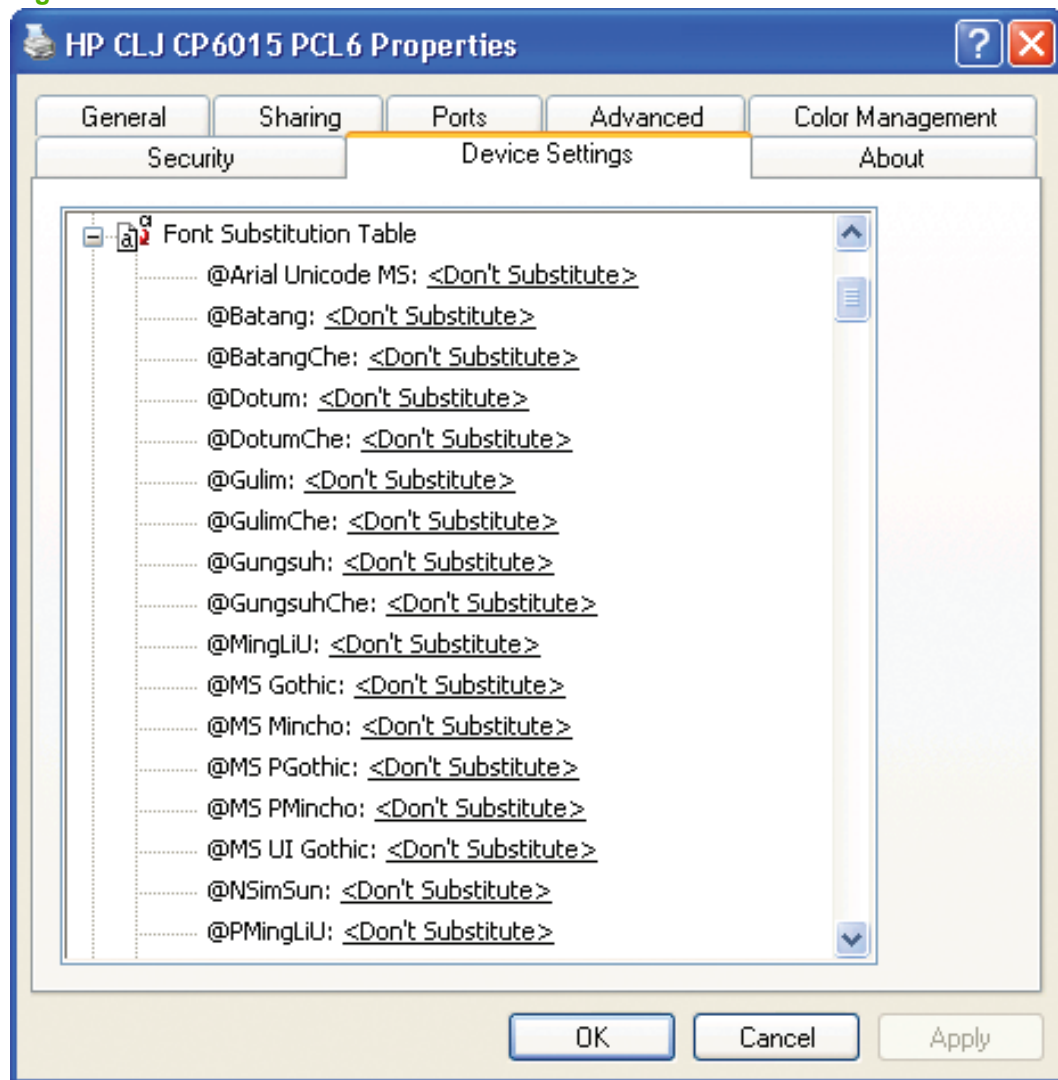
1. Select the appropriate tray in the **Form to Tray Assignment** list.
2. Use the drop-down menu to select the paper size (or form) that is loaded in that tray.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 for the remaining trays.
4. Click **OK** to enable your settings, or, if necessary, click **Cancel** to reconfigure all the trays, and remove the size and type constraints that have been imposed on the **Paper/Quality** tab.

Font Substitution Table

Use the **Font Substitution Table** settings to change the TrueType to printer font mapping and to install and remove external fonts for the product through the **External Fonts** option. External fonts can be soft fonts or DIMM fonts.

Click the **Font Substitution Table** option to open a list of fonts, as show in the following figure. Use the settings to change the TrueType-to-printer font mappings.

Figure 5-22 Font Substitution Table

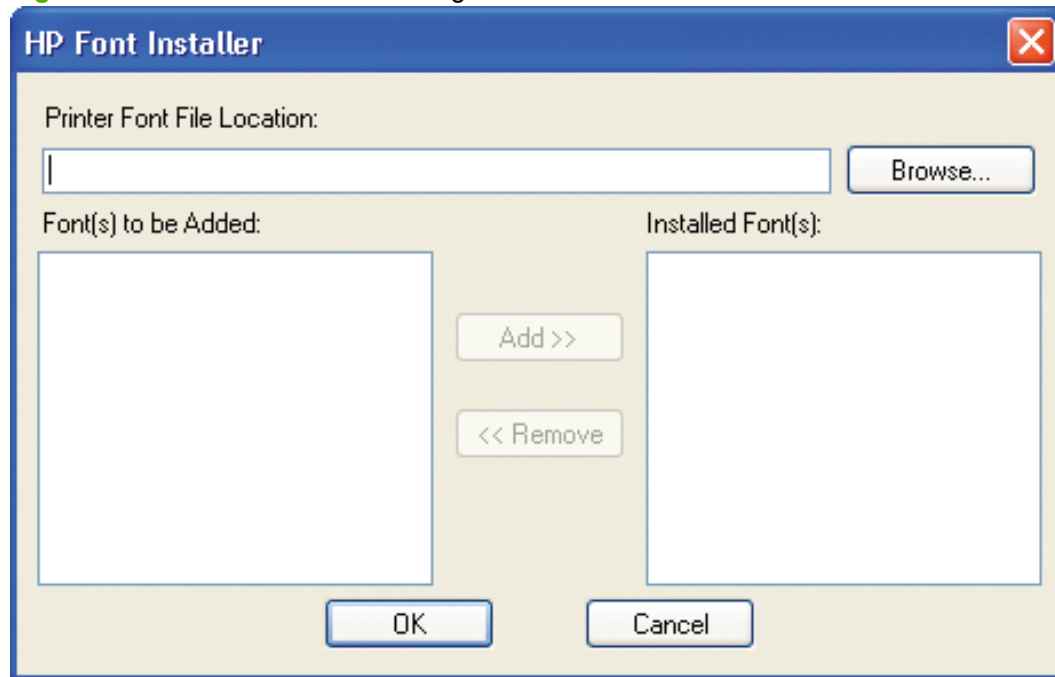


External Fonts

Use the **External Fonts** option to install and remove external fonts for the product. External fonts can be soft fonts or DIMM fonts.

Click the **External Fonts** option to make the **Properties** button available. Click **Properties** to open the **HP Font Installer** dialog box, which is shown in the following figure.

Figure 5-23 HP Font Installer dialog box



Install external fonts

Follow these steps to install external fonts.

1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

In Windows XP and Windows Server 2003, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.
2. Right-click the name of the product.
3. Click **Properties**.
4. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
5. Click the **External Fonts** option. The **Properties** button appears.
6. Click **Properties**. The **HP Font Installer** dialog box appears.
7. Type the name and path of the font metric file in the **Printer Font File Location** text box, or click **Browse** to locate the file on the computer. The font file names appear in the **Font(s) to be Added** window.
8. Select the fonts that you want to add, and then click **Add**. The fonts are installed and the file names appear in the **Installed Font(s)** window.
9. Click **OK** to close the **HP Font Installer** dialog box.

Remove external fonts

1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

In Windows XP and Windows Server 2003, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.
2. Right-click the name of the product.
3. Click **Properties**.
4. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
5. Click the **External Fonts** option. The **Properties** button appears.
6. Click **Properties**. The **HP Font Installer** dialog box appears. The external fonts that are installed appear in the **Installed Fonts** window.
7. Select the fonts that you want to remove, and then click **Remove**. The fonts are removed.
8. Click **OK** to close the **HP Font Installer** dialog box.

PS Universal Print Driver Device Settings

The following controls are available and appear only in the PS Universal Print Driver **Device Settings** tab.

Available PostScript Memory

This control specifies the amount of available postscript memory and provides a spin box for changing this value. The available postscript memory is a subset of the product total physical memory. It is usually best to set the postscript memory to match what is shown on the configuration page. To print a configuration page from the product control panel, follow these steps:

Print a configuration page

1. Press the **select** button ✓ to open the menus.
2. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to **INFORMATION**, and then press **select** ✓.
3. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to **PRINT CONFIGURATION**.
4. Press **select** ✓ to print the configuration page.

Output Protocol

This control specifies the protocol that the product uses for print jobs. The following options are available:

- **ASCII** (default)
- **TBCP**
- **Binary**

When you click **ASCII**, data is sent in ASCII format (7-bit), which might take longer to print but can be sent through any I/O channel, such as a serial, parallel, or network port.

When you click **TBCP** (Tagged Binary Communications Protocol), all data except special control characters is sent in binary (8-bit) format. The binary formats can be sent over parallel or serial communications ports and are faster than sending data in ASCII format.

When you click **Binary**, all data except special control characters is sent in binary (8-bit) format. The binary formats can be sent over parallel or serial communications ports and are faster than sending data in ASCII format.

Send Ctrl-D Before Each Job

This control specifies whether the product will be reset at the beginning of every postscript document. The default setting is **No**. Pressing **Ctrl-D** resets the product to its default setting to ensure that previous print jobs do not affect the current print job. Using **Ctrl-D** might cause a print job to fail if the product is connected through a network. If your document fails to print when sent to a product connected through parallel or serial ports, change **No** to **Yes**.

Send Ctrl-D After Each Job

This control specifies whether the product will be reset at the end of every postscript document. The default setting is **Yes**. Pressing **Ctrl-D** resets the product to its default setting to ensure that future print jobs are not affected by the current print job. Using **Ctrl-D** might cause a print job to fail if the product is connected through a network. If your document fails to print when sent to a network product, change **Yes** to **No**.

Convert Gray Text to PostScript Gray

This control specifies whether to convert the true gray value (RGB) in text to the gray provided by the HP PS Universal Print Driver. The following settings are available:

- **Yes**
- **No**. This is the default setting.

Convert Gray Graphics to PostScript Gray

This control specifies whether to convert the true gray value (RGB) in graphics to the gray provided by the HP PS Universal Print Driver. The following settings are available:

- **Yes**
- **No**. This is the default setting.

Add Euro Currency Symbol to PostScript Fonts

This control specifies whether to add the Euro symbol to the printer fonts. The following settings are available:

- **Yes**. This is the default setting.
- **No**

Job Timeout

This control specifies how long the product will try to process the postscript document before the product stops trying to print the document. If you specify **0 seconds**, the product continues trying to process indefinitely. The default setting is **0 seconds**. You can use the spin box to change this value from 1 to a maximum of **32,767 seconds**.

Wait Timeout

This control specifies how long the product waits to get more postscript information from the computer. After the specified time passes, the product stops trying to print the document and prints an error message. If you are trying to print a very complicated document, you might want to increase this value. If you specify **0 seconds**, the product waits indefinitely. The default setting is **300 seconds**. You can use the spin box to change this value to a maximum of **32,767 seconds**.

Minimum Font Size to Download as Outline

This control specifies the minimum font size (in pixels) for which the driver downloads TrueType fonts as outline (Type 1) fonts. A font smaller than the minimum setting is downloaded as a bitmap (Type 3) font. Use this option to fine-tune the **Automatic** setting for the **TrueType Font Download** option on the **Advanced** tab in **Document Defaults**. The default setting is **100** pixels. You can use the spin box to change this value from 0 to a maximum of **32,767** pixels.

Maximum Font Size to Download as Outline

This control specifies the maximum font size (in pixels) for which the driver will download TrueType fonts as bitmap (Type 3) fonts. A font larger than the maximum setting will be downloaded as an outline (Type 1) font. Use this option to fine-tune the **Automatic** setting or override the **Send TrueType as Bitmap** setting for the **TrueType Font Download** option on the **Advanced** tab in **Document Defaults**. The default setting is **600** pixels. You can use the spin box to change this value from 0 to a maximum of **32,767** pixels.

Installable Options

Items under **Installable Options** are automatically populated and their defaults set when the driver is installed.

The HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product has printing options that you can install and configure in this section. The following controls are available:

- [Automatic Configuration](#)
- [Mopier Mode](#)
- [Postscript Passthrough – PS Universal Print Driver only](#)

Automatic Configuration

Use the **Device Settings** tab to tell the driver about the hardware configuration of the product. If bidirectional communication is enabled in a supported environment, update this tab by selecting the **Update Now** setting in the **Automatic Configuration** setting. The default setting is **Off**. After an automatic configuration, the setting returns to **Off** after the changes are made.

If your environment does not support bidirectional communication, the **Update Now** setting is unavailable, so you must manually configure the options on this tab.

If you have more than one driver installed for the product (for example, the default HP PCL 6 Print Driver and the HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver), the Update Now feature works automatically only on the driver on which it is activated. The other driver will not be updated, and might show the default setting for the specific product model.

Mopier Mode

The multiple-original print (mopy) function is an HP-designed feature that produces multiple, collated copies from a single print job. Multiple-original printing (mopying) increases performance and reduces network traffic by transmitting the job to the product once, and then storing it in memory or the hard disk. The remainder of the copies are printed at the fastest speed. All documents that are printed in mopier mode can be created, controlled, managed, and finished from the computer, which eliminates the extra step of using a photocopier.

The HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series supports the transmit-once mopying feature when the **Mopier Mode**: setting on the **Device Settings** tab is **Enabled**.

When you use the HP PS Universal Print Driver or the HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver, mopying is performed in one of two ways: either through the software or through the product hardware. When mopier mode is enabled, mopying takes place through the product hardware. One copy of a multiple-page print job is transmitted once through the network to the product, together with a printer job language (PJP) command directing the product to make the specified number of copies.

When you disable the mopier, you are not necessarily disabling multiple collated copies, which the driver can still perform through the software rather than the product hardware (the mopying path that is disabled when you change the **Mopier Mode** setting to **Disabled**). However, a multiple-copy print job that is sent when the mopier is disabled loses the advantage of transmitting the print job once, because the job is sent through the network for each collated copy.

Mopier mode and collation

Mopying and collating print jobs are independent but closely related functions. Mopying, the ability to send original print jobs to the product, is performed by the print driver. Collating can be controlled by either the print driver or the document software program. The mopying mode is selected by default in the driver, and can be disabled by changing the **Mopier Mode** setting on the **Device Settings** tab to **Disabled**.

Control collation through the print driver by selecting or clearing the **Collated** check box on the **Advanced** tab. Click **Copy Count** under the **Paper Output** setting. You can clear the check box, which is available only when the **Copy Count** option is set to more than 1 copy, to allow the software program to control collation.

To receive uncollated multiple copies of a print job, you must clear the **Collated** check box *and* make sure that the software program collation feature is not selected.

The following table shows the relation between mopier mode settings and collation settings in the software program and the driver. The first three columns show the settings; the last column, "Expected result", shows how a 3-page print job would appear.

Table 5-4 Driver mopier mode and collation settings

Mopier mode	Application collation	Driver collation	Expected result
Disabled	Not selected	Not selected	3 copies uncollated
Disabled	Not selected	Selected	3 copies uncollated
Disabled	Selected	Not selected	3 copies collated
Disabled	Selected	Selected	3 copies collated
Enabled	Not selected	Not selected	3 copies uncollated
Enabled	Not selected	Selected	3 copies uncollated

Table 5-4 Driver mopier mode and collation settings (continued)

Mopier mode	Application collation	Driver collation	Expected result
Enabled	Selected	Not selected	3 copies collated
Enabled	Selected	Selected	3 copies collated

Postscript Passthrough – PS Universal Print Driver only

Postscript Passthrough is enabled by default, and must be enabled for most print jobs. Postscript passthrough provides additional capabilities for some software programs when printing to a postscript driver. Options such as **Watermarks**, **n-up** and **Booklet Printing** might not print correctly from some software programs with **Postscript Passthrough** enabled, because such programs send postscript information to the product that cannot be controlled by the driver. Other programs might print using these options without problems. Select **Disabled** and print the document again if you encounter problems.



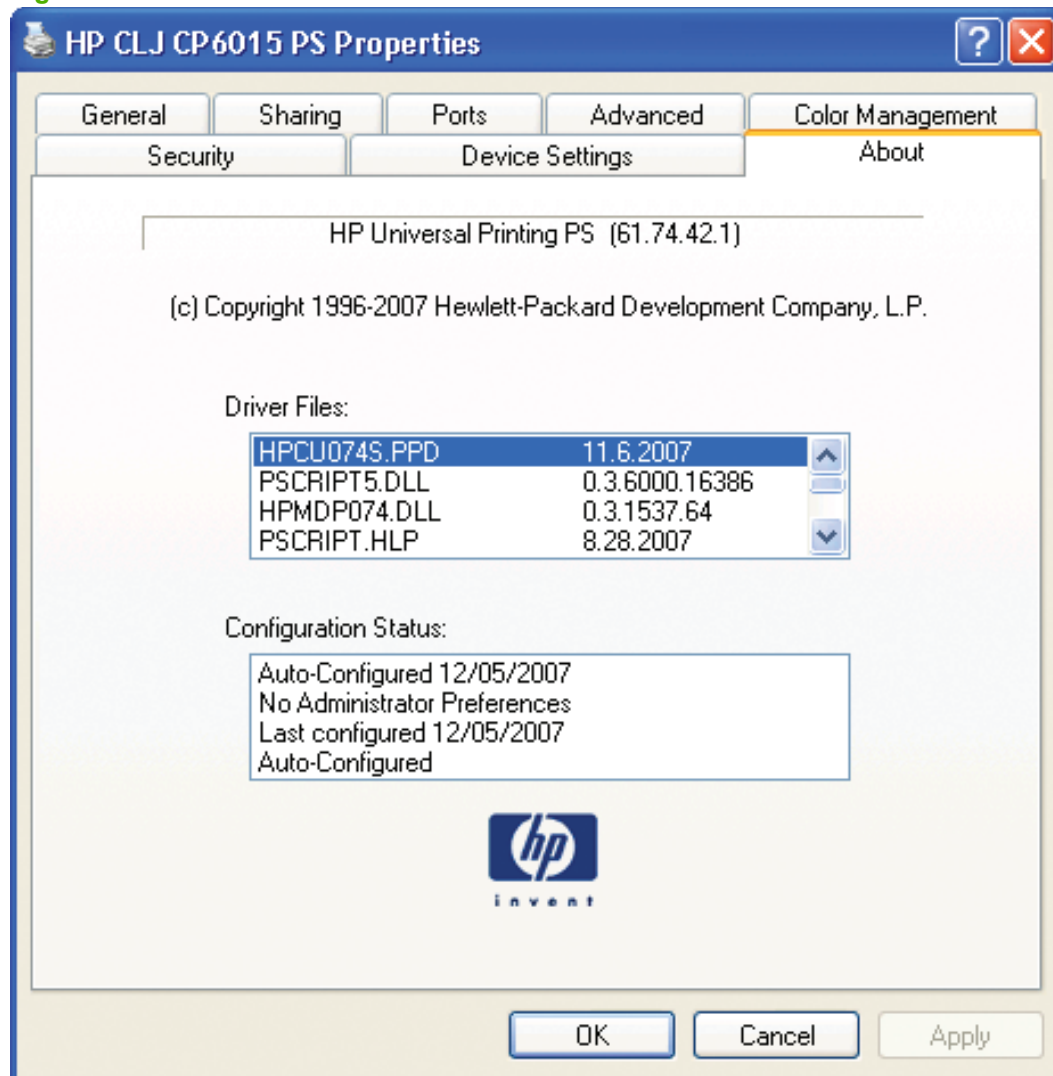
NOTE: In some cases, disabling **Postscript Passthrough** can cause unexpected results within a software program.

About tab features

 **NOTE:** The **About** tab is located on the **Properties** tab set . For information about how to access these tabs, see [Properties driver tabs on page 148](#),

The **About** tab provides detailed information about driver component versions. It contains an overall build version number(in parentheses after the model name) together with specific information about each of the components. The information varies according to the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series model number, driver, date, and versions. The **About** tab is shown in the following figure.

Figure 5-24 About tab



The **About** tab lists driver installation file names and their version numbers. The **About** tab also indicates whether the driver was autoconfigured, whether administrator preferences were set, the date the driver was last configured, and whether the configuration is auto-configured or user-configured.

The **About** button is also available on most driver screens. The **About** button provides a driver version number and creation date.

6 Macintosh software and utilities

Introduction

The HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series comes with software and installers for Apple, Inc. Macintosh systems.

This chapter provides procedures for installing and removing the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series printing-system software for Macintosh operating systems, as well as descriptions about the software and utilities. The chapter provides information about these topics:

- [Supported Macintosh operating systems](#)
- [Macintosh system requirements](#)
- [Printing-system software for Macintosh](#)
- [Install and uninstall the Macintosh printing system](#)
- [Availability](#)
- [HP Printer Utility for Macintosh](#)

Supported Macintosh operating systems

The HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series5 printing-system software supports the following Macintosh operating systems:

- Mac OS X v10.2.8
- Mac OS X v10.3
- Mac OS X v10.4

Macintosh system requirements

The HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series has the following system requirements for Macintosh systems: the minimum recommended RAM and processor as recommended by Apple, Inc., plus 150 MB of free hard disk space.

Printing-system software for Macintosh

The product includes the following software for Macintosh computers:

- PDEs for Mac OS X only (v10.2.8 and later)

PDEs

Printer Dialog Extensions (PDEs) are code plug-ins (for Mac OS X v10.2.8 and later only) that provide access to product features, such as number of copies, duplexing, and quality settings. The PDEs are HP additions to Apple's print driver..

HP Embedded Web Server

Mac OS X v10.2 and later support the HP Embedded Web Server (HP EWS). Use the HP LaserJet Utility to control features that are not available in the driver. Use the HP EWS to perform the following tasks:

- Name the product and assign it to a zone on the AppleTalk network.
- Change product settings.
- Set a password for the product.
- From the computer, lock out functions on the control panel to prevent unauthorized access (see the printing-software help).

Install notes

This text file contains important information about product features, instructions for installing the printing-system software, and technical assistance.

Online help


This HTML-based help system replaces the Apple Guide help system that was provided with Mac OS 9.x HP products. The help system is in English only, and can be viewed through a browser or in the Macintosh OS Help Center.

Screen fonts


The printing-system software for Macintosh operating systems no longer includes a font installer. The HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product uses previously installed system fonts when it is installed on a Macintosh computer.

Install and uninstall the Macintosh printing system

On a Macintosh computer, the installation procedures are basically the same for a network administrator, a network client, and a single user. Install the software on any computer that has save rights to the product. Users must have Administrator rights to install the software.

 **NOTE:** If the computer is connected to the product by a LocalTalk (printer port) connection, you must configure the AppleTalk (or network) control panel for the correct connection to communicate with the product. You must set up the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series, connect it to the computer or network, and turn it on *before* the software is installed. Macintosh operating systems do not support parallel connections.


The Macintosh partition contains an installer program for each language. Find the appropriate language for the operating system that is being used, and then use the installer program for that language.

 **NOTE:** Detailed installation steps can be found in [Mac OS X installation on page 286](#).

HP LaserJet software CD, Macintosh partition

The files contained in the Macintosh partition of the HP LaserJet software CD are grouped by language and reside in the following directory:

- HP CLJ CP6015.mpkg (installer for the Mac OS X operating system)
- Manuals

 **NOTE:** File layouts differ by language for each regional version of the software CD.


Install the HP LaserJet printing-system software for the Macintosh OS

Topics:


- [General installation instructions](#)
- [Mac OS X installation](#)
- [Setup instructions](#)

General installation instructions

1. Insert the Macintosh printing-system software CD into the CD-ROM drive.

 **NOTE:** If the CD screen does not open automatically, double-click the **HP Color LaserJet CP6015** CD-ROM icon on the desktop to open the CD-ROM window.

2. Double-click the **hpcljCP6015.mpkg** icon.
3. Follow the onscreen instructions to complete the software installation.

 **NOTE:** If you are installing the printing-system software on a Macintosh OS X system, be patient. The installer must perform an initial search of the computer for up to 1 minute. During this time the installer might appear to be stalled.

4. When software installation is complete, click **Quit**. Use the following chart to finish setting up the product:

The software program that you use to finish setting up the product varies by operating system. The following table shows the print setup tools that are available.

Table 6-1 Adding a product in Macintosh operating systems

Operating System	Print Center	Printer Setup Utility
Mac OS X v10.2.8	x	
Mac OS X v10.3		x
Mac OS X v10.4	x	x

Mac OS X installation

This section provides information about the various installation dialog-box sequences for the Mac OS X operating system.

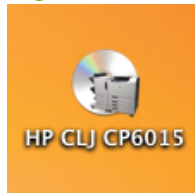
Main Install dialog box sequence

This section provides information about the Macintosh installation dialog-box sequence for the Easy Install (the typical installation option).

Insert the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series printing-system software CD in the CD-ROM drive.

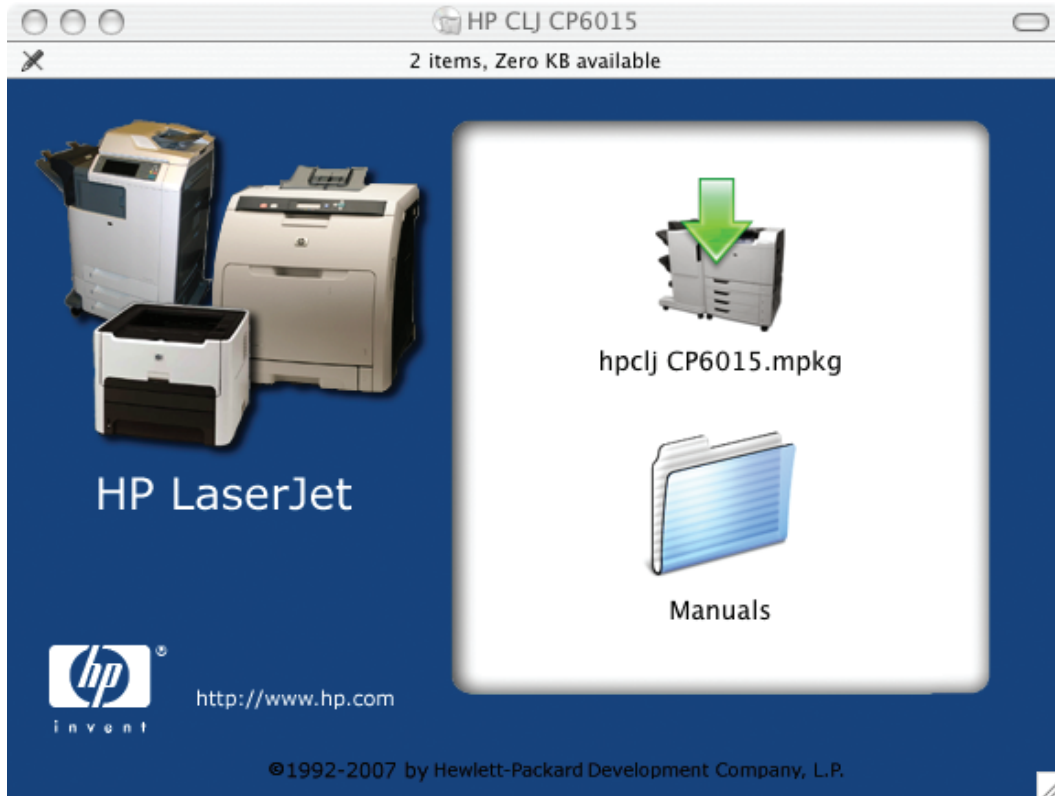
If the CD screen does not open automatically when the CD is put into the CD-ROM drive, double-click the **HP CLJ CP6015** CD-ROM icon on the desktop to open the installer folder.

Figure 6-1 HP CLJ CP6015 CD-ROM icon



The **HP Color LaserJet CP6015** dialog box opens.

Figure 6-2 HP Color LaserJet CP6015 screen



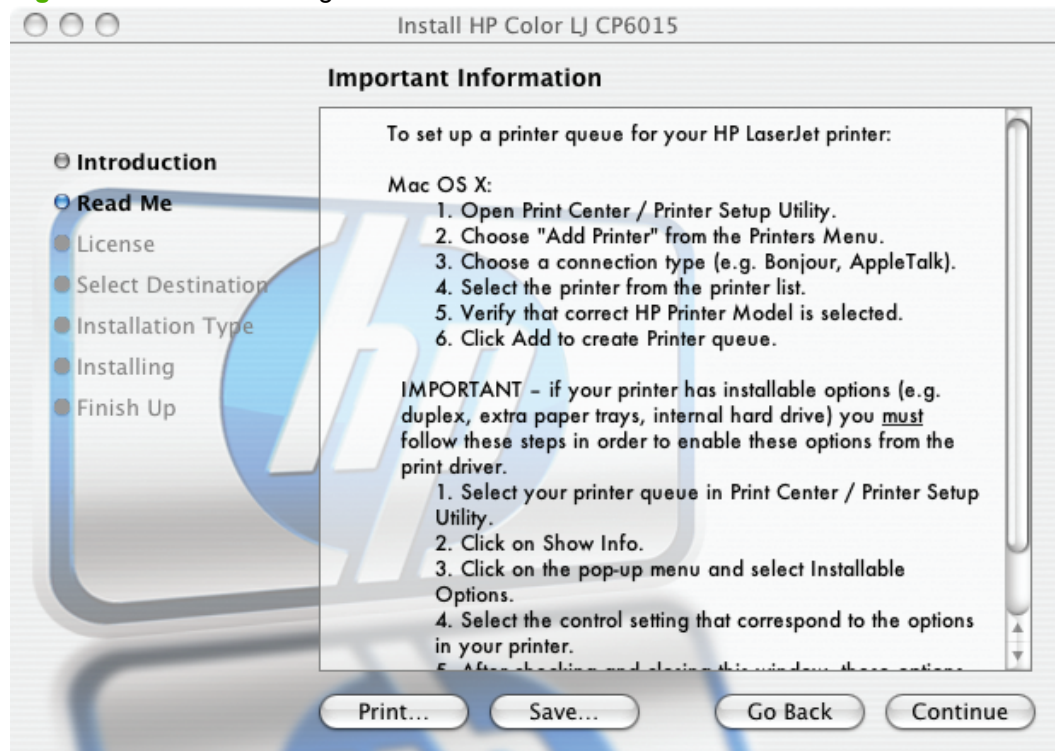
In the **HP LaserJet CP6015** pane, double-click the **hpcljCP6015.mpkg** icon. This begins the install process.

Figure 6-3 HP LaserJet for Macintosh installer startup-screen dialog box



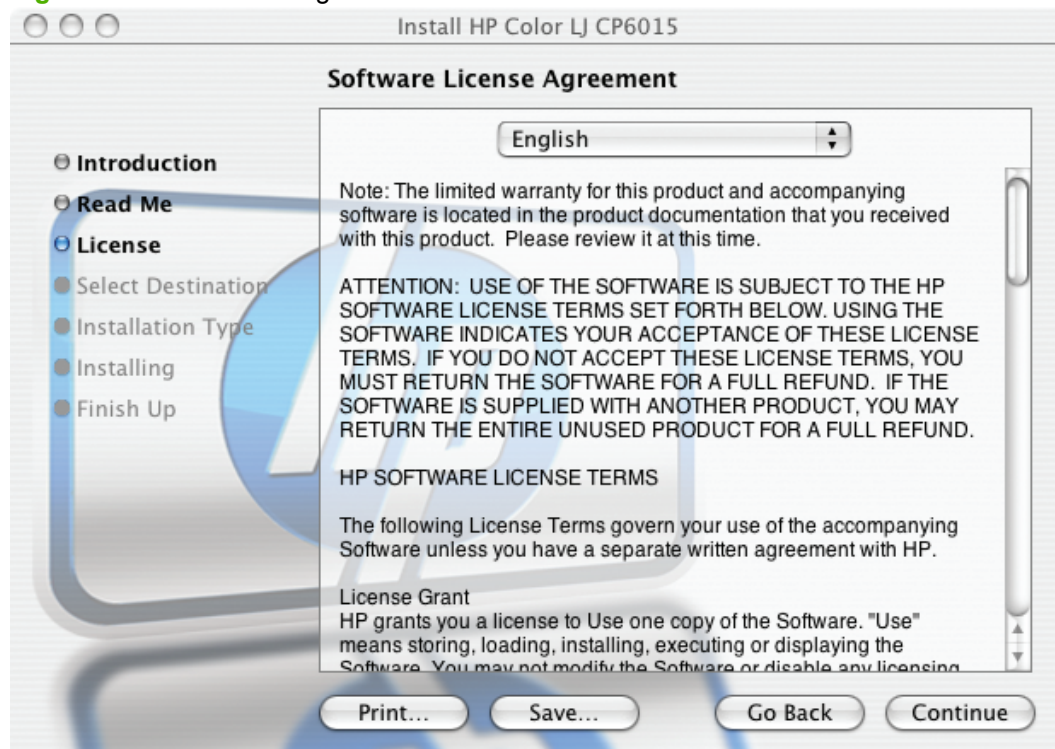
Click **Continue**. The **ReadMe** dialog box appears.

Figure 6-4 ReadMe dialog box



You can save or print the ReadMe file by clicking **Save** or **Print**, Read the ReadMe file, then click **Continue**. The **License** dialog box appears.

Figure 6-5 License dialog box



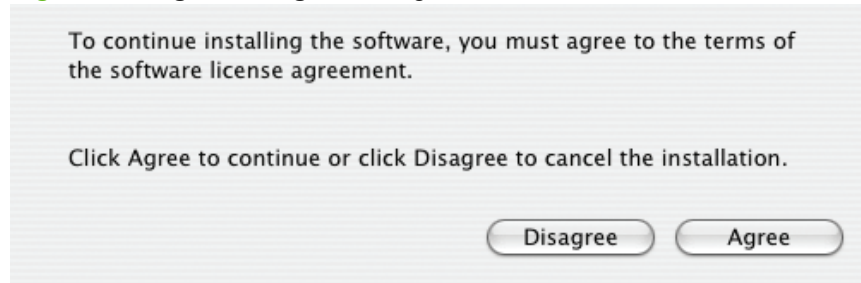
Click **Print...** to open the **Page Setup** dialog box for your default printer and print a copy of the license agreement.

Click **Save** to open the system **Save** dialog box and save the license agreement to disk.

Click **Go Back** to return to the previous screen.

Read the software-license agreement and then click **Continue**. The **Agree/Disagree** dialog box appears.

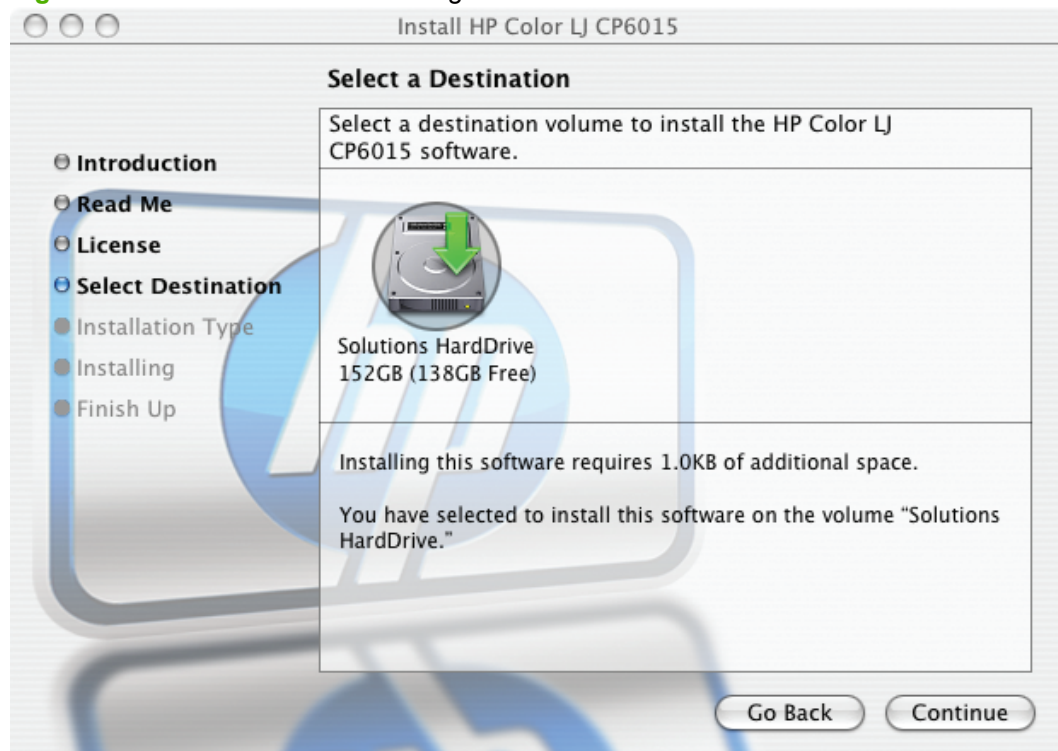
Figure 6-6 Agree/Disagree dialog box



Click **Disagree** to end the installation and close the installer.

Click **Agree** to continue the installation. The **Select Destination** dialog box appears.

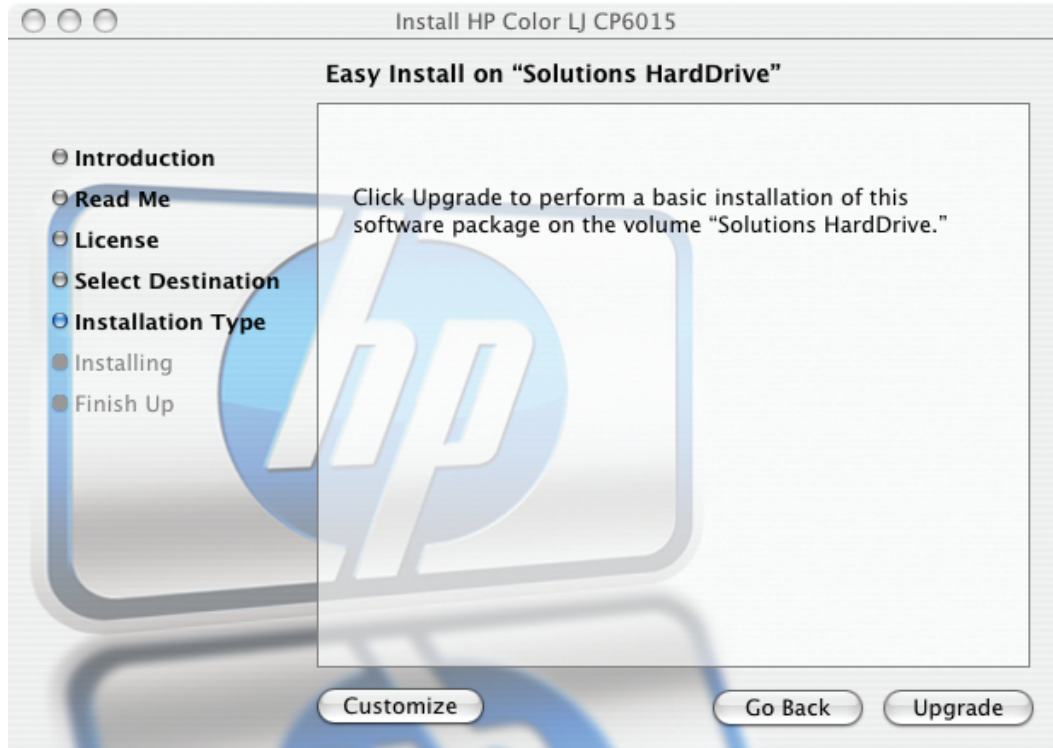
Figure 6-7 Select Destination dialog box



Click **Go Back** to go back to the previous screen.

Click **Continue** to continue the installation. The **Installation Type** dialog box appears.

Figure 6-8 Installation Type dialog box

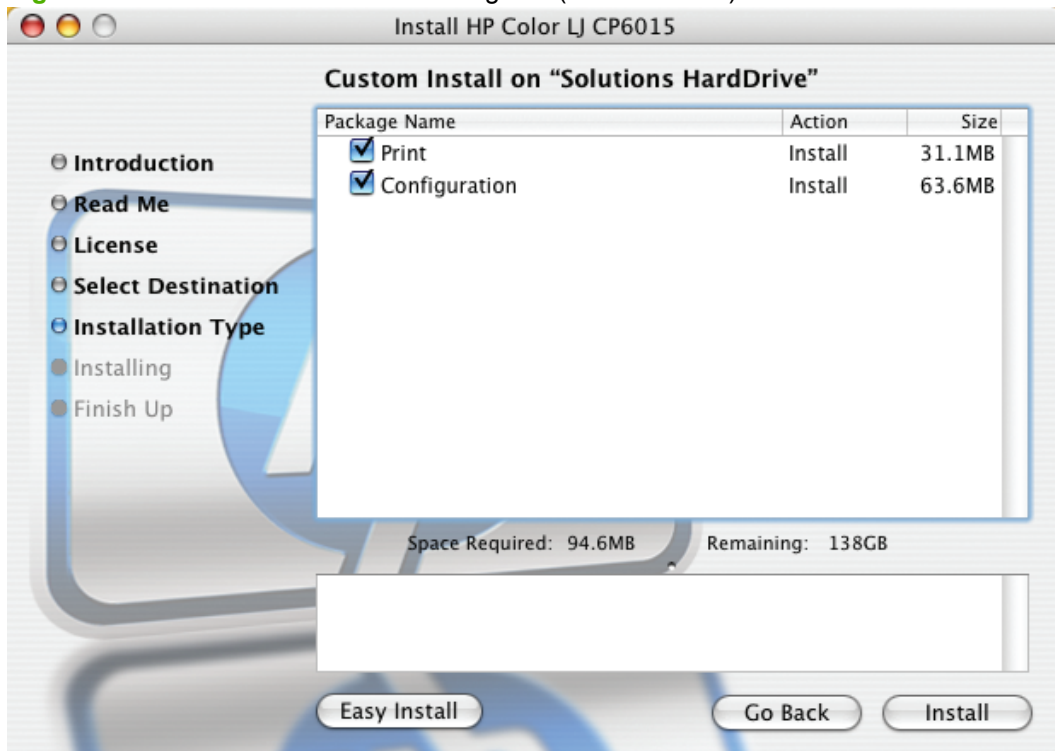


The default option in the drop-down menu at the top of the screen is **Easy Install**. You can also select **Custom Install** in the same menu.

Click **Install** to start the installation on the selected disk

Click **Go Back** to go back to the previous dialog box.

Figure 6-9 HP LaserJet Installer dialog box (custom install)



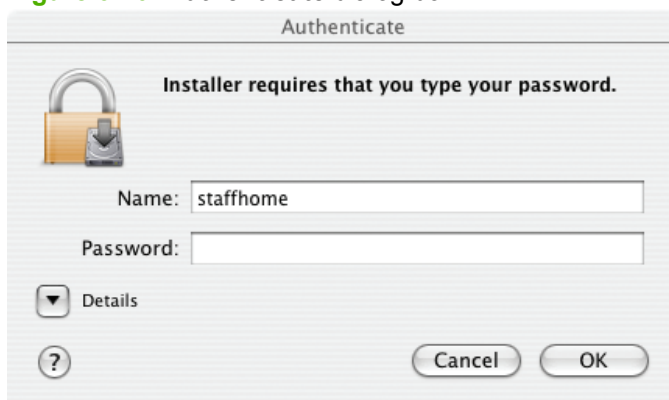
Use the check boxes on the list to install the components that you want to install. Click the ? icon to the right of each item in the list to open a pop-up screen that describes the component.

Click **Install** to start the installation on the selected disk. The files are installed in the Library folder on the Macintosh CD.

Click **Go Back** to go back to the previous dialog box.

The **Authenticate** dialog box appears.

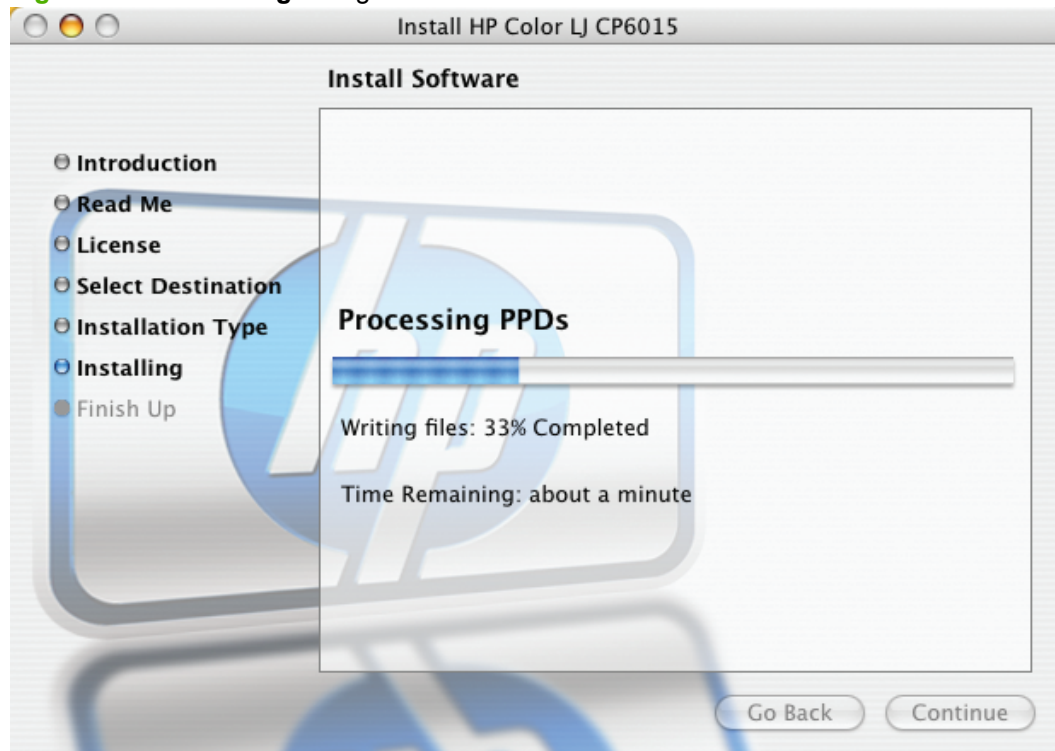
Figure 6-10 Authenticate dialog box



Type the correct "admin" password and click **OK** to continue. The installer startup screen appears.

Click **Cancel** to exit the installation.

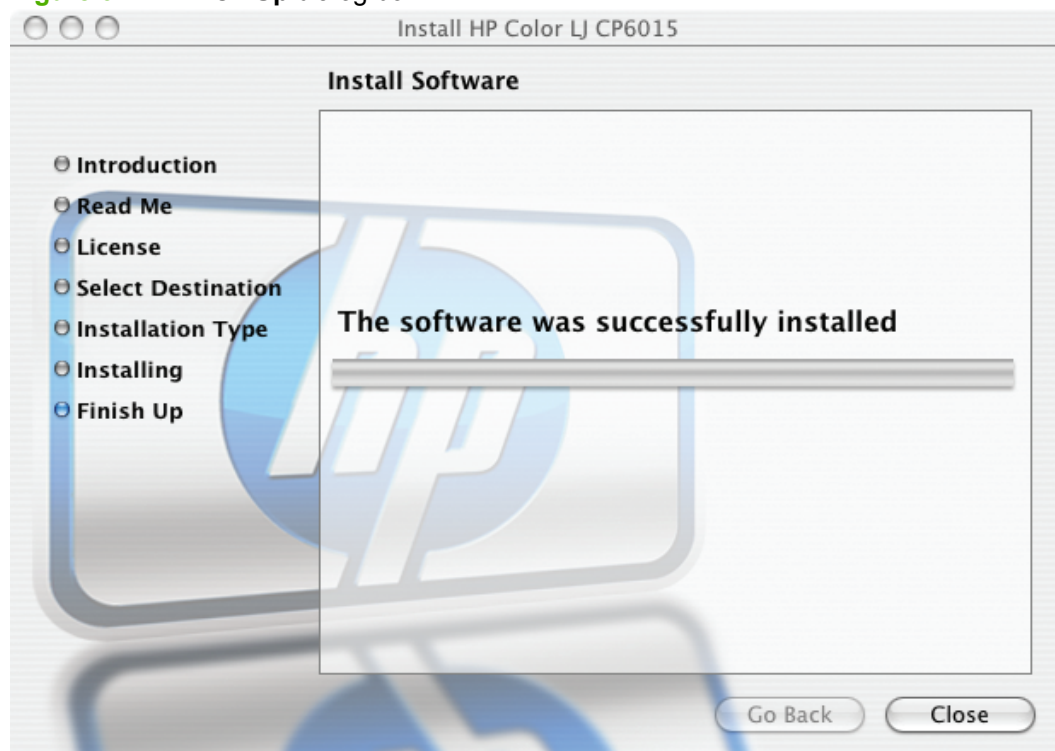
Figure 6-11 Installing dialog box



The **Installing** dialog box shows installation progress. No action is required.

When the installation is complete, the **Finish Up** dialog box appears, stating that the installation was successful.

Figure 6-12 Finish Up dialog box



Click **Close** to exit the installer.

Complete the instructions in [Setup instructions on page 293](#) to set up a printer queue for your HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product.

Setup instructions

This section contains information about the following topics:

- [Setting up a printer with Mac OS X v10.4](#)
- [Setting up a printer with Mac OS X v10.3](#)
- [Troubleshooting the product setup](#)

Setting up a printer with Mac OS X v10.4


Complete these steps *after* completing the printing-system software installation.

1. If you are installing the product using a USB connection, connect the USB cable between the product and the computer. Turn on the product. If you are installing using a network connection, verify that the network cable is connected to the product and that the product is on.
2. In the **Applications** folder, open the **Utilities** Folder, and then run the **Printer Setup Utility**.
3. If you are installing the product using a USB connection, verify that the product appears in the printer list. The **Kind** column in the printer list should display the product name. If this is the case, the setup is complete.

If the product does not appear, or if the correct information does not appear in the **Kind** field, see [Troubleshooting the product setup on page 296](#).

If you are installing the product using a network connection, continue with the following steps.


4. Click **Add** in the **Printer List** to open the **Printer Browser** screen.
5. You can use either Bonjour or IP Printing for the network connection.

 **NOTE:** Bonjour is the easiest method and is the best method to use if the product is installed on your local network.

IP Printing *must* be used if you are installing the product on a different network.

If you are using Bonjour, carry out the following steps:

- a. Click the **Default Browser** tab.
- b. Select the product from the list. The software verifies that the product is connected to the network and the **Print Using** field is automatically populated with the correct PPD for the product.

 **NOTE:** If you are on a network that has more than one product, print a configuration page and match the Bonjour Printer Name to the name on the list to identify the product that you are installing.

NOTE: If the product does not appear in the list, verify that the product is on and connected to the network, then try turning the product off and then on again. If the product PPD does not appear in the **Print Using** pull-down list, turn the computer off and then on again, then restart the setup process. For more troubleshooting information, see [Troubleshooting the product setup on page 296](#).

If you are using the IP Printing method, carry out the following steps:

- a. Click the **IP Printer** tab.
- b. Choose **HP Jet Direct – Socket** from the **Protocol** pull-down menu. This is the recommended setting for HP products.
- c. Follow these steps to print the configuration pages.

Print a configuration page

- i. Press the **select** button ✓ to open the menus.
 - ii. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to **INFORMATION**, and then press **select** ✓.
 - iii. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to **PRINT CONFIGURATION**.
 - iv. Press **select** ✓ to print the configuration page.
 - d. On the first configuration page, under **IPv4**, find the IP Address. Type this address into the **Address** field on the add printer screen.
 - e. The **Name**, **Location**, and **Print Using** information will automatically be filled in. If the product PPD does not appear in the **Print Using** field, turn the computer off and then on again and restart the setup process.
6. Select the product and click **Add**. The **Installable Options** screen appears.
 7. In the **Optional Trays**: drop-down menu, select the trays that are installed on the product.
 8. In the **Collation in Printer**: drop-down menu, select the amount of memory and hard disk combination that is installed in the product:
 9. If the product has a hard disk, select **Installed** from the **Printer Hard Disk** drop-down menu.
 10. If the product has a duplex unit, select the **Duplex Unit** check box.
 11. In the **Accessory Output Bins**: drop-down menu, select the output bins that are installed on the product.
 12. In the **Paper Matching**: drop-down menu, select one of the following options:
 - **Prompt User for correct size**
 - **Nearest Size & Scale**
 - **Nearest Size & Crop**
 13. After you have selected the settings in the **Installable Options** screen, click **Continue**. The product name appears in the **Printer List** and the setup is complete.

Setting up a printer with Mac OS X v10.3


Complete these steps *after* completing the printing-system software installation.

1. If you are installing the product using a USB connection, connect the USB cable between the product and the computer. Turn on the product. If you are installing using a network connection, verify that the network cable is connected to the product and that the product is on.
2. In the **Applications** folder, open the **Utilities** folder, and then run the **Printer Setup Utility**.
3. If you are installing the product using a USB connection, verify that the product appears in the printer list. The **Kind** column in the printer list same change as before should display the product name. If this is the case, the setup is complete.

If the Product does not appear, or if the correct information does not appear in the **Kind** field, see [Troubleshooting the product setup on page 296](#).

If you are installing the product using a network connection, continue with the following steps.


4. Click **Add** and then click **Add** to open the add printer screen.
5. Select the network connection protocol in the top pull-down menu. The two supported protocols are **Rendezvous** and **IP Printing**.


 **NOTE:** Rendezvous is the easiest method and is the best method to use if the product is installed on your local network.


IP Printing *must* be used if you are installing the product on a different network.

If you are using Rendezvous, carry out the following step:

Select the product in the **Name** list. The **Printer Model** and **Model Name** are selected automatically.

 **NOTE:** If you are on a network that has more than one product, print a configuration page and match the Rendezvous Printer Name to the name on the list to identify the product that you are installing.


 **NOTE:** If the product does not appear in the list, verify that the product is on and connected to the network. If it still does not appear, try turning the product off and then on again. Finally, turn the computer off and then on again, then restart the setup process. For more troubleshooting information, see [Troubleshooting the product setup on page 296](#).

 **NOTE:** If the automatic selection fails, or if you want to manually select a .PPD file, click the **Printer Model** pull-down menu, select **HP**, and then select the .PPD file that you want to add. If the product PPD does not appear in the **Model Name** list, turn the computer off and then on again and restart the setup process.

If you are using IP Printing, carry out the following steps:

- a. Choose **Socket/HP Jet Direct** from the **Printer Type** pull-down menu. This is the recommended setting for HP products.
- b. Follow these directions to print the product configuration pages.

Print a configuration page

- i. Press the **select** button ✓ to open the menus.
 - ii. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to **INFORMATION**, and then press **select** ✓.
 - iii. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to **PRINT CONFIGURATION**.
 - iv. Press **select** ✓ to print the configuration page.
 - c. On the first configuration page, under **Product Settings**, find the IP Address. Type this address into the **Printer Address** field on the add printer screen.
 - d. Select the **Printer Model** and select the product in the **Model Name** list. If the product PPD does not appear in the **Model Name** list, turn the computer off and then on again and restart the setup process.
6. Click **Add**. The product appears in the **Printer List**.
7. To configure installable options such as a duplexing unit or optional paper trays, click **Show Info?** and select **Installable Options** in the drop-down menu.
-
-  **NOTE:** This step is necessary only for network connections and USB connections that use Rendezvous/Bonjour. AppleTalk automatically configures the installable options.
-
8. In the **Optional Trays:** drop-down menu, select the trays that are installed on the product.
9. In the **Collation in Printer:** drop-down menu, select the amount of memory and hard disk combination that is installed in the product:
10. If the product has a hard disk, select **Installed** from the **Printer Hard Disk** drop-down menu.
11. If the product has a duplex unit, select the **Duplex Unit** check box.
12. In the **Accessory Output Bins:** drop-down menu, select the output bins that are installed on the product.
13. In the **Paper Matching:** drop-down menu, select one of the following options:
- **Prompt User for correct size**
 - **Nearest Size & Scale**
 - **Nearest Size & Crop**
14. Click **Apply Changes**, and then close the **Printer List** dialog box.

Troubleshooting the product setup

If the product does not appear in the printer list after an installation:

Complete each one of these solutions in the order given, and restart the setup process after each one to see if the issue has been resolved.

- Verify that the USB or network cable is connected between the product and the computer and that the product is powered on.
- Try disconnecting and reconnecting the cable. If the computer has more than one USB port, try a different USB port.

- Turn the product off and then back on.
- Turn the computer off and then back on.
- If you are using a USB hub on the computer, disconnect any other USB devices from the hub.

If the wrong PPD appears in the Kind column in the printer list after installation:

1. Unplug the USB cable.
2. Delete the print queue with the incorrect type (for example, Generic PostScript Printer).
3. Reinstall the printing-system software.
4. Turn the computer off and then on.
5. Reconnect the USB cable from the computer to the product.

If these steps do not resolve the problem, delete the incorrect print queue, click **Add**, choose the product from the list, and then browse manually for the product PPD.

Uninstall the Macintosh printing system

To uninstall the Macintosh Printing System, delete the **Print Queue**, and then restart the computer. Then, empty the **Trash**.

Availability

The Macintosh printing-system software consists of the following folders: the HP LaserJet Installer-Integrated installer program for Mac OS X, a PDF folder for manuals, and an in-house marketing application. The folders are named as follows:

- HP CLJ CP6015.mpkg (the HP LaserJet Installer)
- Manuals

HP Printer Utility for Macintosh

The HP Printer Utility is a software program that gives you access to the product in Mac OS X.

The HP Printer Utility does not work when it is installed by using the AppleTalk protocol. Use IP, Bonjour or Rendezvous to enable the HP Printer Utility.

The following topics are discussed:

- [Access to the HP Printer Utility](#)
- [Supplies Status](#)
- [Device Information](#)
- [HP Support](#)
- [Upload Fonts](#)
- [Color Usage](#)
- [File Upload](#)
- [Update Firmware](#)
- [Duplex mode](#)
- [Protect Direct Ports](#)
- [Trays Configuration](#)
- [Lock Resources](#)
- [Stored Jobs](#)
- [E-mail Alerts](#)
- [Network Settings](#)
- [Bonjour Settings](#)
- [Restrict Color](#)
- [Output Devices](#)
- [Supplies Management](#)
- [Additional Settings](#)

Access to the HP Printer Utility

In Mac OS X v10.3, follow these steps to gain access to the HP Printer Utility:

1. Open the Finder.
2. Find and double-click **Printers**. The **Select Printer** screen appears.

In Mac OS X v10.4, follow these steps to gain access to the HP Printer Utility:

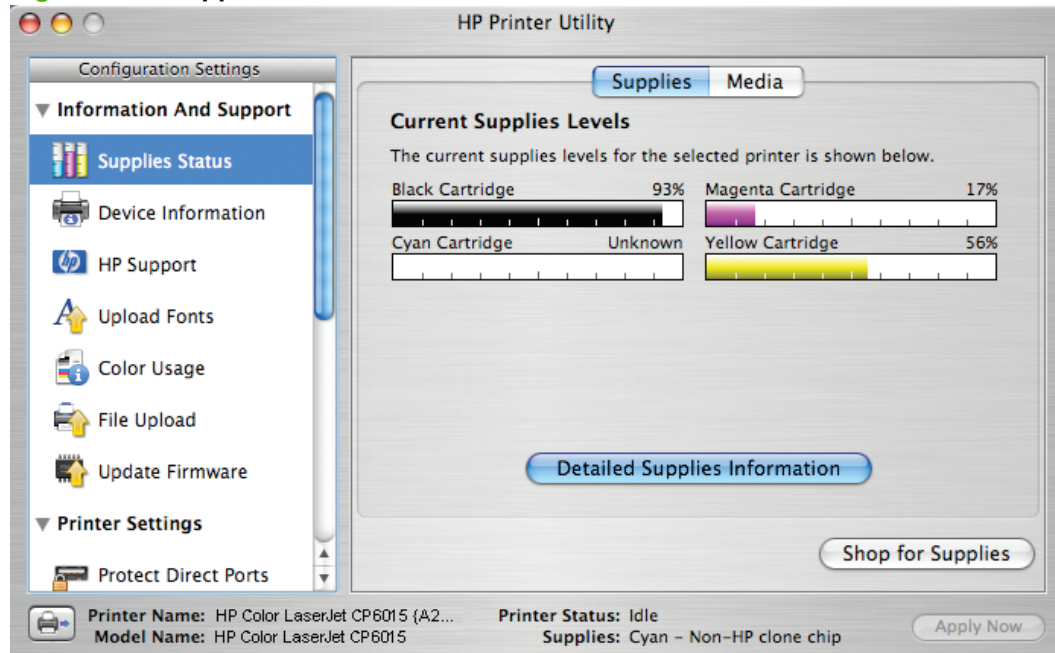
1. In the **Finder**, click **Applications** and then click **Utilities**.
2. The **Printer Setup Utility** screen appears. Select the product, and then click **Utility**.

The following sections describe the screens and features that are available in the HP Printer Utility.

Supplies Status

The HP Printer Utility opens to the **Supplies Status** screen.

Figure 6-13 Supplies Status screen



Click **Detailed Supplies Information...** to open the **Supplies Information** screen.

Use the scroll button to see information about the color print cartridges.

If you have Internet access and click **Shop for Supplies**, a screen appears that explains the ordering process and describes the kind of information that can be sent about your product to facilitate the ordering of supplies.

Click the **Hewlett-Packard Online Privacy Statement** link to open a screen that shows the HP privacy statement.

You can continue ordering supplies without sending product information by clicking the **continue without sending this information** link.

To send a message to HP, click the **contact HP** link.

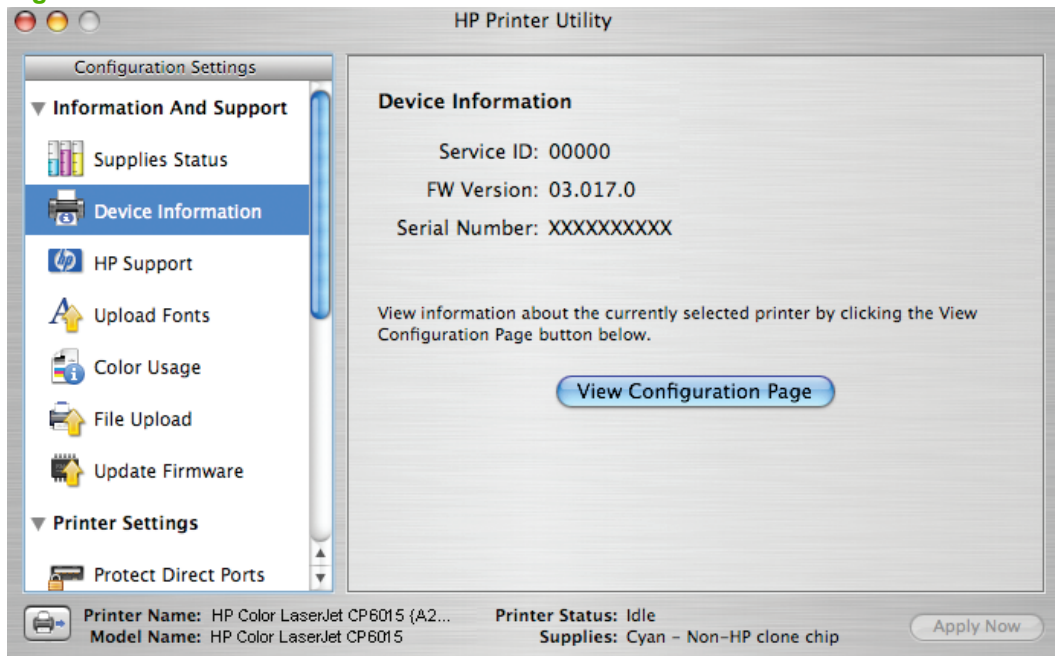
On the **Supplies Status** screen, click **paper** to see the status of the trays.

You can also order supplies from this screen by clicking **Order HP Supplies**.

Device Information

Click **Device Information** in the menu on the left to find the product service ID (if assigned), the firmware version, and the serial number.

Figure 6-14 Device Information screen

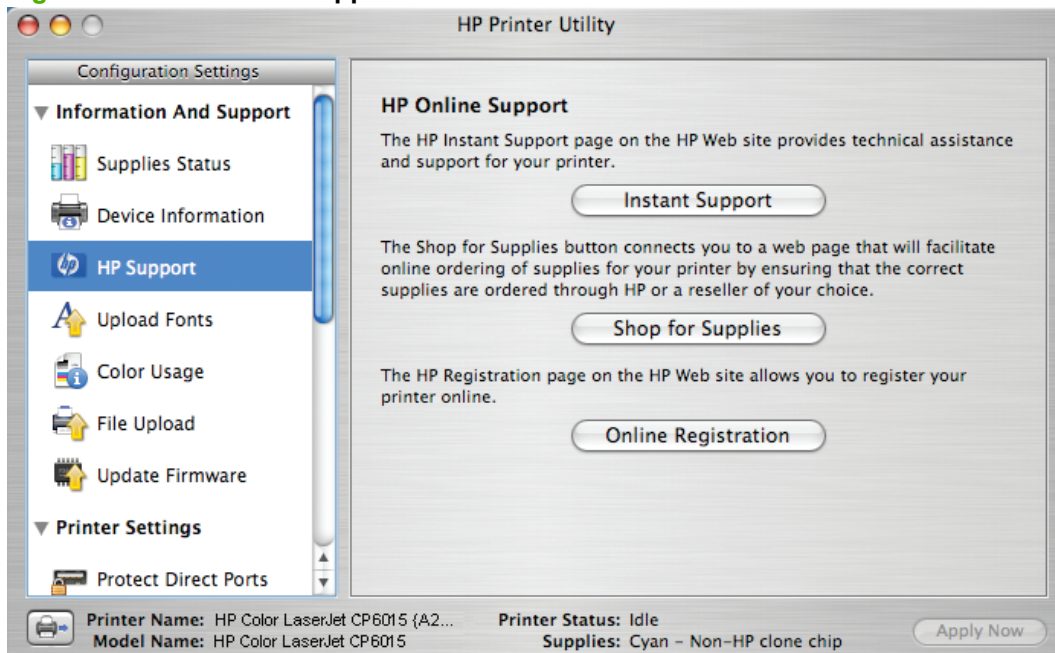


The product configuration page shows other settings; click **View Configuration Page**.

HP Support

Click **HP Support** to open the **HP Online Support** screen.

Figure 6-15 HP Online Support screen



If you have Internet access, you can connect to HP support pages over the Web from this screen.

Click the **HP Online Support** screen to open the HP Instant Support Web page.

Click the **Hewlett-Packard Online Privacy Statement** link to open a screen that shows the HP privacy statement.

Click the **Product Support** link if you do not want to send information to HP but would like to receive generic product support.

Click **Continue** to open a page where you can select the product and find further information about product support.

Click **Cancel** to return to the **HP Online Support** screen in the HP Printer Utility.

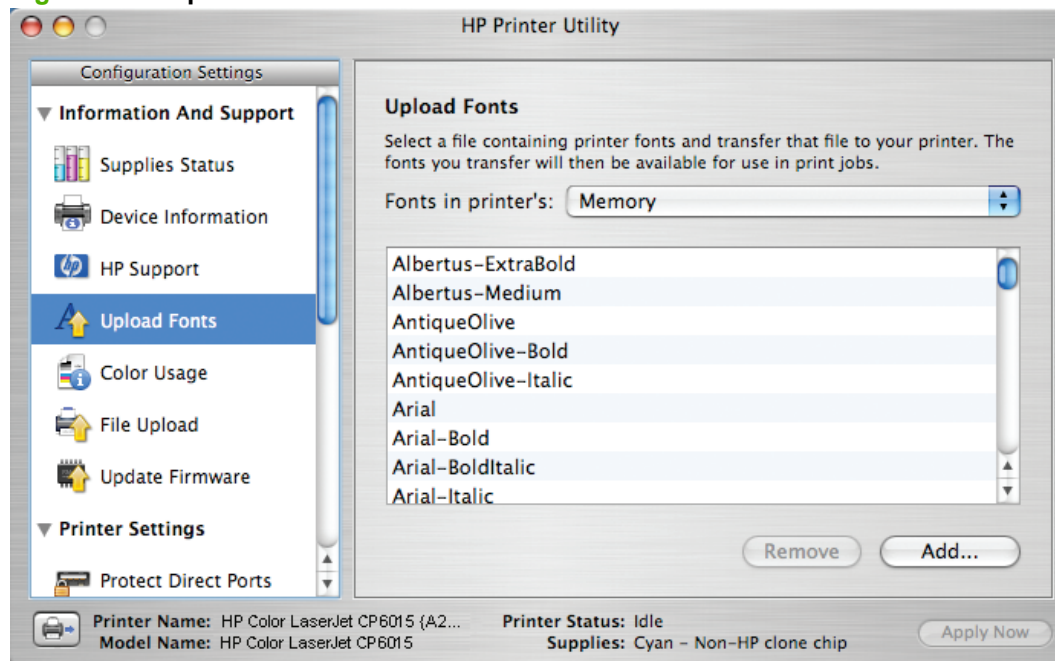
On the **HP Online Support** screen, click **Shop for Supplies** to open the Order Supplies Web page.

The **Online Registration** link is provided to register your product online.

Upload Fonts

In the **Configuration Settings** menu, click **Upload Fonts** to gain access to fonts that you can upload to the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product.

Figure 6-16 Upload Fonts screen



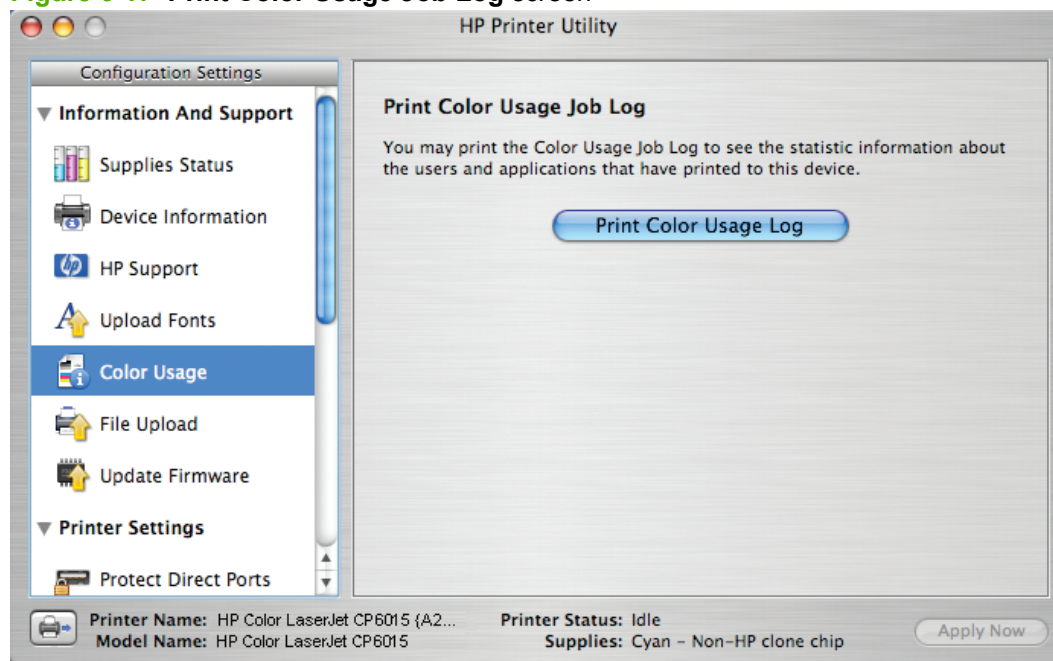
The drop-down menu in the **Upload Fonts** pane has the following options:

- **Memory.** Fonts that are available in the printer memory are listed.
- **Disk.** Select this option to shows any fonts that are installed on the printer hard disk or flash disk. By default, no fonts are stored on either of these disks. To upload fonts, select the font name and click **Add**

Color Usage

Click **Color Usage** in the **Information and Support** menu to open a screen and print a color-usage job log.

Figure 6-17 Print Color Usage Job Log screen



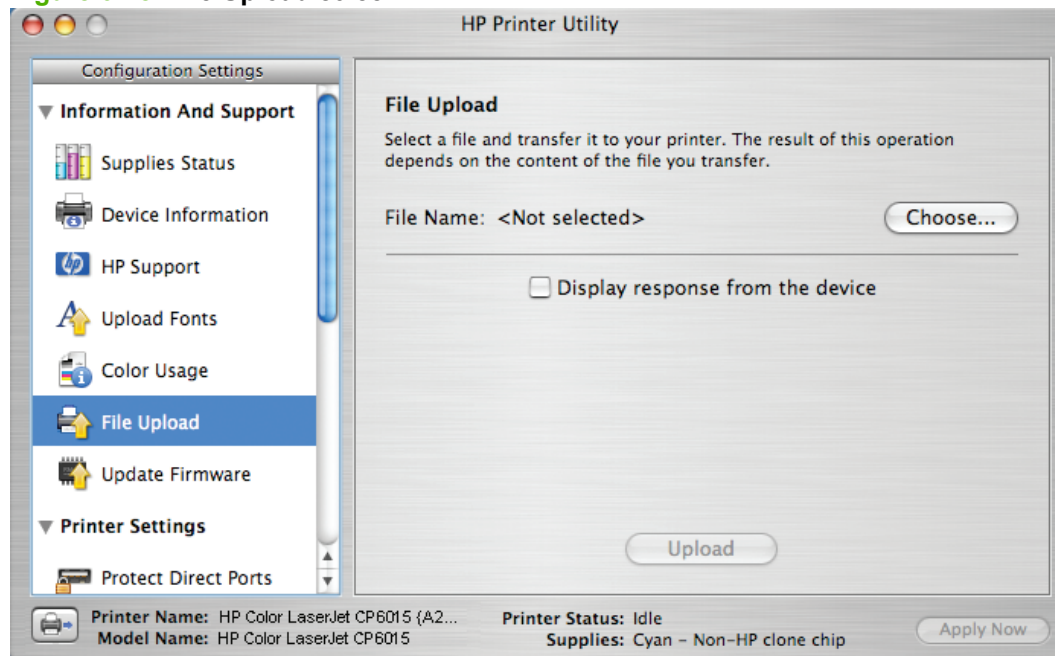
Click **Print Color Usage Log** to print a page that shows information about users, print jobs, and software programs that have printed to the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product. In addition, the color-usage log lists the following details about print jobs:

- Date and time
- Total number of jobs
- Mono (monochrome, or black-and-white) sides
- Color sides
- paper sheets

File Upload

On the **Configuration Settings** menu, click **File Upload** to open the **File Upload** screen.

Figure 6-18 File Upload screen



The **File Upload** command is supported for file types that can be sent directly to the product without first being opened through a software program. Some files can be uploaded to the product, but some cannot.

Documents in the following file formats can be printed by using a command line. That is, they do not need to be opened in a software program that supports the file format (such as the Adobe Acrobat or Acrobat Reader programs for .PDF files), but can be sent directly to the product by using the **File Upload** command.

- HP LaserJet printer command language (.PRN)
- Portable document format (.PDF)
- Postscript (.PS)
- Text (.TXT)

On the **File Upload** screen, click **Choose...** to open a navigation screen. Locate the file you want to upload and click **Open**.

On the **File Upload** screen, click **Display response from the device** to see whether the upload was successful. If the file loads successfully, no message appears.

On the navigation screen, select the file and click **Open**. The file name appears in the **File Upload** screen of the HP Printer Utility. Click **Upload**.

Update Firmware

Select **Update Firmware** to locate a firmware upgrade file and install it on the product. Click **Choose . . .** to browse to the firmware file on the computer and click **Open**. The **Update Firmware**

screen shows the file name. Click **Update**. For more information about performing remote firmware upgrades, see [Remote firmware update on page 318](#).

Remote firmware update by using the HP Printer Utility

Make sure that you have the tools and files that are necessary for the update. You will need the HP Printer Utility and the CP6015FW.RFU file, which is the firmware file for the product. The HP Printer Utility is a software program that is available only for Mac OS X v10.2 and later.

The HP Printer Utility can be found on the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series printing-system software CD-ROM that came with the product. If you do not have the CD-ROM, you can obtain the HP Printer Utility by downloading the latest product installer from www.hp.com/go/cljcp6015_software.


The firmware file (CP6015FW.RFU) can be downloaded from the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/cljcp6015_firmware


See [Downloading the new firmware to the product on page 318](#) for more information.

After you have the firmware file and the HP Printer Utility, you are ready to begin the update process. Complete the following steps:

1. Open the HP Printer Utility.
2. Select **Update Firmware**, click **Choose**, browse to firmware upgrade file, and then click **Open**.
3. On the **Update Firmware** screen, click **Update**.

 **NOTE:** You might receive an error message on the screen indicating that the product is offline. Verify that the product is turned on. If it is, ignore the message. The **Updating** screen appears and the update proceeds as expected.

4. The update process can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 319](#) appear on the control panel.

 **NOTE:** The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.

5. Print a configuration page and verify that the firmware revision number matches the revision of the current update.

Duplex mode

For the HP Color LaserJet CP6015dn and HP Color LaserJet CP6015x product models, the **Configuration Settings** menu includes a **Duplex Mode** setting. Click this setting to open the **Duplex Mode** screen.

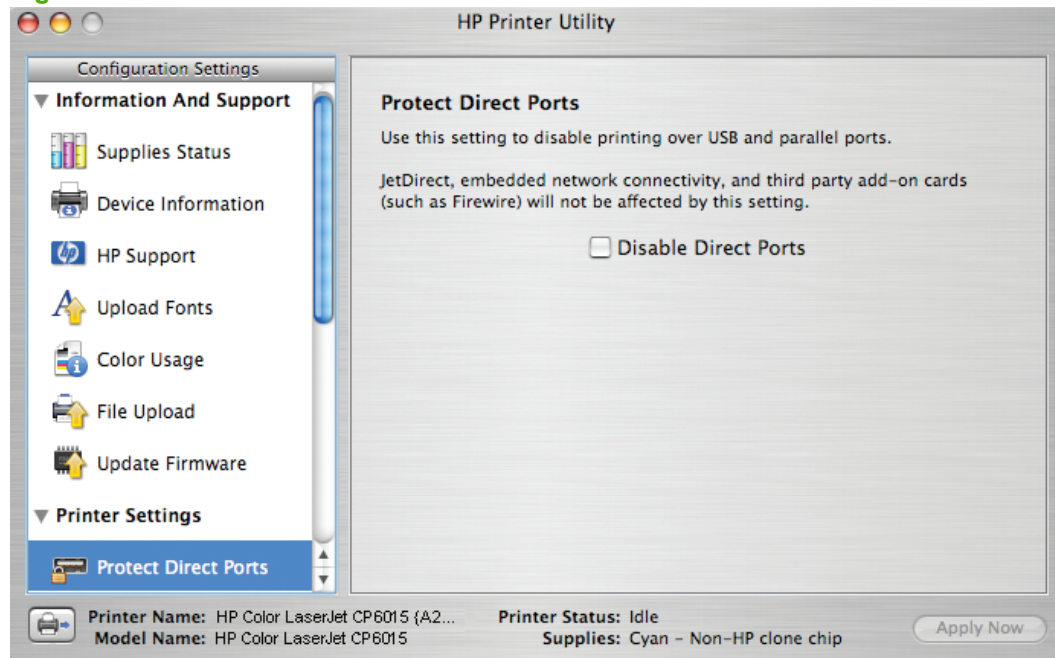
Use the Enable Duplex Mode command to print internal diagnostic and test pages on both sides of the page.

1. Select **Duplex Mode** to open the **Duplex Mode** screen.
2. Select the **Enable Duplex Mode** check box. This box is clear by default.
3. Click **Apply Now** to enable printing on both sides of the page.

Protect Direct Ports

Use this setting to disable printing over USB and parallel ports. JetDirect, embedded network connectivity, and third-party add-on cards, such as FireWire, will not be affected by this setting.

Figure 6-19 Protect Direct Ports screen

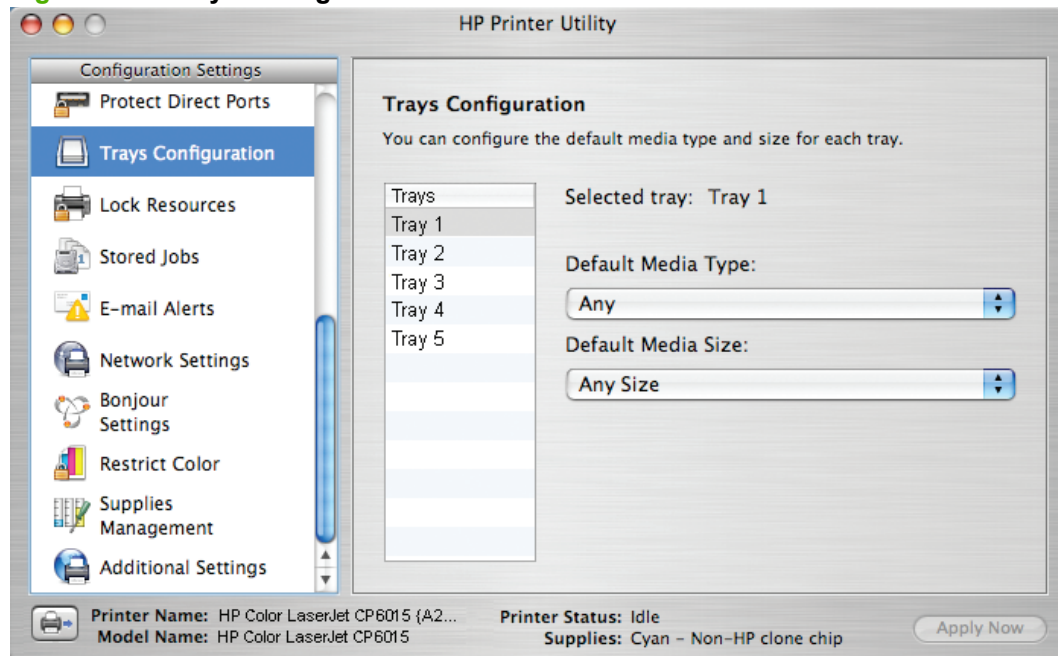


Click **Disable Direct Ports**

Trays Configuration

The **Trays Configuration** screen is shown in the following figure.

Figure 6-20 Trays Configuration screen

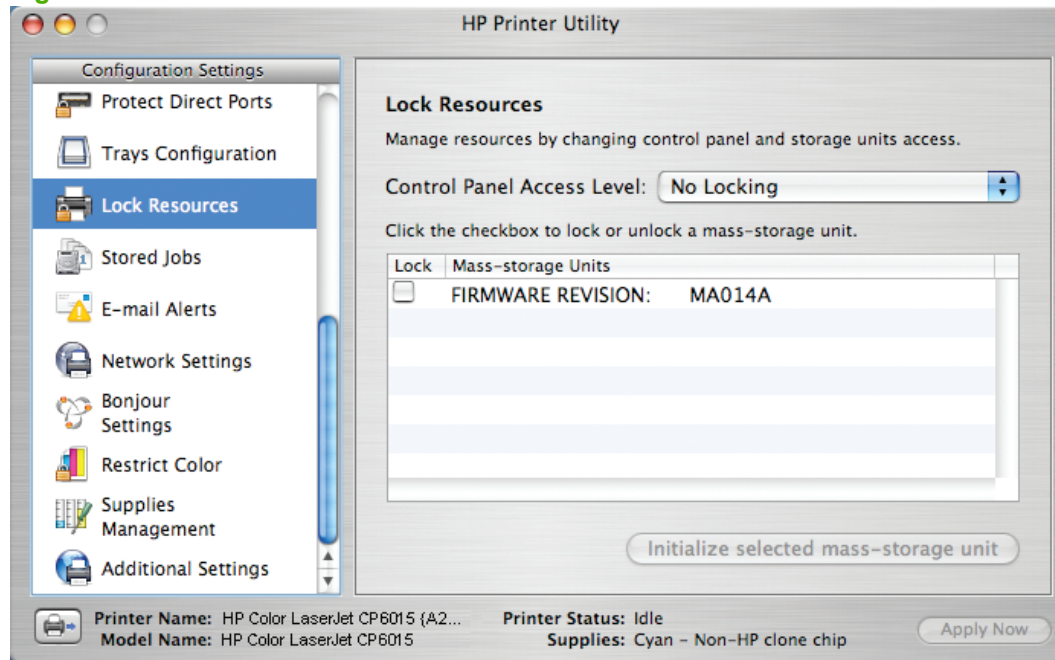


1. Select **Trays Configuration** to change paper size and type for each of the trays installed on your product.
2. To change the paper size, select a tray and then select a different paper size in the **Default paper Size** drop-down menu.
3. To change the paper type, select a tray and then select a different paper type in the **Default paper Type** drop-down menu.
4. Click **Apply Now** to save the settings.

Lock Resources

Select **Lock Resources** to lock the control panel and storage device access on the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series.

Figure 6-21 Lock Resources screen



In **Control Panel Access Level**, select one of the following settings:

- **No Locking** provides full control of the product.
- **Minimal Locking** provides control over paper-handling features.
- **Moderate Locking** blocks changes in the product configuration.
- **Maximal Locking** prevents users from changing product control-panel settings.

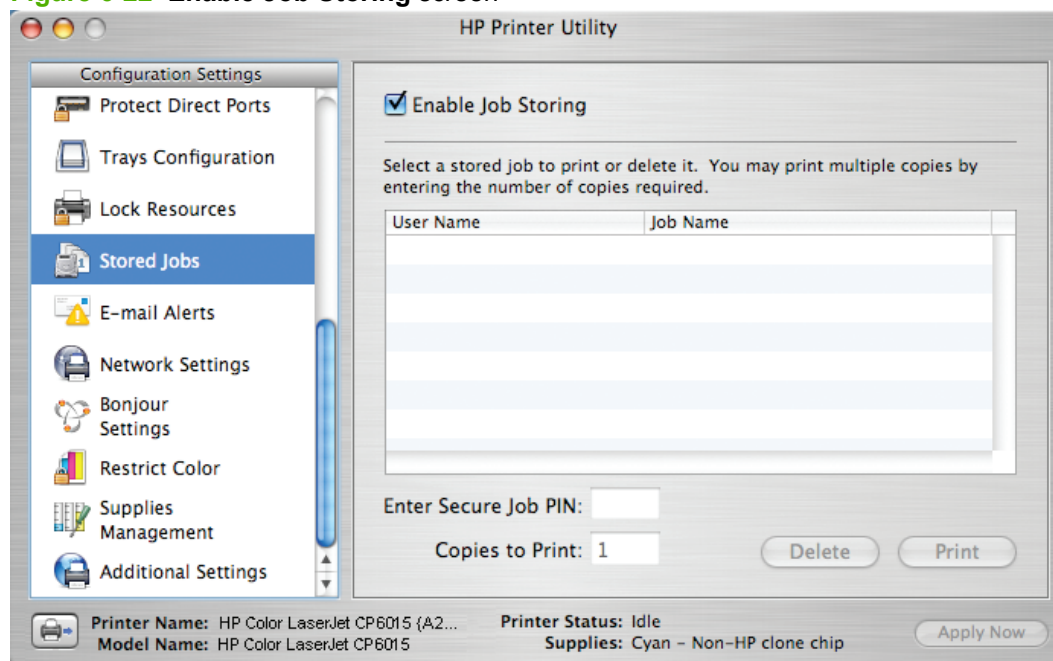
In the lower pane, select the **Lock** check box for the mass-storage unit that you want to lock.

⚠ **WARNING!** Click **Initialize selected mass-storage unit** *only* if you want to erase all data that is currently stored on the hard drive. *You cannot undo this action.*

Stored Jobs

Select **Stored Job** to change the **Enable Job Storing** setting. This setting is selected by default. Click to clear the check box to disable the job-storing feature.

Figure 6-22 Enable Job Storing screen



You can type a PIN for your job in the **Enter Secure Job PIN** field.

Select the number of copies in the **Copies to Print** field.

Select a stored job and click **Print** to print the job.

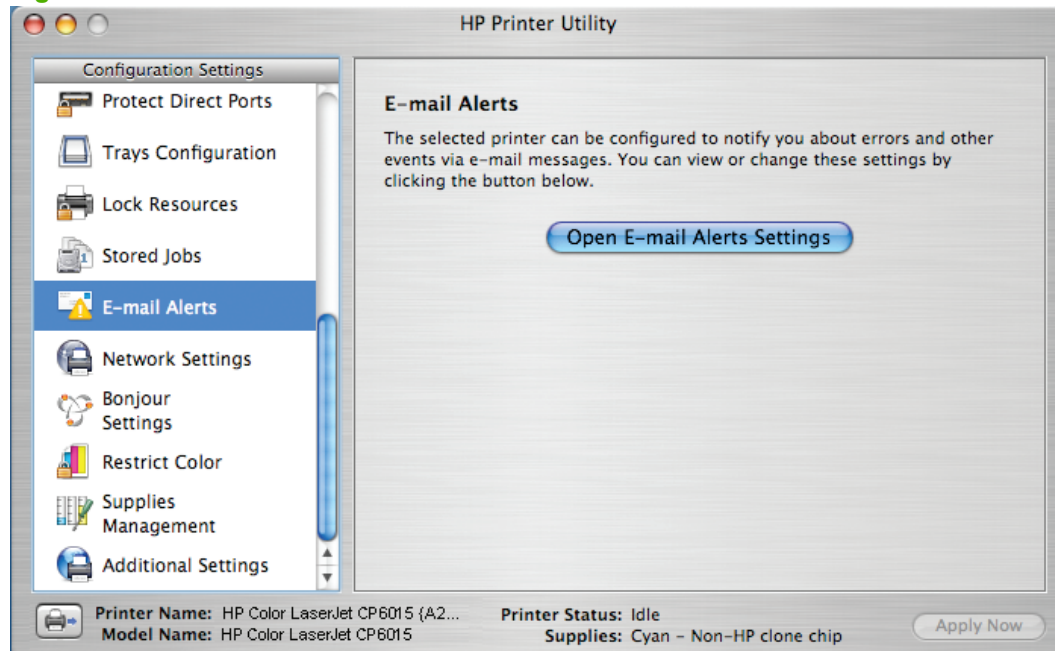
Select a stored job and click **Delete** to delete the job.

E-mail Alerts

Select **E-mail Alerts** to configure the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product to send e-mail notifications to users.

If a user name and password have been set, you might need to obtain them from the IT administrator. For more information, see the *HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Embedded Web Server User Guide*.

Figure 6-23 E-mail Alerts screen

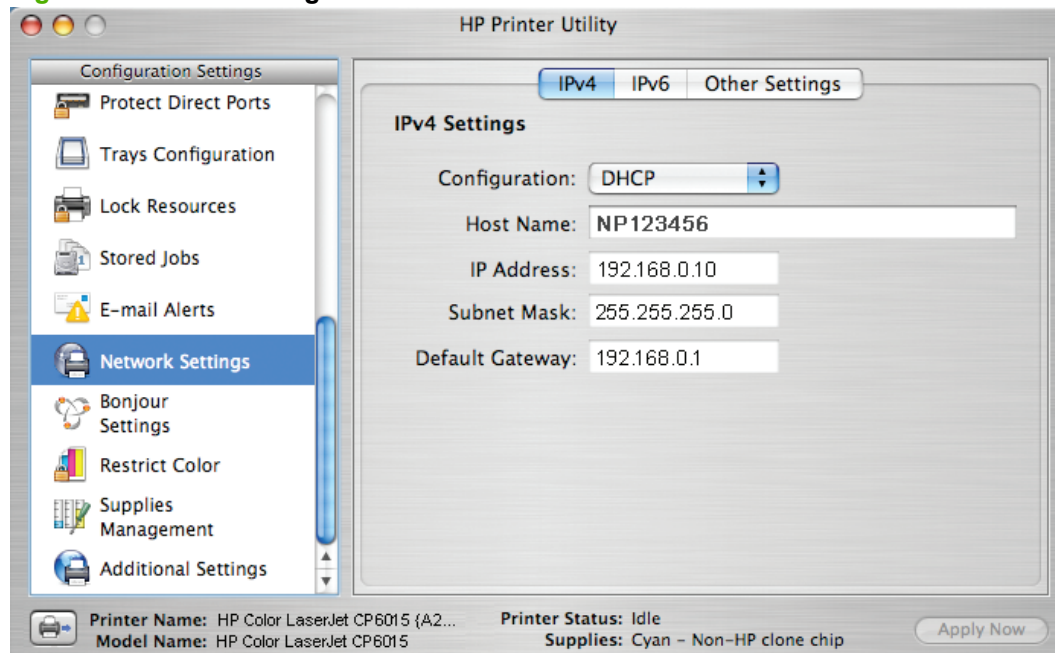


Click **Open E-mail Alerts Settings** to open the HP EWS. The HP EWS opens to the **Setup** screen on the **Alerts** tab, where you can set notifications. For information about configuring notifications, see [Alerts on page 58](#).

Network Settings

Select **Network Settings** to open the **IP Settings** screen.

Figure 6-24 IPv4 Settings screen



The **Network Settings** screen provides access to **IPv4**, **IPv6** and **Other Settings**.

- **DHCP**
- **BootP**
- **Manual**

You can also use this screen to modify the following settings:

- **Host Name**
- **IP Address**
- **Subnet Mask**
- **Default Gateway**

To save new settings, click **Apply Now**.

To view and change other network settings, click **Other Settings**.

If a user name and password have been set, you might need to obtain them from your IT administrator. For more information, see the *HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Embedded Web Server User Guide*.

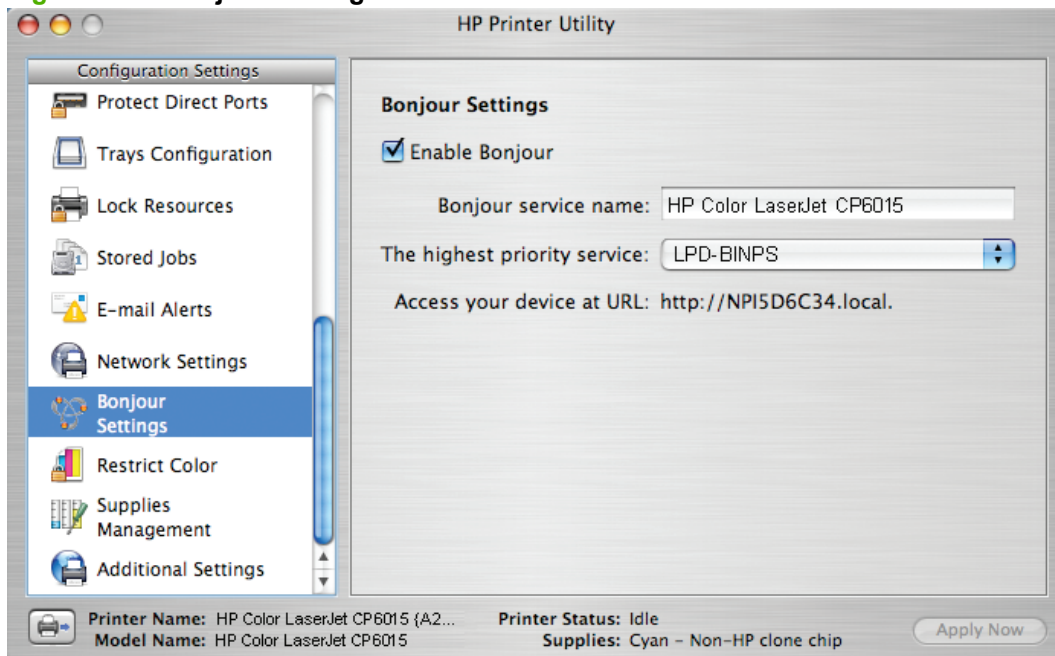
The HP EWS opens to the **Network Settings** screen. For information about this screen, see [Networking tab on page 63](#).

Bonjour Settings

Select **Bonjour Settings** to open the **Bonjour Settings** screen. Bonjour is enabled by default.

To disable Bonjour, click to clear the **Enable Bonjour** check box and then click **Apply Now**.

Figure 6-25 Bonjour Settings screen



The following options are available in the **The highest priority service** drop-down menu:

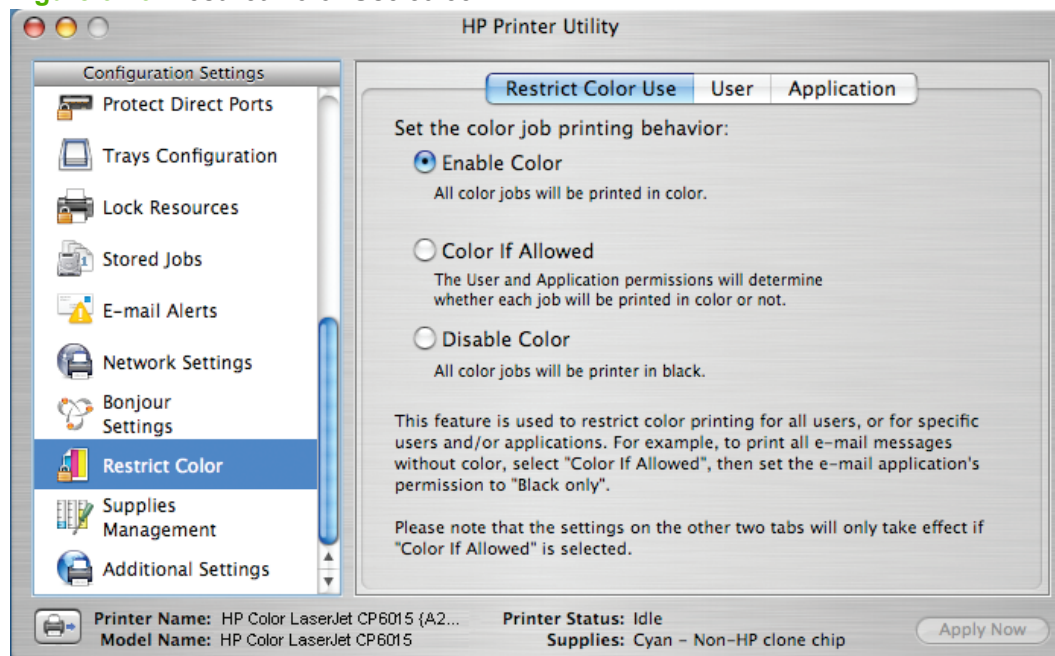
- **Port 9100** (default)
- **IPP**
- **LPD-RAW**
- **LPD-TEXT**
- **LPD-AUTO**
- **LPD-BINPS**

After you select a new setting, click **Apply Now** to save it.

Restrict Color

Click **Restrict Color** in the **Configuration Settings** menu to open the **Restrict Color Use** screen.

Figure 6-26 Restrict Color Use screen



On the **Restrict Color Use** tab, select one of the following options:

- **Enable Color.** Select this option to print all print jobs in color.
- **Color If Allowed** (selected by default). Select this option to allow the user and the software program control over whether print jobs are printed in color.
- **Disable Color.** Select this option to print only in black.

Click **Apply Now** to save new settings.

To restrict color by user, click the **User** tab.

To set user permissions, select a user and then, in the **Default User Permissions** drop-down menu, select one of the following options:

- **Black Only**
- **Color**

Click **Apply Now** to save new settings.

To add a new user, click **Add**.

Type the new user name in the **User Name** field.

On the **Permissions** drop-down menu, select one of the following options:

- **Black Only**
- **Color**

Click **Add** to add the new user.

Click **Cancel** to close the dialog box without adding a new user.

To restrict color usage by software program, click the **Application** tab on the **Restrict Color Usage** screen.

To set software-program permissions, select a program and then, on the **Default User Permissions** drop-down menu, select one of the following options:

- **Black Only**
- **Color**

Click **Apply Now** to save new settings.

To add a new software program, click **Add**.

Type the new software-program name in the **Application Name** field.

On the **Permissions** drop-down menu, select one of the following options:

- **Black Only**
- **Color**

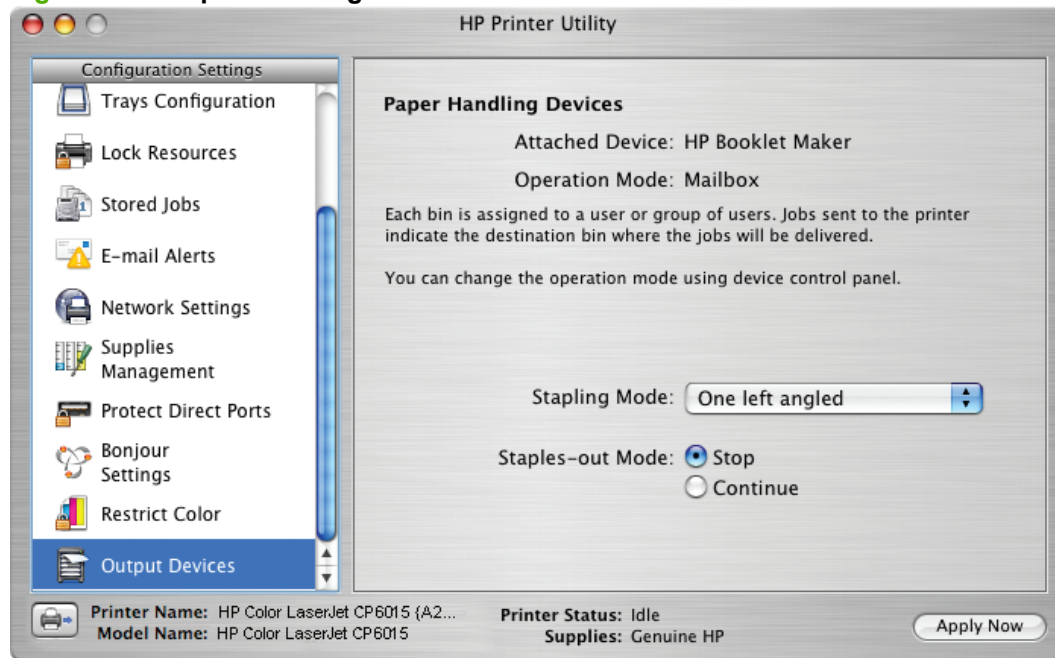
Click **Add** to add the new software program.

Click **Cancel** to close the dialog box without adding a new software program.

Output Devices

Click **Output Devices** in the **Configuration Settings** menu to open the **Paper Handling Devices** screen.

Figure 6-27 Paper Handling Devices screen



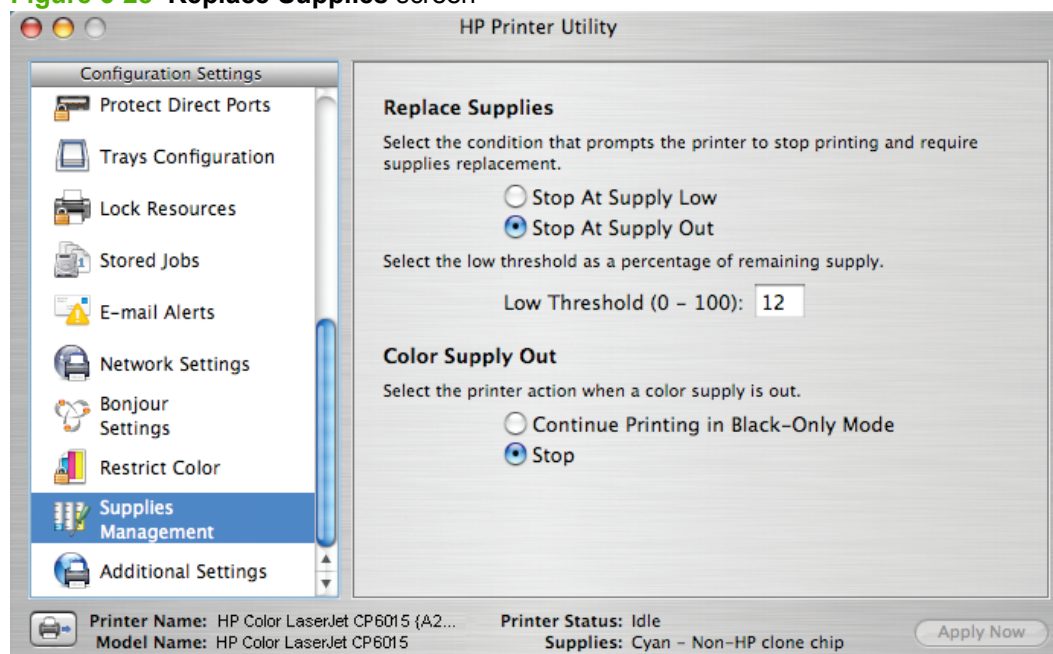
Use the **Paper Handling Devices** screen to manage the stapling options for any optional output devices that are installed and configured on the product. The following options are available:

- **Stapling Mode.** The following options are available.
 - **None**
 - **One left angled**
 - **One right angled**
 - **Two left**
 - **Two right**
 - **Two top**
- **Staples-out Mode.** The following options are available.
 - **Stop.** Causes the product to discontinue printing when staples run out.
 - **Continue.** Allows the product to continue printing when staples run out.
 -

Supplies Management

Click **Supplies Management** in the **Configuration Settings** menu to open the **Replace Supplies** screen.

Figure 6-28 Replace Supplies screen



The settings on this screen prompt the product to stop printing at a certain threshold (a specific number of pages in the tray). By default, the **Stop At Supply Out** setting is selected.

To prompt the product to stop printing at a different threshold, select **Stop at Supply Low** and type a value in the **Low Threshold (0-100)** field. When the number of sheets in the tray reaches this value, the product stops printing.

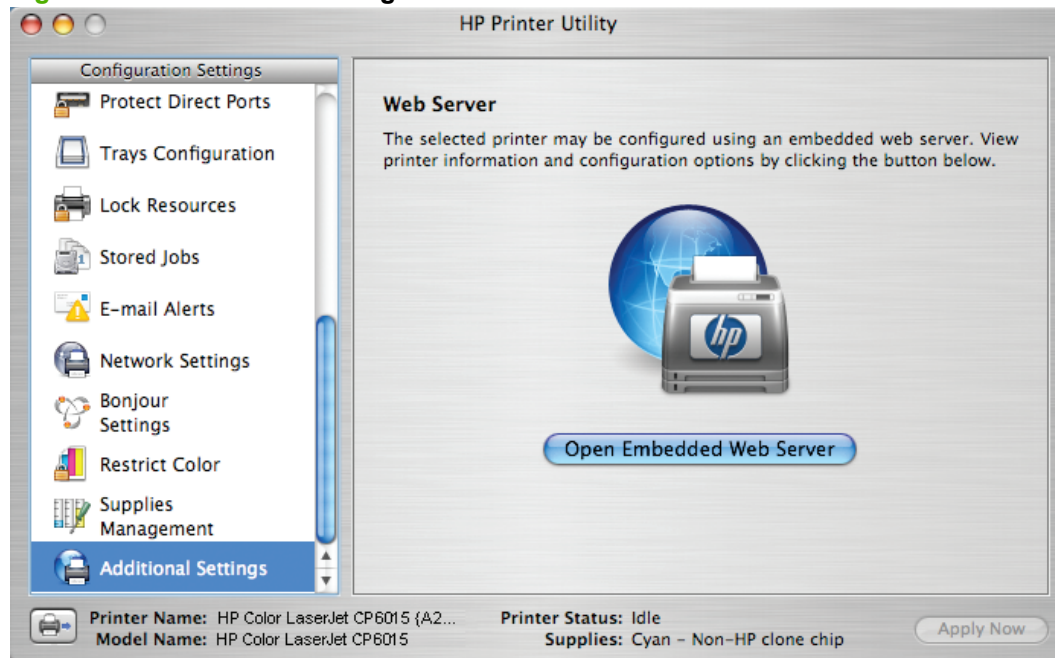
You can also specify the product behavior when the color print cartridges run out. By default, the **Continue Printing in Black-Only Mode** is selected. To prompt the product to stop instead of continuing to print using the black cartridge, select **Stop**.

Click **Apply Now** to save the new settings.

Additional Settings

Select **Additional Settings** to gain access to the HP EWS.

Figure 6-29 Additional Settings screen



To open the HP EWS, click **Open Embedded Web Server**.

For information about HP EWS settings, see [HP Embedded Web Server on page 52](#) or consult the *HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series Embedded Web Server User Guide*.

7 Engineering Details

Introduction

This chapter presents engineering detail for the following topics:

- [Remote firmware update](#)
- [Printing print-ready documents](#)
- [Media attributes](#)

Remote firmware update

The HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product features remote firmware update (RFU) capability. The method for downloading remote firmware updates from the Web site is similar to that used to download the latest printing-system software and print drivers.

The process for remotely upgrading firmware involves three steps:

1. Determine the current level of firmware that is installed on the product.
2. Go to the HP Web site and download the latest firmware to the computer.
3. Download the new firmware to the product.

Determining the current level of firmware

To determine the current level of firmware, view the configuration page. To print a configuration page, follow these instructions.

Print a configuration page

1. Press the **select** button ✓ to open the menus.
2. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to **INFORMATION**, and then press **select** ✓.
3. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to **PRINT CONFIGURATION**.
4. Press **select** ✓ to print the configuration page.

Downloading the new firmware from the HP Web site

The remote firmware update (.RFU) file and an associated readme file are packaged together as a self-extracting .EXE file. For detailed instructions about how to download the .EXE file, go to the following URL:

www.hp.com/go/cljcp6015_firmware

The .EXE file consists of a readme file and the .RFU file.


 **NOTE:** For UNIX systems, the remote firmware update file is a .TAR file.

For Macintosh systems, the remote firmware update file is an .SIT, .DMG, or .ZIP file.

Downloading the new firmware to the product

For support information about downloading new firmware from the Web, go to www.hp.com/support/cljcp6015.

The product can receive an RFU update to a product when the product is in a **READY** state. The product waits for all of the I/O channels to become idle before performing the update.

 **NOTE:** If the firmware update involves a change in the format of nonvolatile random-access memory (NVRAM), any menu settings that are changed from the default settings will return to default settings. The settings must be changed again if you want them to be different from the defaults. Examples of settings that are affected in this way are tray types, default symbol sets, and Web-access alerts.

The elapsed time for an update depends on the I/O transfer time, as well as the time that it takes for the product to reinitialize. The I/O transfer time depends on a number of things, including the speed of the

host computer that is sending the update and the I/O method (parallel or network). The reinitialization time depends on the specific hardware configuration of the product, such as the number of EIO devices installed, the presence of external paper-handling devices, and the amount of memory that is installed.

Finally, any print jobs that are ahead of the RFU job in the queue are printed before the update is processed.

Use one of the methods described in this manual to update the product firmware.

Printer messages during the firmware update

The following table lists the causes and results of possible interruptions to the firmware update.

Table 7-1 Troubleshooting a firmware update

Cause	Result
The job was cancelled from the control panel.	No update has occurred.
A break in the I/O stream occurred during send (for example, the parallel cable was removed).	No update has occurred.
A power cycle occurred during the RECEIVING UPGRADE process.	No update has occurred.
A power cycle occurred during the PERFORMING UPGRADE process.	No update has occurred. Resend the update through a parallel port or USB connection.
A power cycle occurred during the INITIALIZING process.	The update has been completed.

Print jobs that are sent to the product while an update is in process do not interrupt the update.

All HP LaserJet products leave the factory with the most recent firmware version installed. If a remote firmware update fails in a Windows OS, the .RFU file must be resent. For more information, see [Table 7-3 Update messages on page 320](#).

If a remote firmware update fails in a Macintosh OS, contact support from an HP Customer Care Center.

The following table lists possible reasons for the failure of a remote firmware update and the corrective action required for each situation.


Table 7-2 Troubleshooting a firmware update failure

Reason for firmware update failure	Corrective action
The .RFU file is corrupted.	The product recognizes that the file is corrupted and rejects the update. Download the file again and send the new file to the product. Download the file from www.hp.com/go/cljcp6015_firmware .
The wrong product is contained in the .RFU file.	The product recognizes the product mismatch and rejects the update. Download the correct file and send it to the product. Download the file from www.hp.com/go/cljcp6015_firmware .
The upgrade was interrupted.	See Table 7-3 Update messages on page 320 .
A flash hardware failure occurred.	Although it is extremely unlikely, the product might have a hardware failure. Call technical support to address the problem (see the flyer that came with the product for a local telephone support list).

Three messages appear during a normal update process; a fourth (RESEND UPGRADE) appears only if the update process does not succeed.

Table 7-3 Update messages

Printer message	Explanation
RECEIVING UPGRADE	<p>This message appears from the time the product recognizes the beginning of an .RFU update until the time the product has verified the validity and integrity of the .RFU update.</p> <p>NOTE: If the remote firmware update process is interrupted before the firmware is downloaded (while RECEIVING UPGRADE appears on the control-panel display), the firmware file must be sent again. No message appears on the product control panel to indicate that the update was interrupted.</p>
PERFORMING UPGRADE	<p>This message appears while the product is actually reprogramming the firmware.</p> <p>NOTE: If power is lost during the flash DIMM update (while PERFORMING UPGRADE appears on the control-panel display), the update is interrupted and the message RESEND UPGRADE appears on the control-panel display.</p>
INITIALIZING	<p>This message appears from the time the product has finished reprogramming the DIMM until the product reinitializes.</p>
RESEND UPGRADE	<p>This message appears (in English only) if the firmware update fails because the RFU process is interrupted. It can also occur if firmware for accessories (such as the duplex unit or an output device becomes is corrupted. Perform another update by any means that is supported by the product, regardless of the connection (network, parallel, or USB).</p>
RFU LOAD ERROR SEND RFU UPGRADE ON <X> PORT where X = Network or USB	<p>This message appears (in English only) if the firmware update fails because the print-engine firmware is corrupted.</p>

 **NOTE:** To verify that the firmware update succeeded, print a new configuration page from the control panel and verify that the firmware date code on the configuration page has changed.

Downloading custom color profiles

Obtain custom color profiles just as you would any other remote-firmware update, using the procedures described in these sections.

Custom color-profile .RFU files are named as follows:

clj####_<what>_<version>.RFU

where:

- #### is the product-model number of the color table
- <what> is a one-word description of what the table does
- <version> is a two-part version number consisting of a major and a minor value

The custom color-profile .RFU files that are available include:

- A simulation of the color settings for the HP LaserJet 4650 product:
clj4650_.RFU
- A simulation of the color settings for the HP LaserJet 9500 product:
clj9500_.RFU
- A remote-firmware-update file that resets your product to its original state:
reset_.RFU

While every care is taken to ensure a close match with the colors available on the product, several factors can affect the outcome of the match:

- Differences between products within and between a given model line
- paper type
- The age and state of the custom-profile product and the product to which the profile is to be downloaded
- The use or non-use of genuine HP supplies
- Environmental conditions

Remote firmware update by using FTP through a browser

Complete the following steps to update the product firmware by using file transfer protocol (FTP) through a browser.




NOTE: The following instructions can be used in Windows operating systems only.

1. Make note of the TCP/IP address on the EIO-Jetdirect page. The EIO-Jetdirect page is the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see [Determining the current level of firmware on page 318](#)
2. Open a browser window.
3. In the address line of the browser, type `ftp://<IPADDRESS>`, where <IPADDRESS> is the TCP/IP address of your product. For example, if the TCP/IP address is 192.168.0.90, type `FTP://192.168.0.90`
4. Locate the downloaded .RFU file for the product.
5. Drag and drop the .RFU file onto the **PORT1** icon or onto any open space in the browser window.



NOTE: If the **PORT1** icon does not appear as a folder name, you might have to enable folder viewing for FTP sites in your Web browser. In Microsoft Internet Explorer, use the following procedure to enable the folder view.


- a. Select **Tools**, then select **Internet Options**, and then select the **Advanced** tab.
- b. Select the **Enable folder view for FTP sites**.
- c. Click **OK** to save the setting.


6. The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 319](#) appear on the control panel.
-
-  **NOTE:** The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.
-
7. Print a configuration page and verify that the firmware revision number matches the revision of the current update.

Remote firmware update by using FTP on a direct network connection

If the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series5 uses a direct network connection, use file transfer protocol (FTP) to update the firmware. Complete the following steps for your operating system.

Windows operating systems

1. Make note of the TCP/IP address on the Embedded Jetdirect page. The HP Embedded Jetdirect page is the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see [Determining the current level of firmware on page 318](#)
-
-  **NOTE:** Before connecting to the product, make sure that the product is not in Powersave mode. Also make sure that any error messages are cleared from the control-panel display.
-
2. Open a command window on the computer.
 3. Type `ftp <TCP/IP product ADDRESS>`. For example, if the TCP/IP address is 192.168.0.90, type `ftp 192.168.0.90`.
 4. Press **Enter** on the keyboard.
 5. When prompted for the user name, press **Enter**.
 6. When prompted for the password, press **Enter**.
 7. Type `bin` at the command prompt.
 8. Press **Enter**. The message **200 Type set to I, Using binary mode to transfer files** appears in the command window.
 9. Type `put <FILENAME>`, where <FILENAME> is the name of the .RFU file that was downloaded from the Web, including the path. For example, type `put C:\LJ\CP6015FW.RFU`, and then press **Enter**.

 **NOTE:** If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type the following path:

```
put "c:\My Documents\LJ\CP6015fw.rfu"
```

The following series of messages appears in the command window:

200 PORT command successful

150 Opening BINARY mode data connection


226 Ready

226 Processing Job

226 Transfer complete

After these messages appear, a message containing transfer-speed information appears.

10. The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 319](#) appear on the control panel.

 **NOTE:** The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.

11. Print a configuration page and verify that the firmware revision number matches the revision of the current update.
12. At the command prompt, type `bye` to exit the FTP command.
13. At the command prompt, type `exit` to return to the Windows interface.

Macintosh operating systems

1. Make a note of the TCP/IP address on the EIO-Jetdirect page. The EIO-Jetdirect page is the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see [Determining the current level of firmware on page 318](#).
2. Open a Terminal window on the computer. You can find the Terminal program on the computer hard drive in the Applications/Utilities folder.
3. Type `FTP <TCP/IP product ADDRESS>` For example, if the TCP/IP address is 192.168.0.90, type `FTP 192.168.0.90`
4. Press **Enter** on the keyboard.
5. When prompted for a user name and password, press **Enter**.
6. Type `put <path>`, where `<path>` is the location where the .RFU file was downloaded from the Web, including the path. For example, type `put /username/desktop/CP6015fw.rfu`, and then press **Enter**.

 **NOTE:** If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `put "/user name/desktop/CP6015FW.RFU"`.

To ensure that the entire path to the .RFU file is placed in the `put` command, type `put` and a space, and then drag and drop the .RFU file onto the terminal window. The complete path to the file is automatically placed after the `put` command.

7. The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 319](#) appear on the control panel.



NOTE: The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.

8. Print a configuration page and verify that the firmware revision number matches the revision of the current update.

Remote firmware update through a local Windows port

If the product is connected through a local port (parallel), then you can send the .RFU file directly to the product by using a `COPY` command from a command prompt or an MS-DOS window. At the command prompt, perform the following steps for your operating system.

Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003

The .RFU file can be sent directly to the product by typing a **copy** command at a command prompt or in an MS-DOS window.

1. At a command prompt, type `copy /b <FILENAME> <PORTNAME>`, where <FILENAME> is the name of the .RFU file (including the path) and <PORTNAME> is the name of the appropriate printer port (such as LPT1). For example, type the following:

```
C:\>copy /b c:\CP6015fw.rfu lpt1
```



NOTE: If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `C:\>copy /b "c:\My Documents\CP6015fw.rfu" lpt1`

2. Press **Enter** on the keyboard.
3. The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 319](#) appear on the control panel.



NOTE: The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.


4. Print a configuration page and verify that the firmware revision number matches the revision of the current update.
5. At the command prompt, type `exit` to close the command window.

Remote firmware update through a USB port


If the product is connected over a USB connection, follow these instructions:

1. From a command prompt or in an MS-DOS window, type `copy /b <FILENAME> \<COMPUTERNAME>\<SHARENAME>`, where <FILENAME> is the name of the .RFU file (including the path), <COMPUTERNAME> is the name of the computer from which the product is being shared, and <SHARENAME> is the product share name. For example, type the following:

```
copy /b 6015fw.rfu\\your_computer\clj6015
```

 **NOTE:** If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `C:\>copy /b "c:\My Documents\CP6015fw.rfu" \\your_computer\clj6015`

2. Press **Enter** on the keyboard. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 319](#) appear on the control panel. The message **1 file(s) copied** appears on the computer screen.
3. The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 319](#) appear on the control panel.

 **NOTE:** The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.


4. Print a configuration page and verify that the firmware revision number matches the revision of the current update.

Remote firmware update through a Windows network


If the product is shared on a Windows network, follow these instructions:

1. From a command prompt or in an MS-DOS window, type `copy /b <FILENAME> \<COMPUTERNAME>\<SHARENAME>`, where <FILENAME> is the name of the .RFU file (including the path), <COMPUTERNAME> is the name of the computer from which the product is being shared, and <SHARENAME> is the product share name. For example, type the following:

```
C:\>copy /b c:\CP6015fw.rfu \\your_server\your_computer
```

 **NOTE:** If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `C:\>copy /b "c:\My Documents\CP6015fw.rfu" \\your_server\your_computer`

2. Press **Enter** on the keyboard. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 319](#) appear on the control panel. The message **1 file(s) copied** appears on the computer screen.
3. The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 319](#) appear on the control panel.


 **NOTE:** The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.

4. Print a configuration page and verify that the firmware revision number matches the revision of the current update.

Remote firmware update for UNIX systems


For UNIX systems, any command method that delivers the .TAR file to the product is acceptable, including the following:

1. At the command prompt, type `cp /home/yourmachine/FILENAME /dev/parallel>`, where `</home/yourmachine/FILENAME>` is the location of the .TAR file.
2. The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 319](#) appear on the control panel.

 **NOTE:** The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.


3. Print a configuration page and verify that the firmware revision number matches the revision of the current update.

Remote firmware update by using the LPR command


 **NOTE:** This remote firmware update method is for use in Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003.

Complete the following steps to update the firmware by using the LPR command.

1. From a command window, type `lpr -P <IPADDRESS> -S <IPADDRESS> -o l <FILENAME>` -OR- `lpr -S <IPADDRESS> -Pbinps <FILENAME>`, where `<IPADDRESS>` can be either the TCP/IP address or the hostname of the product, and where `<FILENAME>` is the filename of the .RFU file.

 **NOTE:** The parameter `(-o l)` consists of a lowercase "O", not a zero, and a lowercase "L", not the numeral 1. This parameter sets the transport protocol to binary mode.

2. Press **Enter** on the keyboard. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 319](#) appear on the control panel.
3. The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 319](#) appear on the control panel.

 **NOTE:** The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.

4. Print a configuration page and verify that the firmware revision number matches the revision of the current update.
5. Type `exit` at the command prompt to close the command window.


HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility

Use the HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility to send a firmware file to the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series.

When a firmware file is downloaded from the HP Web site, the .ZIP file contains two files, the HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility self-extracting firmware executable and the readme file that is applicable for the product and firmware revision you are downloading.

The HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility uses the current print path, USB, or network connection to communicate with the device, and does not require the use of the Windows spooler. This utility is only available for Windows operating systems.

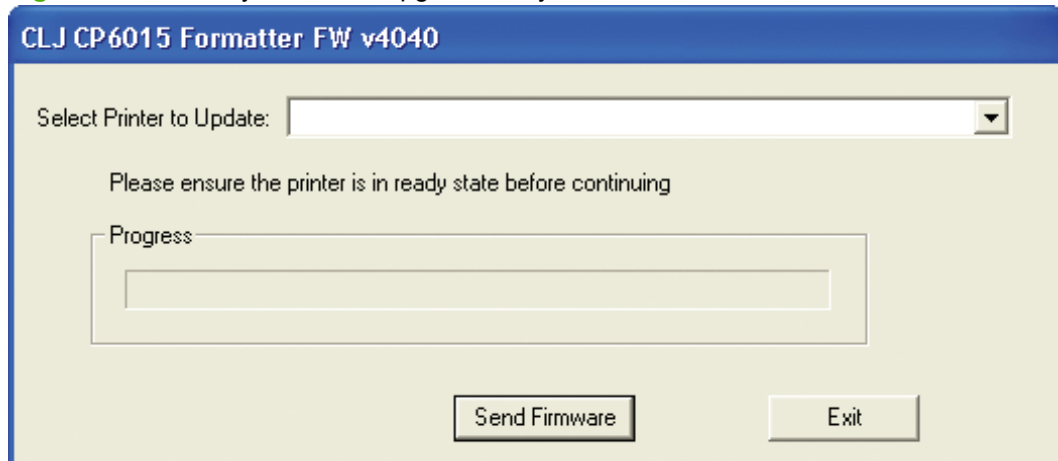
Follow these instructions to complete the firmware update.

 **NOTE:** In some circumstances, the update might require ten minutes or more to complete.

Do not power cycle the product or the computer during this process or the product may become unstable and or unusable.

1. Download the HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility from the following Web site.
www.hp.com/go/cljcp6015_firmware
2. Double-click and extract the downloaded file to your desktop.
3. Print a configuration page from the device. Under the Device Information heading, note the Firmware Datecode. This version should change after you have successfully completed the firmware update. To print a configuration page, see [Determining the current level of firmware on page 318](#).
4. Verify that the printer is at a **Ready** state.
5. On your computer, locate the HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility file.
6. Double-click the HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility file. The following dialog box appears.

Figure 7-1 HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility screen 1



7. Click the down arrow next to the **Select Printer to Update:** drop-down list and select the device you want to update.


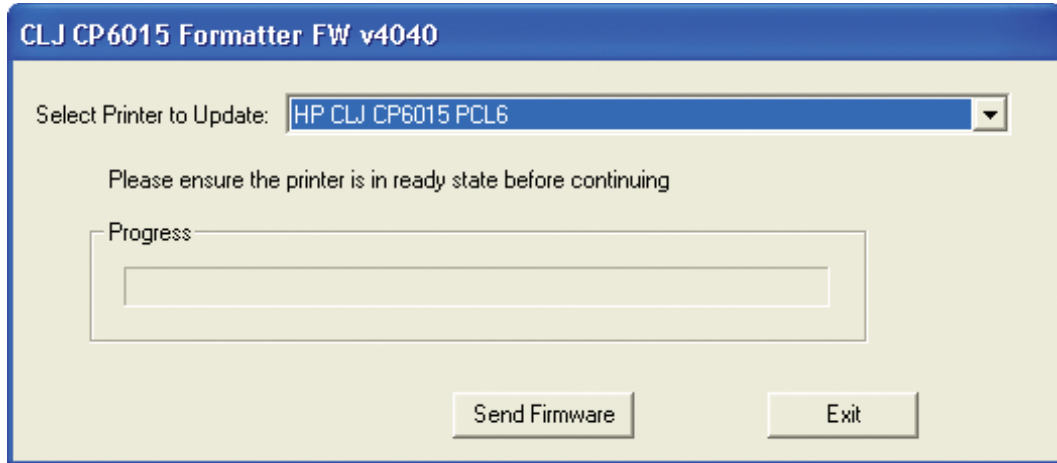

 **NOTE:** If the device you want to upgrade is not in the list, you must install a printer-driver for the device and be able print to the device with the printer-driver before continuing.

Figure 7-2 HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility screen 2



8. Click the **Send Firmware** button to begin the update process.

 **CAUTION:** Interrupting the firmware upgrade process by turning the printer off and then turning it on again or by attempting to send a print job to the printer might cause the printer to go into an unrecoverable state.

9. The progress bar gradually moves to the right during the firmware upgrade process.


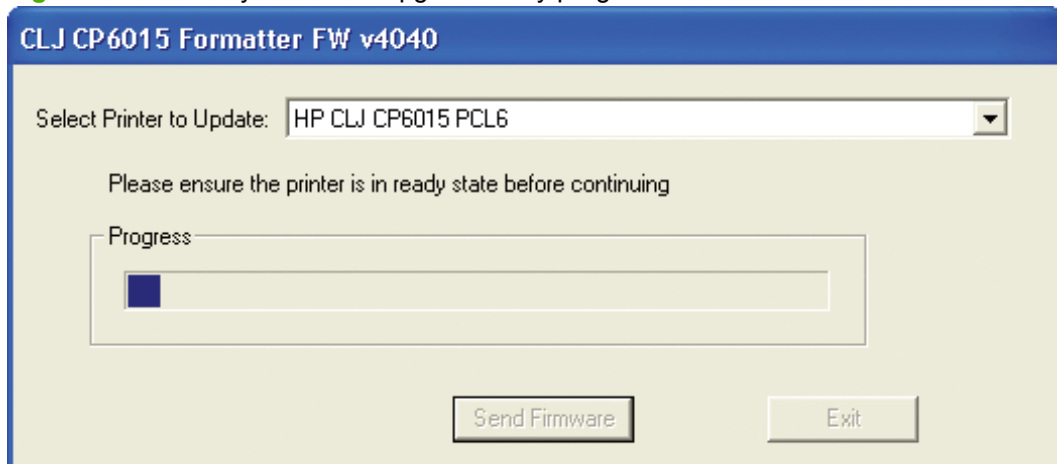
 **NOTE:** The progress bar does not necessarily reflect the actual time needed for the firmware upgrade to complete.

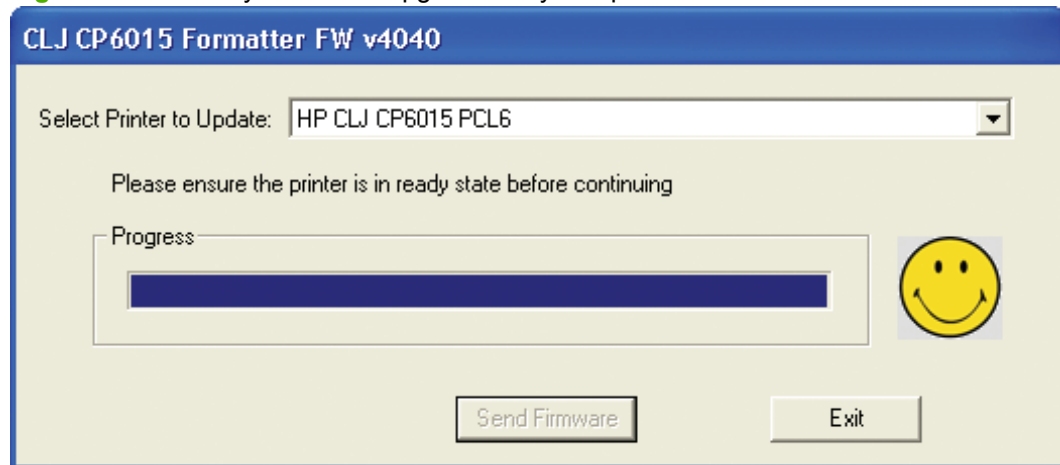
Figure 7-3 HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility progress screen



10. The upgrade process is complete when an icon appears in the lower-right corner of the dialog box. A smiling icon appears when the utility completes successfully. A frowning icon appears when the utility completes unsuccessfully.

If the frowning icon appears, check to make sure the printer is on and at a **Ready** state. Verify that you can send print jobs to the printer, and then try again to perform the firmware update.

Figure 7-4 HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility complete screen



11. Click **Exit** to close the dialog box.
12. Turn the device off and then turn it on again.
13. When the device is at a **Ready** state, print a Configuration page to verify that the version has changed.

Remote firmware update through HP Web Jetadmin

This procedure requires that you install HP Web Jetadmin V7.8 or later on the computer. Complete the following steps to update a single product through HP Web Jetadmin after downloading the .RFU file from the HP Web site.

1. Start HP Web Jetadmin.
2. Type the TCP/IP address or IP host name of the product in the **Quick Device Find** field, and then click **Go**. The product Status window opens.
3. Open the **Device Management** folder in the drop-down list in the Navigation panel. Navigate to the **Device Lists** folder.
4. Expand the **Device Lists** folder and select **All Devices**. Locate the product that you want to update in the list of products, and click to select it.
5. Locate the drop-down box for **Device Tools** in the upper-right corner of the window. Select **Update Printer Firmware** from the **choose action** list.
6. If the name of the .RFU file is not listed in the **All Available Images** dialog box, click **Browse** in the **Upload New Firmware Image** dialog box and navigate to the location of the .RFU file that you downloaded from the Web at the start of this procedure. If the filename is listed, select it.
7. Click **Upload** to move the .RFU file from your hard drive to the HP Web Jetadmin server.

8. Refresh the browser.
9. Select the .RFU file from the **Printer Firmware Update** drop-down menu.
10. Click **Update Firmware**. HP Web Jetadmin sends the selected .RFU file to the product.
11. The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 319](#) appear on the control panel.



NOTE: The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.

HP Web Jetadmin V7.8 and later can also be used to perform multiple or unattended installations. Complete the following steps for multiple or unattended installations.


1. Start HP Web Jetadmin.
2. Create a device group. A simple way to do this is to follow these steps:
 - a. Click **Device Management**, and then click **All Devices**.
 - or-
 - b. Shift-click to select products that you want to be included in the group, and then click **OK**.
 - or-
 - c. When prompted, type a name for the new device group, and then click **OK**.
3. To modify several products in a group, click the group name, and then click **Open**.
4. The drop-down menu for **Device Group Tools** appears on the right side of the window. Scroll if necessary to view it.
5. In the **Device Group Tools** drop-down box, select an action. Type the appropriate information. Click **Return to Device Group** when finished.

Printing print-ready documents

Several methods are available for printing documents independently of the original software program that was used to create the document. Normally, the document is printed by opening the original application and printing it to a file, or is printed by means of a distribution method such as internet downloading. The following print-ready file formats can be sent directly to the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product without first opening the original software program:

- HP LaserJet Printer Control Language (.PRN)
- Portable Document Format (.PDF)
- Postscript (.PS)
- Text (.TXT)

Use one of the following methods to send print-ready files to your product.

 **NOTE:** The examples that are used here are for printing .PDF documents. However, any print-ready file type can be substituted.

Print-ready file printing by using FTP through a browser


Complete the following steps to print print-ready files directly by using FTP through a browser.

 **NOTE:** The following instructions can be used on Windows or Macintosh operating systems.

1. Make note of the TCP/IP address on the Embedded Jetdirect page. The HP Embedded Jetdirect page is the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see [Determining the current level of firmware on page 318](#).
2. Open a browser window.
3. In the address line of the browser, type `ftp://<IPADDRESS>`. For example, if the TCP/IP address of your product is 192.168.0.90, type the following:

```
FTP:// 192.168.0.90
```

4. Locate the print-ready file for the product.
5. Drag and drop the print-ready file onto the **PORT1** icon in the browser window.

 **NOTE:** If the **PORT1** icon does not appear as a folder name, you might have to enable folder viewing for FTP sites in your Web browser. In Microsoft Internet Explorer, use the following procedure to enable the folder view.

1. Select **Tools**, then select **Internet Options**, and then select the **Advanced** tab.
2. Select the **Enable folder view for FTP sites**.
3. Click **OK** to save the setting.

Print-ready file printing by using FTP on a direct network connection

If the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series uses a direct network connection, use file transfer protocol (FTP) to print a print-ready file. Complete the following steps for the operating system:


Windows operating systems

1. Take note of the TCP/IP address on the Embedded Jetdirect page. The HP Embedded Jetdirect page is the second page of the Configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see [Determining the current level of firmware on page 318](#).
2. Open a command window on the computer.
3. Type `ftp <TCP/IP product ADDRESS>`. For example, if the TCP/IP address is 192.168.0.90, type the following:

```
ftp 192.168.0.90
```

4. Press **Enter** on the keyboard.
5. When prompted for the user name, press **Enter**.
6. When prompted for the password, press **Enter**.
7. Type `bin` at the command prompt.
8. Press **Enter**. The message **200 Types set to I, Using binary mode to transfer files** appears in the command window.
9. Type `put <FILENAME>`, where `<FILENAME>` is the name of the print-ready file to be printed, including the path. For example, type the following:

```
put C:\LJ\CP6015FW.PDF
```

 **NOTE:** If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `put "c:\My Documents\LJ\CP6015FW.PDF"`

The following series of messages appears in the command window:

200 PORT command successful

150 Opening BINARY mode data connection

226 Ready

226 Processing Job

10. Press **Enter** on the keyboard.
11. The print-ready file prints.
12. At the command prompt, type `bye` to exit the FTP command.
13. At the command prompt, type `exit` to return to the Windows interface.

Macintosh operating systems

1. Make note of the TCP/IP address on the Embedded Jetdirect page. The HP Embedded Jetdirect page is the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see [Determining the current level of firmware on page 318](#).

2. Open a Terminal window on your Macintosh. You can find the Terminal program on the computer in the following location:

System/Applications/Utilities/Terminal

Open the Finder, select Applications, and then click Utilities. Double-click to open the Terminal utility.

3. Type `FTP <TCP/IP product ADDRESS>`. For example, if the TCP/IP address is 192.168.0.90, type the following:


```
FTP 192.168.0.90
```

4. Press **Enter** on the keyboard.

5. When prompted for a user name and password, press **Enter**.

6. You can drag and drop the firmware file into the Terminal folder (System/Applications/Utilities/Terminal). Alternatively, you can type `put <path>`, where `<path>` is the location where the print-ready file was downloaded from the Web. For example, type the following:

```
put /username/desktop/CP6015FW.PDF
```

 **NOTE:** If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `put "/user name/desktop/CP6015FW.PDF"`

To ensure that the entire path to the print-ready file is placed in the `put` command, type `put` and a space, and then click and drag the print-ready file onto the terminal window. The complete path to the file is automatically placed after the `put` command.

7. Press **Enter**.
8. The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take about five minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or computer.
9. The product automatically turns off and on again to activate the update.

Print-ready printing by using a local Windows port

To print directly by using a local Windows port, follow the instructions for your operating system.


Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, or Windows Vista

The print-ready file can be sent directly to the product by typing a `copy` command at a command prompt or in an MS-DOS window.

1. At a command prompt, type `copy /b <FILENAME> <PORTNAME>`, where `<FILENAME>` is the name of the print-ready file (including the path) and `<PORTNAME>` is the name of the appropriate printer port (such as LPT1). For example, type the following:

```
C:\>copy /b c:\CP6015FW.PDF lpt1
```

2. Press **Enter** on the keyboard.

 **NOTE:** If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `C:\>copy /b "c:\My Documents\CP6015FW.PDF"`. The message **PROCESSING JOB** appears on the control panel, and the job prints.


3. At the command prompt, type `exit` to close the command window.

Print-ready file printing in a Windows network

If the product is shared on a Windows network, complete the following steps.

1. From a command prompt or in an MS-DOS window, type `copy /b <FILENAME> \<COMPUTERNAME>\<SHARENAME>`, where `<FILENAME>` is the name of the print-ready file (including the path), `<COMPUTERNAME>` is the name of the computer from which the product is being shared, and `<SHARENAME>` is the product share name. For example, type the following:

```
C:\>copy /b c:\CP6015FW.PDF \\your_server\sharename
```

 **NOTE:** If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `C:\>copy /b "c:\My Documents\CP6015FW.PDF" \\your_server\sharename`

2. Press **Enter** on the keyboard. The message **PROCESSING JOB** appears on the control panel, and the job prints. The message **1 file(s) copied** appears on the computer screen.

Print-ready file printing in UNIX systems

For UNIX systems, any command method that delivers the print-ready file to the product is acceptable, including the following:

- ☐ At the command prompt, type `cp </home/yourmachine/FILENAME> dev/parallel>`, where `</home/yourmachine/FILENAME>` is the location of the print-ready file.

Print-ready file printing by using the LPR command

 **NOTE:** This direct printing method is for use in Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Vista.

Complete the following steps to print a print-ready file by using the LPR command.

1. Make note of the TCP/IP address on the Embedded Jetdirect page. The HP Embedded Jetdirect page is the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see [Determining the current level of firmware on page 318](#).


2. From a command window, type the following:

```
lpr -P IPADDRESS -S IPADDRESS -o l FILENAME
```

or

```
lpr -S <IPADDRESS> -Pbinps <FILENAME>
```

where IPADDRESS can be either the TCP/IP address or the host name of the product, and where FILENAME is the file name of the print-ready file.

 **NOTE:** The parameter (-o l) consists of a lowercase "O", not a zero, and a lowercase "L", not the numeral 1. This parameter sets the transport protocol to binary mode.

3. The file prints, but no messages appear in the command prompt window.
4. Type `exit` at the command prompt to close the command window.

Media attributes

This section includes the following information about paper attributes:

- [Paper sources and destinations](#)
- [Paper-source commands](#)
- [Driver-supported paper sizes](#)
- [Driver-supported paper types](#)
- [Custom paper sizes](#)
- [Paper-type commands](#)

Paper sources and destinations

The following table indicates the standard and optional paper sources and destinations for the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product.

Table 7-4 HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series paper sources and destinations

paper sources	100-sheet multipurpose tray (tray 1)	Standard
	250-sheet paper tray (tray 2)	Standard
	500-sheet paper tray (tray 3)	Optional; standard on the HP Color LaserJet CP6015x and HP Color LaserJet CP6015xh product models
	500-sheet paper tray (tray 4)	Optional; standard on the HP Color LaserJet CP6015xh product model
	500-sheet paper tray (tray 5)	Optional; standard on the HP Color LaserJet CP6015xh product model
paper destinations	500-sheet top bin	Standard
	1,600-sheet 3-bin stapler/stacker with output accessory bridge	Optional
	2,000-sheet booklet maker/finisher with output accessory bridge	Optional

Paper-source commands

The PCL 6 attribute for paper source is `ubyte # paperSource` or `ubyte_array "string" paperSource`. See the following table for values of #. For example, "ubyte 4 paperSource" is the command for tray 2.

The PCL 5 escape sequence for paper source is `Esc&l#H` (the "l" is a lowercase "L" rather than the numeral "1"). See the following table for values of #. For example, `Esc&l1H` is the command for tray 2.

Table 7-5 Paper-source commands

paper source	PCL 6	PCL 5	PostScript
	<code>ubyte # paperSource</code> <code>or ubyte_array</code> <code>"string"</code> <code>paperSource¹</code>	<code>Esc&l#H</code>	<code>/paperPosition # /</code> <code>ManualFeed true </code> <code>false or null</code>
Manual feed in tray 1	2	2	3 true
Tray 1 (100-sheet)	3	4	3 false
Tray 2 (500-sheet)			
Tray 3 (500-sheet)			
Tray 4 (500-sheet)			
Tray 5 (500-sheet)	5	5	1 false
Printer Auto Select	7	1	null false

¹ For the string value, you must use include the quotation marks around the variable. For example, `ubyte_array "TRAY2"`
`paperSource` is the PCL 6 command for tray 2.

Driver-supported paper sizes

The following table lists the features and attributes of various paper listed under the **Size Is**: drop-down menu on the **Paper** tab. The list order can vary, depending on the product and operating system. The list contains all of the following sizes, and might contain sizes from other drivers.

Table 7-6 Supported paper and print paper sizes

Size	Dimensions	Tray 1	Tray 2	Trays 3, 4, 5
Letter	216 x 279 mm (8.5 x 11 in)	✓	✓ ¹	✓ ¹
Letter Rotated	279 x 216 mm (11 x 8.5 in)	✓	✓ ¹	✓ ¹
Legal	216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 in)	✓	✓ ¹	✓ ¹
A4	210 x 297 mm (8.27 x 11.69 in)	✓	✓ ¹	✓ ¹
A4 Rotated	297 x 210 mm (11.69 x 8.27 in)	✓	✓ ¹	✓ ¹
Executive	184 x 267 mm (7.24 x 10.51 in)	✓	✓ ¹	✓ ¹
Executive (JIS)	216 x 330 mm (8.5 x 13 in)	✓	✓	✓
A3	297 x 420 mm (11.69 x 16.54 in)	✓	✓ ¹	✓ ¹
A5	148 x 210 mm (5.83 x 8.27 in)	✓	✓ ¹	✓ ¹
11 x 17	279 x 432 mm (11 x 17 in)	✓	✓ ¹	✓ ¹
12 x 18	305 x 457 mm (12 x 18 in)	✓		✓
B4 (JIS)	257 x 364 mm (10.12 x 14.33 in)	✓	✓ ¹	✓ ¹
RA3	305 x 430 mm (12 x 16.93 in)	✓		✓
SRA3	320 x 450 mm (12.6 x 17.7 in)	✓		✓
B5 (JIS)	182 x 257 mm (7.17 x 10.12 in)	✓	✓ ¹	✓ ¹

Table 7-6 Supported paper and print paper sizes (continued)

Size	Dimensions	Tray 1	Tray 2	Trays 3, 4, 5
8k	270 x 390 mm (10.63 x 15.35 in)	✓	✓	✓
16k	195 x 270 mm (7.68 x 10.63 in)	✓	✓	✓
8K	260 x 368 mm (10.2 x 14.5 in)	✓	✓	✓
16K	184 x 260 mm (7.2 x 10.2 in)	✓	✓	✓
8K	273 x 394 mm (10.7 x 15.5 in)	✓	✓	✓
16K	197 x 273 mm (7.75 x 10.7 in)	✓	✓	✓
Banner	99 to 320 mm x up to 915 mm (4 to 12.9 x up to 36 in)	✓		
Custom	148 x 210 mm to 297 x 432 mm (5.8 x 8.2 to 11.7 x 17 in) ²		✓	✓
Custom	99 x 140 mm to 320 x 457 mm (4 x 5.5 to 12.6 x 18 in) ³	✓		

¹ Tray automatically detects paper size.

² Standard sizes within the custom range for Tray 2 are: 8.5 x 13, RA4, SRA4, 8K (270 x 390), 8K (260 x 368), 8K (7.75 x 10.75), 16K (195 x 270), 16K (184 x 260), and 16K (7.75 x 10.75)

³ Standard sizes within the custom range for Trays 3, 4, and 5 are: 8.5 x 13, RA4, SRA4, 8K (270 x 390), 8K (260 x 368), 8K (7.75 x 10.75), 16K (195 x 270), 16K (184 x 260), 16K (7.75 x 10.75), RA3, SRA3, and 12 x 18

Table 7-7 Supported envelopes and postcards

Size	Dimensions	Tray 1	Trays 2, 3, 4, 5
Envelope #9	98 x 225 mm (3.88 x 8.88 in)	✓	
Envelope #10	105 x 241 mm (4.13 x 9.49 in)	✓	
Envelope DL	110 x 220 mm (4.33 x 8.66 in)	✓	
Envelope C5	162 x 229 mm (6.93 x 9.84 in)	✓	
Envelope B5	176 x 250 mm (6.7 x 9.8 in)	✓	
Envelope C6	162 x 114 mm (6.4 x 4.5 in)	✓	
Envelope Monarch	98 x 191 mm (3.9 x 7.5 in)	✓	
Post Card	100 x 148 mm (3.94 x 5.83 in) ¹	✓	
Double Post Card	148 x 200 mm (5.83 x 7.87 in)	✓	
Postcard (US)	88.9 x 139.7 mm (3.5 x 5.5 in) ¹		
Postcard (European)	105 x 148 mm (4.13 x 5.83 in) ¹	✓	
US Index Cards	102 x 152 mm (4 x 6 in), 127 x 177 mm (5 x 7 in), and 127 x 203 mm (5 x 8 in)	✓	

¹ Weights greater than 160 g/m² may not perform well, but will not harm the product.

The following paper sizes are supported with the optional HP 3-bin Stapler/Stacker and HP Booklet Maker/Finisher accessories.

Table 7-8 Supported paper and print paper sizes for the optional HP 3-bin Stapler/Stacker and HP Booklet Maker/Finisher accessories

Size	Dimensions	Stacking ²	Angled staple (left-angled)	Angled staple (right-angled)	Two staples (top or side)	Folding	Saddle stitch
Letter	216 x 279 mm (8.5 x 11 in)	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Letter Rotated	279 x 216 mm (11 x 8.5 in)	✓	✓	✓		✓ ¹	✓ ¹
Legal	216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 in)	✓	✓	✓		✓ ¹	✓ ¹
A4	210 x 297 mm (8.27 x 11.69 in)	✓	✓	✓	✓		
A4 Rotated	297 x 210 mm (11.69 x 8.27 in)	✓	✓	✓		✓ ¹	✓ ¹
Executive	184 x 267 mm (7.24 x 10.51 in)	✓					
Executive (JIS)	216 x 330 mm (8.5 x 13 in)	✓					
A3	297 x 420 mm (11.69 x 16.54 in)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓ ¹	✓ ¹
A5	148 x 210 mm (5.83 x 8.27 in)	✓					
A6	105 x 148 mm (4.13 x 5.83 in)	✓					
Statement	140 x 216 mm (5.5 x 8.5 in)	✓					
11 x 17 (Ledger)	279 x 432 mm (11 x 17 in)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓ ¹	✓ ¹
12 x 18	305 x 457 mm (12 x 18 in)	✓					
B4 (JIS)	257 x 364 mm (10.12 x 14.33 in)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓ ¹	✓ ¹
RA3	305 x 430 mm (12 x 16.93 in)	✓					
SRA3	320 x 450 mm (12.6 x 17.7 in)	✓					
B5 (JIS)	257 x 182 mm (10.12 x 7.17 in)	✓					
B6 (JIS)	(128 x 182 mm) (5.04 x 7.2 in)	✓					
8K	270 x 390 mm (10.63 x 15.35 in)	✓					
16K	195 x 270 mm (7.68 x 10.63 in)	✓					

Table 7-8 Supported paper and print paper sizes for the optional HP 3-bin Stapler/Stacker and HP Booklet Maker/Finisher accessories (continued)

Size	Dimensions	Stacking ²	Angled staple (left-angled)	Angled staple (right-angled)	Two staples (top or side)	Folding	Saddle stitch
8K	260 x 368 mm (10.2 x 14.5 in)	✓					
16K	184 x 260 mm (7.2 x 10.2 in)	✓					
8K	273 x 393.7 mm (10.75 x 15.5 in)	✓					
16K	196.8 x 273 mm (7.75 x 10.75 in)	✓					
Banner	(99 to 320 x up to 915 mm) (12.9 x 36 in)	✓					
Envelope 9#	98.4 x 225.4 mm (3.88 x 8.88 in)	✓					
Envelope 10#	104.77 x 241.3 mm (4.12 x 9.5 in)	✓					
Envelope DL	110 x 220 mm (4.33 x 8.66 in)	✓					
Envelope C5	162 x 229 mm (6.38 x 9.02 in)	✓					
Envelope B5	176 x 250 mm (6.93 x 9.84 in)	✓					
Envelope C6	114 x 162 mm (4.49 x 6.38 in)	✓					
Envelope Monarch	98.42 x 190.5 mm (3.88 x 7.5 in)	✓					
Double Post Card	148 x 200 mm (5.83 x 7.87 in)	✓					

¹ Booklet maker only

² Stacking uses bins 1, 2, and 3 in the stapler/stacker, or bins 1 and 2 in the booklet maker.

Driver-supported paper types

The following table shows the paper types that the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series print-drivers support.

Table 7-9 Tray 1 paper information

Type	Specifications	Quantity	Driver settings	Paper orientation
Paper and cardstock, standard sizes	Range: 60 g/m ² (16 lb) bond to 220 g/m ² (58 lb) bond	Maximum stack height: 10 mm (0.6 in) Equivalent to 100 sheets of 75 g/m ² (20 lb) bond.	Plain or unspecified	Load preprinted or prepunched paper facing down, with the top edge leading into the tray, or toward the back of the product

Table 7-9 Tray 1 paper information (continued)

Type	Specifications	Quantity	Driver settings	Paper orientation
Envelopes	Less than 60 g/m ² (16 lb) bond to 90 g/m ² (24 lb) bond	Up to 10 envelopes	Envelope	Short edge leading, flap toward the front of the product, facing up
Labels	Maximum 0.23 mm (0.009 in) thick	Maximum stack height: 10 mm (0.6 in)	Labels	Side to be printed on facing down
Transparencies	Minimum 0.13 mm (0.005 in) thick	Maximum stack height: 10 mm (0.6 in)	Transparencies	Side to be printed on facing down
Heavy	0.13 mm (0.005 in) thick	Maximum stack height: 10 mm (0.6 in)	Light glossy, glossy, or heavy glossy	Side to be printed on facing down
Glossy	Range: 75 g/m ² (20 lb) bond to 220 g/m ² (58 lb) bond	Maximum stack height: 10 mm (0.6 in)	Light glossy, glossy, or heavy glossy	Side to be printed on facing down
Photo paper	60 g/m ² (16 lb) bond to 220 g/m ² (58 lb) bond	Maximum stack height: 10 mm (0.6 in)	Light glossy, glossy, or heavy glossy	Side to be printed on facing down
Cut sheet paper	60 g/m ² (16 lb) bond to 220 g/m ² (58 lb) bond	Maximum stack height: 10 mm (0.6 in)	Plain or unspecified	Side to be printed on facing down
Tough paper	60 g/m ² (16 lb) bond to 220 g/m ² (58 lb) bond	Maximum stack height: 10 mm (0.6 in)	HP Tough paper	Side to be printed on facing down
Banner paper	Range: 75 g/m ² (20 lb) bond to 220 g/m ² (58 lb) bond	Maximum stack height: 10 mm (0.6 in)	Plain or unspecified	Side to be printed on facing down

Table 7-10 Trays 2, 3, 4, and 5 paper information


Type	Specifications	Quantity	Settings	Paper orientation
Paper and cardstock, standard sizes	Range: 60 g/m ² (16 lb) bond to 220 g/m ² (58 lb) bond	500 sheets of 75 g/m ² (20 lb) bond.	Plain or unspecified	Load preprinted or prepunched paper facing up, with the top toward the back of the tray or toward the right-hand side of the tray.
Labels	Maximum 0.13 mm (0.005 in) thick	Maximum stack height: 54 mm (2.1 in)	Labels	Side to be printed on facing up
Transparencies	Minimum 0.13 mm (0.005 in) thick	Maximum stack height: 54 mm (2.1 in)	Transparencies	Side to be printed on facing up
Heavy	0.13 mm (0.005 in) thick	Maximum stack height: 54 mm (2.1 in)	Light glossy, glossy, or heavy glossy	Side to be printed on facing up
Glossy	Range: 75 g/m ² (20 lb) bond to 220 g/m ² (58 lb) bond	Maximum stack height: 54 mm (2.1 in)	Light glossy, glossy, or heavy glossy	Side to be printed on facing up
Photo paper		Maximum stack height: 54 mm (2.1 in)		Side to be printed on facing up

Table 7-10 Trays 2, 3, 4, and 5 paper information (continued)

Type	Specifications	Quantity	Settings	Paper orientation
Cut sheet paper		Maximum stack height: 54 mm (2.1 in)		Side to be printed on facing up
Tough paper		Maximum stack height: 54 mm (2.1 in)		Side to be printed on facing up

Trays 2, 3, 4, and 5 capacity: 54 mm (2.126 in) height or 500 sheets of paper, whichever is less. Supported paper types include: Cut sheet paper, labels, OHT, glossy paper, glossy film, photo paper, and tough paper. Basis Weight: 60-220 g/m² (16-58 lb).

Duplex printing: Provides automatic two-sided printing (printing on both sides of the paper). Not available on the HP Color LaserJet CP6015n model, which cannot be upgraded to duplex printing. The paper size range for automatic duplex printing is 175 to 320 mm (7.2 to 12.6 in) x 210 to 457 mm (8.3 to 18 in). The paper weight range is 60 to 220 g/m² (16 to 58 lb)

 **NOTE:** HP Color Laser Presentation Paper, Glossy (Q2546A) is not supported with this product. Using this type of paper can cause a fuser jam that might require the replacement of the fuser. Two recommended alternatives are HP Color LaserJet Presentation Paper, Soft Gloss (Q6541A) and HP Color LaserJet Brochure Paper, Glossy (Q6611A, Q6610A).

NOTE: For a complete list of specific HP-brand paper that this product supports, go to www.hp.com/sbso/product/supplies.

Custom paper sizes

The following table shows custom paper sizes that are available for the HP Color LaserJet CP6015 Series product.

Table 7-11 PCL 6 custom paper sizes

Tray	Dimensions	Minimum	Maximum
Tray 1 (100-sheet multipurpose)	Width	98.6 mm (3.9 in)	320 mm (12.6 in)
	Length	139.7 mm (5.5 in)	457.2 mm (18.0 in)
			915 mm (36.0 in) for banner printing
Tray 2 (500-sheet)	Width	148.0 mm (5.83 in)	297 mm (11.7 in)
	Length	210.0 mm (8.26 in)	432 mm (17.0 in)
Trays 3-5 (500-sheet)	Width	148 mm (5.8 in)	297 mm (11.7 in)
	Length	210 mm (8.3 in)	432 mm (17.0 in)
Duplexing unit	Width	174.0 mm (6.9 in)	320.0 mm (12.6 in)
	Length	210.0 mm (8.3 in)	457 mm (18.0 in)

Paper-type commands

The PCL 5 escape sequence for paper type is "Esc&n#Wdpapertype", where "n#" is the number of characters in the paper type plus 1. For example, in the sequence "Esc&n6WdPlain", "Plain" has 5 letters plus 1, for a total of 6.

Table 7-12 paper-type commands

Esc&	n#	Wd	Paper type
Esc&	6	Wd	Plain
Esc&	11	Wd	Preprinted
Esc&	11	Wd	Letterhead
Esc&	13	Wd	Transparency ¹
Esc&	11	Wd	Prepunched
Esc&	7	Wd	Labels
Esc&	5	Wd	Bond
Esc&	9	Wd	Recycled
Esc&	6	Wd	Color
Esc&	6	Wd	Light
Esc&	13	Wd	Interpaperte
Esc&	6	Wd	Heavy
Esc&	12	Wd	Extra Heavy
Esc&	11	Wd	Cardstock ²
Esc&	6	Wd	Rough
Esc&	7	Wd	Glossy
Esc&	12	Wd	Tough Paper
Esc&	9	Wd	Envelope

¹ You must spell out the word "Transparency" in the string, although it is abbreviated as TRNSPRNCY on the control panel.

² The correct command for cardstock is "Esc&n11WdCard Stock", with a space between the "d" and the "S", and with an uppercase "S".

Index

A

- accessibility
 - documentation 15
- accessories, automatic configuration 25
- ADA
 - compliance 15
- Add Printer wizard installation 84
- Additional Software dialog box, Customization Wizard 105
- Adobe Acrobat Reader
 - printing PDF files without 331
 - viewing documentation 14
- Advanced Installation
 - choosing 21
- alerts, e-mail
 - HP EWS 58
 - Macintosh 309
- Americans with Disabilities Act compliance 15
- autoconfiguration, driver support for 25
- autoconfiguration, Enterprise
 - about 25
 - Windows support 26
- autorun CD, Windows 21

B

- Back button, Windows installation dialog boxes 111
- Basic Installation
 - dialog boxes, Windows 126
- bidirectional communication
 - about 25
 - Enterprise
 - AutoConfiguration 25
- bins
 - 3-bin stapler/stacker, capacity 4

- booklet maker finisher, capacity 4
- capacities 4
- standard output bin, capacity 4
- Bonjour Settings, Macintosh 311
- booklet printing
 - Booklet Layout settings 184, 248

C

- Cancel button, Windows installation dialog boxes 111
- capacity
 - 3-bin stapler/stacker 4
 - bins 4
 - booklet maker finisher 4
 - standard output bin 4
 - trays 3
- cardstock, paper type commands 343
- CD
 - directory structure, Macintosh 285
 - directory structure, Windows 9
 - documentation 14, 21
 - installer, Windows printing-system software 20
 - languages 9
 - Macintosh printing-system software installation 285
- CD-ROM
 - installing Windows printing-system software 84
- Check Printer Connection dialog box, Windows 115, 129, 131
- CHM files
 - viewing 14

Color

- CMYK Color - PS Universal Print Driver only 266
- Color Options settings 198, 262
- Color Themes settings 201, 265
- Custom Profile setting 201, 265
- Default (sRGB) setting 201, 265
- features, print drivers 197, 261
- Neutral Gray settings 200, 264
- Photo (Adobe RGB 1998) setting 201, 265
- Photo (sRGB) setting 201, 265
- Vivid setting 201
- color
 - change default settings, manually 198, 262
 - Edge Control settings 200, 264
 - fine-tune default settings 198, 262
 - Halftone setting 200, 264
 - PANTONE color profiles 35
 - printing settings, controlling 32
 - restrict, HP EWS 62
 - restricting printing 32
- color printing
 - ICC profiles 34
 - restrict from Macintosh 312
- Color Usage log, Macintosh 303
- command-line printing, Windows 331

- command-line silent install for Windows 110
- common installer, features 23
- configurations, models 6
- Confirm Network Settings dialog box, Windows 133
- connectivity
 - bidirectional communication support 25
 - Searching dialog box, Windows 114, 128
- connectivity features 4
- constraint messages
 - print drivers 149, 219
- continuous export 30
- copies
 - Quick Copy setting 193, 257
- Custom Installation
 - dialog boxes, Windows 126
- Custom Installer Location dialog box, Windows
 - Customization Wizard 107
- Customization Wizard
 - dialog boxes 92

D

- default printer, setting 142
- Device Installer Customization Wizard
 - dialog boxes 92
- diagnostics
 - troubleshoot 203, 268
- dialog boxes, printing-system software installation
 - Mac OS X 286
 - Windows 126
 - Windows Customization Wizard 92
- direct printing
 - FTP, Windows 331
 - local port, Windows 333
 - LPR 334
 - networks, Windows 334
 - UNIX 334
- direct-connect installation 84
- directory structure, software CD
 - Macintosh 285
 - Windows 9
- disabling
 - driver features 29

- documentation
 - accessibility 15
 - availability by operating system 14
 - file formats 14
 - HP Embedded Web Server User Guide 17
 - HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide 18
 - install notes 16
 - user guide 15
 - viewing 14, 21
- download
 - firmware 318
- drivers
 - accessory configuration 25
 - Add Printer wizard
 - installation 84
 - Automatic Configuration
 - setting 209, 277
 - continuous export feature 30
 - diagnostics 31
 - Enterprise
 - AutoConfiguration 25
 - HP Driver Preconfiguration
 - support 30
 - included 23
 - license agreement,
 - installation 86
 - Linux OS 8
 - lockable features 29, 308
 - network preconfiguration 28
 - Point and Print installation 91
 - UNIX OS 8
 - Update Now, bidirectional communication 209, 277
- Drivers dialog box, Customization Wizard 101

E

- e-mail alerts
 - Macintosh 309
- Easy Printer Care
 - about 36
 - access 36
 - Device Management pane 50
 - Find Other Printers 38
 - My HP Printers screen 43

- Support tab 49
- Troubleshooting and Help pane 51
- EIO slots 4
- Embedded Jetdirect page
 - printing 52
- Enterprise AutoConfiguration
 - about 25
 - Novell NetWare operating systems supported 27
 - Windows operating systems supported 26
- envelopes, paper type
 - commands 343
- environmental features 5
- escape sequences
 - paper source 336
 - paper type 342
- EWS. See HP Embedded Web Server
- exporting driver parameters 30

F

- features 3, 6
- File Upload, Macintosh 304
- Find Other Printers, Easy Printer Care 38
- Finish dialog box, Windows 123, 140
- firmware
 - determine current level 318
 - download 318
 - FTP updates, Windows 322
 - HP Web Jetadmin
 - updates 329
 - LPR command updates 326
 - Macintosh updates 304, 305, 323
 - messages during update 319
 - troubleshoot updates 319
 - UNIX updates 326
 - update remotely 318
 - verifying installation 320
 - Windows network
 - updates 325
 - Windows, local port
 - update 324
- fonts
 - included 4

- install/remove external fonts 206, 272
- Macintosh 284
- Send True Type as Bitmap, print drivers 154, 225
- supported by Windows 67
- True Type, print drivers 153, 223
- Upload Fonts, HP Printer Utility 302
- Windows 69
- FTP
 - direct printing, Windows 331
 - Windows firmware updates 322
- Full Installation
 - dialog boxes, Windows 126

G

guides. See documentation

H

- heavy paper, paper type commands 343
- help
 - Macintosh 284
 - print drivers 149, 219
- Help button, Windows installation dialog boxes 111
- host name, locating HP EWS 52
- HP Device Installer Customization Wizard
 - dialog boxes 92
- HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool 31
- HP Driver Preconfiguration
 - HP Customization Utility 29
 - HP Driver Configuration Editor 29
 - HP Web Jetadmin Driver Configuration Plugin 29
 - OS and drivers supported 30
 - support guide 29
- HP Embedded Web Server
 - about 52
 - alerts, Settings tab 58
 - Configuration Page, Information tab 54

- configuration, Networking tab 64
- configure device, Settings tab 57
- Device Status, Information tab 54
- diagnostics, Networking tab 65
- HP Printer Utility, accessing from 316
- HP Web Jetadmin 52
- Information tab contents 53
- link, HP Instant Support 53
- link, Product Support 53
- link, Show Me How 53
- Macintosh support 284
- navigation 52
- network settings, Networking tab 65
- Networking tab contents 63
- restrict color, Settings tab 62
- security, Networking tab 64
- security, Settings tab 61
- Settings tab contents 56
- user guide 52
- HP Embedded Web Server User Guide 17
- HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver
 - HP Driver Preconfiguration support 30
 - included 23
- HP PCL 6 Print Driver
 - features 145
 - HP Driver Preconfiguration support 30
 - included 23
 - settings 145
- HP Printer Utility, Macintosh
 - about 299
 - access 299
 - Bonjour Settings 311
 - Color Usage log 303
 - Device Information 301
 - E-mail Alerts 309
 - Embedded Web Server access 316
 - File Upload 304
 - HP Support 301
 - Lock Resources 308
 - Network Settings 310

- Output Devices 314
- Restrict Color 312
- Supplies Management 315
- Supplies Status 300
- trays configuration 307
- Update Firmware 304
- Upload Fonts 302
- HP PS Universal Print Driver
 - HP Driver Preconfiguration support 30
 - included 23
- HP PS Universal Print Driver and PCL 5 Universal Print Driver
 - features 215
 - settings 215
- HP Web Jetadmin
 - downloading 22
 - firmware updates 329
 - HP Embedded Web Server 52
- HTM files
 - viewing 14
- I
- ICC profiles. See International Color Consortium profiles
- ICM. See Image Color Management
- Image Color Management
 - color graphics printing 152, 222
- Incompatible Print Settings messages. See constraint messages
- input trays. See trays
- install notes 16
- installation
 - Add Printer 84
 - command-line silent 110
 - Customization Wizard for Windows 92
 - dialog boxes, Mac OS X 286
 - Macintosh printing-system software 285
 - Point and Print 91
 - pre-existing, modifying 143
 - troubleshooting Macintosh 296
 - Windows printing-system software 84

- Installation Status dialog box,
 - Windows 121, 139
- Installation Type dialog box,
 - Windows 116, 134
- installers
 - common, features 23
 - customizing 92
 - Windows 20
- Installing dialog box, Customization Wizard 110
- International Color Consortium
 - profiles
 - viewing 34
- J**
- Jetadmin. *See* HP Web Jetadmin
- Jetdirect Administrator's Guide 18
- Job storage
 - Macintosh 309
- L**
- LAN-connector 4
- Language Selection dialog box, Customization Wizard 96
- languages
 - CD 9
- languages, printer 4
- Linux OS
 - driver availability 8
- local port command line printing,
 - Windows 333
- localized CD 9
- lockable features, drivers 29, 308
- LPR commands
 - firmware updates 326
 - printing PDF files 334
- M**
- Macintosh operating systems
 - firmware upgrades 323
 - troubleshooting setup 296
- Macintosh OS
 - Bonjour Settings 311
 - Color Usage log 303
 - components, software 284
 - Device Information 301
 - dialog boxes, Mac OS X printing-system software
 - installation 286
 - direct printing 331
 - directory structure, software
 - CD 285
 - e-mail alerts 309
 - File Upload command 304
 - firmware upgrades 305
 - fonts supported 284
 - HP EWS 284
 - HP Printer Utility 299
 - install notes 284
 - locking driver features 308
 - network settings 310
 - network setup 285
 - online help 284
 - Output Devices 314
 - PDEs 284
 - printing-system software
 - installation 285
 - Restrict Color 312
 - setting up products with Mac OS
 - X 295
 - stored jobs 309
 - Supplies Management 315
 - supplies status 300
 - supported 7
 - trays configuration 307
 - uninstalling printing-system software 297
 - Update Firmware 304
 - Upload Fonts 302
- manuals. *See* documentation
- messages, constraint
 - print drivers 149, 219
- model scripts, UNIX 8
- mopy 211, 278
- multiple-original print. *See* mopy
- My HP Printers screen
 - Easy Printer Care 43
- N**
- network
 - protocols, configuring 65
 - settings 64
- networks
 - color printing, restricting 32
 - connectivity features 4
 - direct printing 334
 - Embedded Jetdirect page,
 - printing 52
 - firmware updates 325
- HP Driver Preconfiguration 28
- HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide 18
- Macintosh settings 310
- Macintosh setup 285
- Point and Print installation 91
- Web Jetadmin,
 - downloading 66
 - Windows printing-system software installation 85
- Next steps dialog box,
 - Windows 125, 142
- Novell Netware operating systems
 - Enterprise AutoConfiguration support 27
- O**
- operating systems
 - Enterprise AutoConfiguration support 26
 - supported 7
- Options Cannot be Combined messages. *See* constraint messages
- order supplies 45
- ordering supplies 22
- OS. *See* operating systems
- output bins. *See* bins
- P**
- paper
 - Alternative Letterhead Mode 154
 - custom sizes 342
 - duplex binding settings, print drivers 183, 247
 - orientation 187, 250
 - settings, print drivers 164, 229
 - source commands 336
 - sources and destinations 336
 - type commands 342
 - types and sizes
 - supported 336
- parallel port direct-connect
 - installation 84
- PCL files, command-line printing 331
- PDEs (Printer Dialog Extensions) 284

- PDF files
 - command-line printing 331
 - LPR commands, printing 334
 - Macintosh, File Upload command 304
 - viewing 14
- PIN
 - Personal Job setting 193, 257
 - PIN to print setting 194, 258
- Point and Print installation, Windows printing-system software 91
- Port Creation Options dialog box, Customization Wizard 100
- port selection dialog box, Windows Customization Wizard 97
- ports
 - included 4
 - USB 4
- PPDs, Macintosh
 - troubleshooting 297
- pre-existing installation, modifying 143
- preconfiguration, driver 28
- print driver
 - Page Order settings 249
- print drivers
 - ABOut tab contents 280
 - About tab contents 213
 - access 147, 217
 - accessory output bins, Device Settings tab 210
 - Add Euro Currency Symbol to PostScript Fonts, PS Universal Print Driver 276
 - Advanced Printing Features settings, print drivers 153, 223
 - Advanced tab content 151, 220
 - Allow Manual Duplexing setting, Device Settings tab 210
 - Alternative Letterhead Mode, Advanced tab 154
 - Automatic Configuration setting, Device Settings tab 209, 277
 - Automatic settings, Color tab 198, 262
 - available PostScript memory, PS Universal Print Driver 275
 - Booklet Layout settings, Finishing tab 184, 248
 - collation settings 211, 278
 - Color Options settings, Color tab 198, 262
 - Color tab contents 197, 261
 - Color Themes settings, Color tab 201, 265
 - Convert Gray Graphics to PostScript Gray, PS Universal Print Driver 276
 - Convert Gray Text to PostScript, PS Universal Print Driver 276
 - Copy Count settings, Advanced tab 152, 221
 - custom paper sizes 342
 - device services, Services tab 204
 - Device Settings tab content 205, 270
 - Document Options setting, Advanced tab 153, 223
 - Document Options settings, Finishing tab 180, 244
 - document preview image 161, 171, 175, 186, 189, 202, 227, 235, 239, 250, 253, 266
 - duplex unit, Device Settings tab 210
 - Effects tab content 173, 237
 - Envelopes setting, Printing Shortcuts tab 161
 - Factory Defaults setting, Printing Shortcuts tab 161, 227
 - Finishing tab contents 180, 244
 - Flip Pages Up setting, Finishing tab 183, 247
 - Font Substitution Table settings, Device Settings tab 206, 272
 - Form to Tray Assignment setting, Device Settings tab 206, 271
 - General Everyday Printing setting, Printing Shortcuts tab 156
 - General settings, Color tab 200, 264
 - Graphic setting, Advanced tab 152, 222
 - Graphics Mode - PCL 5 Universal Print Driver only 224
 - Halftone setting, Color tab 200, 264
 - Help system 149, 219
 - ICM options, Advanced tab 152, 222
 - incompatible print settings messages 149
 - installable options, Device Settings tab 209, 277
 - Internet Services options, Services tab 204, 268
 - Job name settings, Job Storage tab 195
 - job name settings, Job Storage tab 259
 - job notification options, Job Storage tab 194, 258
 - Job Separator setting, Device Settings tab 211
 - Job Storage Mode settings, Job Storage tab 192, 256
 - job storage settings, Job Storage tab 195, 259
 - Job Storage tab contents 190, 254
 - Job Timeout, PS Universal Print Driver 276
 - Layout Options setting, Advanced tab 154, 225
 - Manual settings, Color tab 198, 262
 - Maximum Font Size to Download as Outline, PS Universal Print Driver 277
 - Minimum Font Size to Download as Outline, PS Universal Print Driver 277
 - mopier mode, Device Settings tab 211, 278

- Neutral Grayscale settings, Color tab 200, 264
- Options Cannot be Combined messages 219
- Orientation settings, Finishing tab 187, 250
- Output Bin settings, Output tab 189, 253
- Output Options settings, Output tab 188, 252
- Output Protocol, PS Universal Print Driver 275
- Output tab contents 188, 252
- Page Order settings, Finishing tab 186
- Pages per Sheet setting, Finishing tab 185, 249
- Paper Options settings, Paper/Quality tab 164, 229
- paper source commands 336
- Paper source setting, Paper/Quality tab 167, 231
- paper supported 336
- paper type commands 342
- Paper type setting, Paper/Quality tab 167, 232
- Paper/Output settings, Advanced tab 151, 221
- Paper/Quality tab contents 163, 228
- Personal Job setting, Job Storage tab 193, 257
- PIN to print setting, Job Storage tab 194, 258
- PostScript Output Options, Advanced tab - PS Universal Print Driver only 223
- PostScript Passthrough - PS Universal Print Driver only 279
- Print All Text as Black setting, Advanced tab 154, 224
- Print on Both Sides settings, Finishing tab 181, 245
- Print Optimizations setting, Advanced tab 153, 223
- Print Quality settings, Paper/Quality tab 171, 235
- Printer Features setting, Advanced tab 154, 224

- printer hard disk, Device Settings tab 210
- Printing Preferences tab, driver access 147, 217
- Printing Shortcuts tab contents 155, 226
- Proof and Hold setting, Job Storage tab 192, 256
- Properties tab, driver access 148, 218
- PS Universal Print Driver Device Settings 275
- Quick Copy setting, Job Storage tab 193, 257
- Raster Compression feature, Advanced tab 154
- Resizing Options settings, Effects tab 173, 237
- Send Ctrl-D After Each Job, PS Universal Print Driver 276
- Send Ctrl-D Before Each Job, PS Universal Print Driver 276
- Send True Type as Bitmap setting, Advanced tab 154, 225
- Services tab content 203, 268
- status message, Job Storage tab 192, 256
- Stored Job setting, Job Storage tab 193, 257
- tray 3, Device Settings tab 210
- trays 4 and 5, Device Settings tab 210
- True Type font settings, Advanced tab 153, 223
- Two-sided (Duplex) Printing setting, Printing Shortcuts tab 160
- user guide print settings, Printing Shortcuts tab 227
- user name settings, Job Storage tab 194
- Wait Timeout, PS Universal Print Driver 277
- Watermarks settings, Effects tab 175, 239
- What's this? Help 149, 219

- print job
 - delete stored job 196, 260
 - hard disk, job storage 210
 - job name 259
 - Job Name settings 195
 - job separator 211
 - job storage 210
 - Personal Job setting 193, 257
 - Proof and Hold setting 192
 - Quick Copy setting 193, 257
 - release stored job 196, 260
 - Stored Job setting 193, 257
 - user name 194
- print-ready files
 - command-line printing 331
 - printing by FTP 331
 - printing by local Windows port 333
 - printing by Windows network 334
 - printing in UNIX systems 334
 - printing with LPR command 334
- Printer Dialog Extensions (PDEs) 284
- Printer Driver Test Page dialog box, Windows 124, 126, 141
- Printer Found dialog box, Windows 130
- printer languages 4
- Printer Port dialog box, Customization Wizard 97
- Printer Properties dialog box, Windows 120, 138
- printer, setting default 142
- printing
 - direct in a Windows network 334
 - direct in UNIX 334
 - direct using FTP 331
 - direct using local Windows port 333
 - direct using LPR command 334
 - user guide 16
- printing-system software
 - about 7
 - availability 8
 - installation 86

- license agreement,
 - installation 86
 - requirements 7
- product models, features 6
- PS emulation fonts 69
- PS files, command-line
 - printing 331

R

- raster compression
 - HP PCL 5 Universal Print
 - Driver 224
- Ready to Create Installer dialog
 - box 108
- Ready to Install dialog box,
 - Windows 119, 137
- Recommended Installation
 - choosing 21
- regional versions, CD 9
- remote firmware updates
 - about 318
 - determine current firmware
 - level 318
 - downloading 318
 - FTP, Windows 322
 - HP Web Jetadmin 329
 - LPR commands 326
 - Macintosh 304, 305, 323
 - messages 319
 - troubleshoot 319
 - UNIX 326
 - verifying installation 320
 - Windows network 325
 - Windows, using local port 324
- Restrict Color screen, HP Printer
 - Utility 312
- RFU. *See* remote firmware updates
- RTF files
 - viewing 14

S

- screen-readable
 - documentation 15
- Searching dialog box, Windows
 - connectivity 128
- security features 5
- settings
 - continuous export 30
 - locking 29

- silent installation
 - command-line 110
 - Customization Wizard 92
- software license agreement 86
- Software License Agreement dialog
 - box, Customization Wizard 95
- status
 - Macintosh supplies 300, 315
- storage, job
 - Macintosh 309
- supplies
 - Macintosh status 300, 315
 - order 45
 - ordering 22
- Support tab, HP Printer
 - Utility 301
- system requirements
 - printing-system software 7

T

- TCP/IP address, locating
 - HP EWS 52
- Test Page dialog box,
 - Windows 124, 126, 141
- text files, command-line
 - printing 331
- transparencies, paper type
 - commands 343
- trays
 - Alternative Letterhead
 - Mode 154
 - capacities 3
 - duplex unit 4, 210
 - included 336
 - Macintosh configuration 307
 - paper source commands 336
 - paper type commands 342
 - specify paper size 206, 271
 - tray 1 3
 - tray 3 210
 - trays 2, 3, 4, and 5 3
 - trays 4 and 5 210
- troubleshoot
 - diagnostics 203, 268
 - firmware upgrades 319
 - HP driver Diagnostic Printer
 - Check Tool 31
- troubleshooting
 - Macintosh setup 296
- TrueType fonts included 4

- TXT files, command-line
 - printing 331
- typefaces
 - included 4

U

- unattended installation
 - command-line 110
 - Customization Wizard 92
- uninstallation
 - Macintosh printing
 - system 297
- UNIX OS
 - direct printing 334
 - driver availability 8
 - print-ready printing 334
 - remote firmware update 326
- Update Now feature
 - steps to activate 27
- updating firmware remotely. *See*
 - remote firmware update
- USB direct-connect
 - installation 84
- user guide
 - print 16
- User Name 258

W

- Web Jetadmin
 - downloading 66
- Web sites
 - download software 8
 - firmware download 318
 - HP Embedded Web Server
 - links 53
 - HP Embedded Web Server User
 - Guide 52
 - Internet Services options,
 - Services tab 204, 268
 - other OS support links 8
 - support links 22
- Welcome dialog box, Windows
 - Full Installation 113
 - printing-system software
 - installation 127
- Windows operating systems
 - CD, print system 20
 - default printer, setting 142
 - dialog boxes 126

- Enterprise AutoConfiguration
 - support 26
- fonts supported 67
- Installer Customization Wizard 92
- installing printing-system software 84
- PS emulation fonts
 - supported 69
- Windows OS
 - Add Printer wizard
 - installation 84
 - direct printing, FTP 331
 - direct printing, local port 333
 - direct printing, networks 334
 - directory structure, software CD 9
 - driver versions 24
 - HP Driver Preconfiguration
 - support 30
 - HP PCL 6 Print Driver
 - features 145
 - HP PS Universal Print Driver and PCL 5 Universal Print Driver features 215
 - LPR commands 334
 - Point and Print installation 91
 - remote firmware update 324
 - supported 7

© 2008 Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

www.hp.com

